

ROBOTICS

Product manual

IRB 930



Trace back information:
Workspace 23B version a11
Checked in 2023-06-20
Skribenta version 5.5.019

Product manual

IRB 930-12/0.85

IRB 930-12/1.05

IRB 930-22/1.05

IRC5

Document ID: 3HAC086009-001

Revision: A

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by ABB. ABB assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

Except as may be expressly stated anywhere in this manual, nothing herein shall be construed as any kind of guarantee or warranty by ABB for losses, damage to persons or property, fitness for a specific purpose or the like.

In no event shall ABB be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from use of this manual and products described herein.

This manual and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without ABB's written permission.

Keep for future reference.

Additional copies of this manual may be obtained from ABB.

Original instructions.

© Copyright 2023 ABB. All rights reserved.
Specifications subject to change without notice.

Table of contents

Overview of this manual	9
Product documentation	11
How to read the product manual	13
1 Safety	15
1.1 Safety information	15
1.1.1 Limitation of liability	15
1.1.2 Requirements on personnel	16
1.2 Safety signals and symbols	17
1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual	17
1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels	19
1.3 Robot stopping functions	25
1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning	26
1.5 Safety during operation	29
1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair	30
1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair	30
1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes	33
1.6.3 Brake testing	34
1.7 Safety during troubleshooting	35
1.8 Safety during decommissioning	36
2 Manipulator description	37
2.1 About IRB 930	37
2.2 Technical data	38
2.3 Robot dimensions	42
2.4 Working range	43
2.5 Information labels	45
2.6 The unit is sensitive to ESD	46
3 Installation and commissioning	47
3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning	47
3.2 Unpacking	48
3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure	48
3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability	49
3.2.3 Transportation bracket	51
3.3 On-site installation	54
3.3.1 Brief installation procedure	54
3.3.2 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair	55
3.3.3 Lifting the robot	56
3.3.3.1 Lifting robot with lifting accessories	56
3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes	58
3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot	60
3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances	63
3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)	64
3.4 Restricting the working range	67
3.4.1 Adjusting the working range	67
3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range	68
3.5 Electrical connections	71
3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points	71
3.5.2 Customer connections	73
3.6 Start of robot in cold environments	76
3.7 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair	77
4 Maintenance	79
4.1 Introduction	79

Table of contents

4.2	Service Information System (SIS)	80
4.3	Maintenance schedule and expected component life	81
4.3.1	Specification of maintenance intervals	81
4.3.2	Maintenance schedule	82
4.3.3	Expected component life	84
4.4	Inspection activities	85
4.4.1	Inspecting the information labels	85
4.4.2	Inspecting the robot cabling	86
4.4.3	Inspecting the ball screw spline unit	87
4.4.4	Inspecting mechanical stops	90
4.4.5	Inspecting timing belts	94
4.5	Replacement/changing activities	95
4.6	Lubrication activities	96
4.6.1	Lubricating the ball screw spline unit	96
4.7	Cleaning activities	98
4.7.1	Cleaning the IRB 930	98
4.8	Changing activities	100
4.8.1	Type of lubrication in gearboxes	100
4.8.2	Changing oil, axis-1 gearbox	101
4.8.3	Changing oil, axis-2 gearbox	106
5	Repair	111
5.1	Introduction	111
5.2	General procedures	112
5.2.1	Performing a leak-down test	112
5.2.2	Mounting instructions for bearings	113
5.2.3	Mounting instructions for sealings	115
5.2.4	Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts	118
5.3	Cable harness	119
5.3.1	Replacing the process hub	119
5.3.2	Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit	129
5.3.3	Replacing the main harness	136
5.4	Base	171
5.4.1	Replacing the base	171
5.5	Inner arm	216
5.5.1	Replacing the inner arm	216
5.5.2	Replacing the axis-1 oil tank	269
5.6	Outer arm	277
5.6.1	Replacing the mechanical stopper	277
5.6.2	Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position	283
5.6.3	Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position	295
5.6.4	Replacing the ball screw	308
5.6.5	Replacing the axis-3 timing belt	324
5.6.6	Replacing the axis-4 timing belt	340
5.6.7	Replacing the cable arm	358
5.6.8	Replacing the outer arm	383
5.7	Motors	425
5.7.1	Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly	425
5.7.2	Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly	438
5.7.3	Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly	447
5.7.4	Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly	462
5.8	Gearboxes	480
5.8.1	Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly	480
5.8.2	Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly	524
6	Calibration	553
6.1	Introduction to calibration	553
6.1.1	Introduction and calibration terminology	553
6.1.2	Calibration methods	554

6.1.3	When to calibrate	556
6.2	Synchronization marks and axis movement directions	557
6.2.1	Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes	557
6.2.2	Calibration movement directions for all axes	559
6.3	Updating revolution counters	560
6.3.1	Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots	560
6.4	Calibrating with Axis Calibration method	564
6.4.1	Description of Axis Calibration	564
6.4.2	Calibration tools for Axis Calibration	567
6.4.3	Installation locations for the calibration tools	569
6.4.4	Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure	570
6.4.5	Reference calibration	574
6.5	Calibrating the robot	576
6.5.1	Calibration position	576
6.5.2	Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2	577
6.5.3	Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4	578
6.6	Verifying the calibration	583
6.7	Checking the synchronization position	584
7	Decommissioning	585
7.1	Introduction to decommissioning	585
7.2	Environmental information	586
7.3	Scrapping of robot	588
8	Reference information	589
8.1	Introduction	589
8.2	Applicable standards	590
8.3	Unit conversion	591
8.4	Screw joints	592
8.5	Weight specifications	595
8.6	Standard toolkit	596
8.7	Special tools	597
8.8	Lifting accessories and lifting instructions	598
9	Spare parts	599
9.1	Spare part lists and illustrations	599
Index		601

This page is intentionally left blank

Overview of this manual

About this manual

This manual contains instructions for:

- mechanical and electrical installation of the IRB 930
- maintenance of the IRB 930
- mechanical and electrical repair of the IRB 930

The robot described in this manual has the following protection types:

- *Standard*
-

Product manual scope

The manual covers all variants and designs of the IRB 930. Some variants and designs may have been removed from the business offer and are no longer available for purchase.

Usage

This manual should be used during:

- installation and commissioning, from lifting the product to its work site and securing it to the foundation, to making it ready for operation
- maintenance work
- repair work
- decommissioning work



Note

It is the responsibility of the integrator to conduct a risk assessment of the final application.

It is the responsibility of the integrator to provide safety and user guides for the robot system.

Who should read this manual?

This manual is intended for:

- installation personnel
 - maintenance personnel
 - repair personnel.
-

Prerequisites

A maintenance/repair/installation craftsman working with an ABB robot must:

- be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/repair/maintenance work.
 - be trained to respond to emergencies or abnormal situations.
-

Continues on next page

Overview of this manual

Continued

References

Documentation referred to in the manual, is listed in the table below.

Document name	Document ID
<i>Product manual, spare parts - IRB 930</i>	<i>3HAC086010-001</i>
<i>Product specification - IRB 930</i>	<i>3HAC086011-001</i>
<i>Circuit diagram - IRB 930</i>	<i>3HAC081880-003</i>
<i>Safety manual for robot - Manipulator and IRC5 or OmniCore controllerⁱ</i>	<i>3HAC031045-001</i>
<i>Product manual - OmniCore C30</i>	<i>3HAC060860-001</i>
<i>Product manual - OmniCore C90XT</i>	<i>3HAC073706-001</i>
<i>Operating manual - OmniCore</i>	<i>3HAC065036-001</i>
<i>Application manual - Controller software OmniCore</i>	<i>3HAC066554-001</i>
<i>Application manual - CalibWare Field</i>	<i>3HAC030421-001</i>
<i>Technical reference manual - Event logs for RobotWare 7</i>	<i>3HAC066553-001</i>
<i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>	<i>3HAC042927-001</i>
<i>Technical reference manual - System parameters</i>	<i>3HAC065041-001</i>

ⁱ This manual contains all safety instructions from the product manuals for the manipulators and the controllers.

Revisions

Revision	Description
A	First edition.

Product documentation

Categories for user documentation from ABB Robotics

The user documentation from ABB Robotics is divided into a number of categories. This listing is based on the type of information in the documents, regardless of whether the products are standard or optional.



Tip

All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Product manuals

Manipulators, controllers, DressPack/SpotPack, and most other hardware is delivered with a **Product manual** that generally contains:

- Safety information.
- Installation and commissioning (descriptions of mechanical installation or electrical connections).
- Maintenance (descriptions of all required preventive maintenance procedures including intervals and expected life time of parts).
- Repair (descriptions of all recommended repair procedures including spare parts).
- Calibration.
- Troubleshooting.
- Decommissioning.
- Reference information (safety standards, unit conversions, screw joints, lists of tools).
- Spare parts list with corresponding figures (or references to separate spare parts lists).
- References to circuit diagrams.

Technical reference manuals

The technical reference manuals describe reference information for robotics products, for example lubrication, the RAPID language, and system parameters.

Application manuals

Specific applications (for example software or hardware options) are described in **Application manuals**. An application manual can describe one or several applications.

An application manual generally contains information about:

- The purpose of the application (what it does and when it is useful).
- What is included (for example cables, I/O boards, RAPID instructions, system parameters, software).
- How to install included or required hardware.
- How to use the application.

Continues on next page

- Examples of how to use the application.

Operating manuals

The operating manuals describe hands-on handling of the products. The manuals are aimed at those having first-hand operational contact with the product, that is production cell operators, programmers, and troubleshooters.

How to read the product manual

Reading the procedures

The procedures contain all information required for the installation or service activity and can be printed out separately when needed for a certain service procedure.

Safety information

The manual includes a separate safety chapter that must be read through before proceeding with any service or installation procedures. All procedures also include specific safety information when dangerous steps are to be performed.

Read more in the chapter [Safety on page 15](#).

Illustrations

The product is illustrated with general figures that does not take painting or protection type in consideration.

Likewise, certain work methods or general information that is valid for several product models, can be illustrated with illustrations that show a different product model than the one that is described in the current manual.

This page is intentionally left blank

1 Safety

1.1 Safety information

1.1.1 Limitation of liability

Limitation of liability

Any information given in this manual regarding safety must not be construed as a warranty by ABB that the industrial robot will not cause injury or damage even if all safety instructions are complied with.

The information does not cover how to design, install and operate a robot system, nor does it cover all peripheral equipment that can influence the safety of the robot system.

In particular, liability cannot be accepted if injury or damage has been caused for any of the following reasons:

- Use of the robot in other ways than intended.
- Incorrect operation or maintenance.
- Operation of the robot when the safety devices are defective, not in their intended location or in any other way not working.
- When instructions for operation and maintenance are not followed as intended.
- Non-authorized design modifications of the robot.
- Repairs on the robot and its spare parts carried out by in-experienced or non-qualified personnel.
- Foreign objects.
- Force majeure.

Spare parts and equipment

ABB supplies original spare parts and equipment which have been tested and approved for their intended use. The installation and/or use of non-original spare parts and equipment can negatively affect the safety, function, performance, and structural properties of the robot. ABB is not liable for damages caused by the use of non-original spare parts and equipment.

1 Safety

1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

General

Only personnel with appropriate training are allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, and use the robot. This includes electrical, mechanical, hydraulics, pneumatics, and other hazards identified in the risk assessment.

Persons who are under the influence of alcohol, drugs or any other intoxicating substances are not allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, or use the robot.

The plant liable must make sure that the personnel is trained on the robot, and on responding to emergency or abnormal situations.

Personal protective equipment

Use personal protective equipment, as stated in the instructions.

1.2 Safety signals and symbols

1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual







Introduction to safety signals

This section specifies all safety signals used in the user manuals. Each signal consists of:

- A caption specifying the hazard level (DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION) and the type of hazard.
- Instruction about how to reduce the hazard to an acceptable level.
- A brief description of remaining hazards, if not adequately reduced.

Hazard levels

The table below defines the captions specifying the hazard levels used throughout this manual.


Symbol	Designation	Significance
	DANGER	Signal word used to indicate an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in serious injury.
	WARNING	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.
	ELECTRICAL SHOCK	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation related to electrical hazards which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.
	CAUTION	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in slight injury.
	ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)	Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in severe damage to the product.
	NOTE	Signal word used to indicate important facts and conditions.

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual

Continued

Symbol	Designation	Significance
	TIP	Signal word used to indicate where to find additional information or how to do an operation in an easier way.

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Introduction to symbols

This section describes safety symbols used on labels (stickers) on the manipulator. Symbols are used in combinations on the labels, describing each specific warning. The descriptions in this section are generic, the labels can contain additional information such as values.



Note

The symbols on the labels on the product must be observed. Additional symbols added by the integrator must also be observed.




Types of symbols

Both the manipulator and the controller are marked with symbols, containing important information about the product. This is important for all personnel handling the robot, for example during installation, service, or operation.

The safety labels are language independent, they only use graphics. See [Symbols on safety labels on page 19](#).

The information labels can contain information in text.

Symbols on safety labels

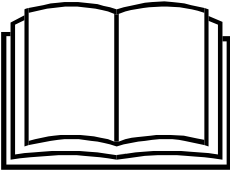
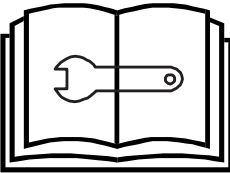
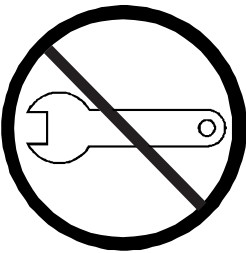
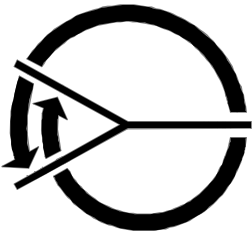

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000812	Warning! Warns that an accident <i>may</i> occur if the instructions are not followed that can lead to serious injury, possibly fatal, and/or great damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, etc.
 xx0900000811	Caution! Warns that an accident may occur if the instructions are not followed that can result in injury and/or damage to the product. It also applies to warnings of risks that include burns, eye injury, skin injury, hearing damage, crushing or slipping, tripping, impact, fall from height, etc. Furthermore, it applies to warnings that include function requirements when fitting and removing equipment where there is a risk of damaging the product or causing a breakdown.
 xx0900000839	Prohibition Used in combinations with other symbols.

Continues on next page

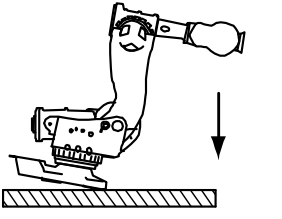

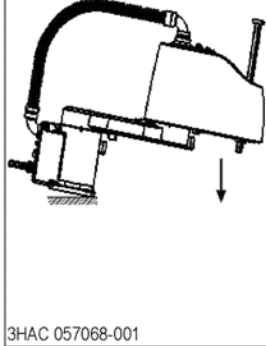
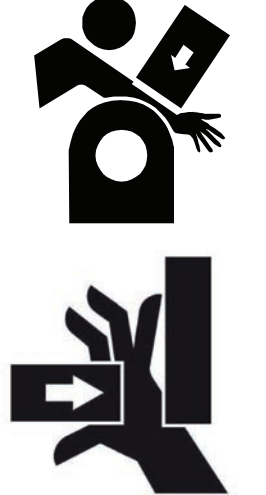
1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000813	See user documentation Read user documentation for details. Which manual to read is defined by the symbol: <ul style="list-style-type: none">No text: <i>Product manual</i>.
 xx0900000816	Before disassembly, see product manual
 xx0900000815	Do not disassemble Disassembling this part can cause injury.
 xx0900000814	Extended rotation This axis has extended rotation (working area) compared to standard.
 xx0900000808	Brake release Pressing this button will release the brakes. This means that the robot arm can fall down.



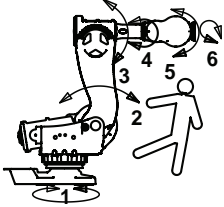
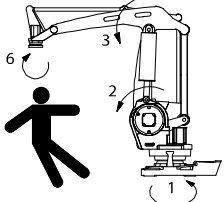
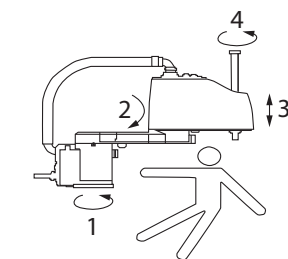
Continues on next page

Symbol	Description
 <p>xx0900000810</p>   <p>3HAC 057068-001</p> <p>xx1500002402</p>	<p>Tip risk when loosening bolts The robot can tip over if the bolts are not securely fastened.</p>
 <p>xx0900000817</p>	<p>Crush Risk of crush injuries.</p>

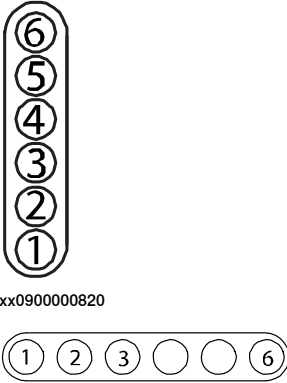

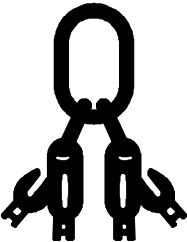

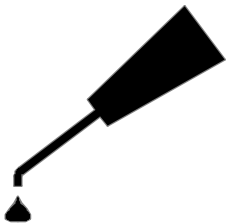

1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued

Symbol	Description
 xx0900000818  xx1300001087	Heat Risk of heat that can cause burns. (Both signs are used)
 xx0900000819  xx1000001141  xx1500002616	Moving robot The robot can move unexpectedly.

Continues on next page



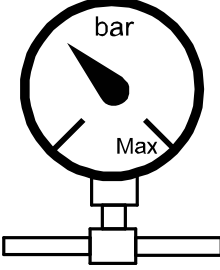
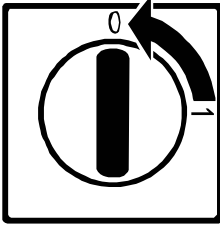

Symbol	Description
 <p>xx0900000820</p> <p>xx1000001140</p>	<p>Brake release buttons</p>
 <p>xx0900000821</p>	<p>Lifting bolt</p>
 <p>xx1000001242</p>	<p>Adjustable chain sling with shortener</p>
 <p>xx0900000822</p>	<p>Lifting of robot</p>
 <p>xx0900000823</p>	<p>Oil Can be used in combination with prohibition if oil is not allowed.</p>
 <p>xx0900000824</p>	<p>Mechanical stop</p>

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued

Symbol	Description
 xx1000001144	No mechanical stop
 xx0900000825	Stored energy Warns that this part contains stored energy. Used in combination with <i>Do not disassemble</i> symbol.
 xx0900000826	Pressure Warns that this part is pressurized. Usually contains additional text with the pressure level.
 xx0900000827	Shut off with handle Use the power switch on the controller.
 xx1400002648	Do not step Warns that stepping on these parts can cause damage to the parts.

1.3 Robot stopping functions

Protective stop and emergency stop

The protective stops and emergency stops are described in the product manual for the controller.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT*

1 Safety

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

National or regional regulations

The integrator of the robot system is responsible for the safety of the robot system.

The integrator is responsible that the robot system is designed and installed in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The integrator of the robot system is required to perform a risk assessment.

Layout

The robot integrated to a robot system shall be designed to allow safe access to all spaces during installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

If robot movement can be initiated from an external control panel then an emergency stop must also be available.

If the manipulator is delivered with mechanical stops, these can be used for reducing the working space.

A perimeter safeguarding, for example a fence, shall be dimensioned to withstand the following:

- The force of the manipulator.
- The force of the load handled by the robot if dropped or released at maximum speed.
- The maximum possible impact caused by a breaking or malfunctioning rotating tool or other device fitted to the robot.

The maximum TCP speed and the maximum velocity of the robot axes are detailed in the section *Robot motion* in the product specification for the respective manipulator.

Consider exposure to hazards, such as slipping, tripping, and falling.

Hazards due to the working position and posture for a person working with or near the robot shall be considered.

Hazards due to noise emission from the robot needs to be considered.

Consider hazards from other equipment in the robot system, for example, that guards remain active until identified hazards are reduced to an acceptable level.

Allergenic material

See [Environmental information on page 586](#) for specification of allergenic materials in the product, if any.

Securing the robot to the foundation

The robot must be properly fixed to its foundation/support, as described in the respective product manual.

When the robot is installed at a height, hanging, or other than mounted directly on the floor, there will be additional hazards.

Continues on next page

Electrical safety

Incoming mains must be installed to fulfill national regulations.

The power supply wiring to the robot must be sufficiently fused and if necessary, it must be possible to disconnect it manually from the mains power.

The power to the robot must be turned off with the main switch and the mains power disconnected when performing work inside the controller cabinet. Lock and tag shall be considered.

Harnesses between controller and manipulator shall be fixed and protected to avoid tripping and wear.

Wherever possible, power on/off or rebooting the robot controller shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.



Note

Use a CARBON DIOXIDE (CO₂) extinguisher in the event of a fire in the robot.

Safety devices

The integrator is responsible for that the safety devices necessary to protect people working with the robot system are designed and installed correctly.

When integrating the robot with external devices to a robot system:

- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that emergency stop functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.
- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that safety functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.

Other hazards

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

The risk assessment should also consider other hazards arising from the application, such as, but not limited to:

- Water
- Compressed air
- Hydraulics

End-effector hazards require particular attention for applications which involve close human collaboration with the robot.

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

Continued

Pneumatic or hydraulic related hazards



Note

The pressure in the complete pneumatic or hydraulic systems must be released before service and maintenance.

All components in the robot system that remain pressurized after switching off the power to the robot must be marked with clearly visible drain facilities and a warning sign that indicates the hazard of stored energy.

Loss of pressure in the robot system may cause parts or objects to drop.

Dump valves should be used in case of emergency.

Shot bolts should be used to prevent tools, etc., from falling due to gravity.

All pipes, hoses, and connections have to be inspected regularly for leaks and damage. Damage must be repaired immediately.

Verify the safety functions

Before the robot system is put into operation, verify that the safety functions are working as intended and that any remaining hazards identified in the risk assessment are mitigated to an acceptable level.

1.5 Safety during operation

Automatic operation

Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed, before changing mode to automatic and initiating automatic operation.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

1 Safety

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

General

Corrective maintenance must only be carried out by personnel trained on the robot. Maintenance or repair must be done with all electrical, pneumatic, and hydraulic power switched off, that is, no remaining hazards.

Hazards due to stored mechanical energy in the manipulator for the purpose of counterbalancing axes must be considered before maintenance or repair.

Never use the robot as a ladder, which means, do not climb on the controller, manipulator, including motors, or other parts. There are hazards of slipping and falling. The robot might be damaged.


Make sure that there are no loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after work on the robot has been performed.

When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

Hot surfaces

Surfaces can be hot after running the robot, and touching these may result in burns. Allow the surfaces to cool down before maintenance or repair.

Allergic reaction

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
 Allergic reaction	When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.


Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease)

When handling oil, grease, or other chemical substances the safety information of the respective manufacturer must be observed.







Note

Take special care when handling hot lubricants.

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
 Hot oil or grease	Changing and draining gearbox oil or grease may require handling hot lubricant heated up to 90 °C.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn during this activity.

Continues on next page

Warning	Description	Elimination/Action
 Allergic reaction	When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction.	Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.
 Possible pressure build-up in gearbox	When opening the oil or grease plug, there may be pressure present in the gearbox, causing lubricant to spray from the opening.	Open the plug carefully and keep away from the opening. Do not overfill the gearbox when filling.
 Do not overfill	Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	Make sure not to overfill the gearbox when filling it with oil or grease. After filling, verify that the level is correct.
 Specified amount depends on drained volume	The specified amount of oil or grease is based on the total volume of the gearbox. When changing the lubricant, the amount refilled may differ from the specified amount, depending on how much has previously been drained from the gearbox.	After filling, verify that the level is correct.

Hazards related to batteries

Under rated conditions, the electrode materials and liquid electrolyte in the batteries are sealed and not exposed to the outside.


There is a hazard in case of abuse (mechanical, thermal, electrical) which leads to the activation of safety valves and/or the rupture of the battery container. As a result under certain circumstances, electrolyte leakage, electrode materials reaction with moisture/water or battery vent/explosion/fire may follow.

Do not short circuit, recharge, puncture, incinerate, crush, immerse, force discharge or expose to temperatures above the declared operating temperature range of the product. Risk of fire or explosion.

Operating temperatures are listed in [Operating conditions, robot on page 41](#).

See safety instructions for the batteries in *Material/product safety data sheet - Battery pack (3HAC043118-001)*.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

Continued

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

Related information

See also the safety information related to installation and operation.

1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes

Description

In an emergency situation, the brakes on a robot axis can be released manually by pushing a brake release button.

How to release the brakes is described in the section:

- [Manually releasing the brakes on page 58](#).

The robot may be moved manually on smaller robot models, but larger models may require using an overhead crane or similar equipment.

Increased injury

Before releasing the brakes, make sure that the weight of the manipulator does not result in additional hazards, for example, even more severe injuries on a trapped person.



DANGER

When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways.

Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot.

1 Safety

1.6.3 Brake testing

1.6.3 Brake testing

When to test

During operation, the holding brake of each axis normally wears down. A test can be performed to determine whether the brake can still perform its function.



Note

Note that the following axes do not have a brake:

- Axis 1
- Axis 2

How to test

The function of the holding brake of each axis motor may be verified as described below:

- 1 Run each axis to a position where the combined weight of the manipulator and any load is maximized (maximum static load).
- 2 Switch the motor to the MOTORS OFF.
- 3 Inspect and verify that the axis maintains its position.

If the manipulator does not change position as the motors are switched off, then the brake function is adequate.



Note

It is recommended to run the service routine *BrakeCheck* as part of the regular maintenance, see the operating manual for the robot controller.

For robots with the option SafeMove, the *Cyclic Brake Check* routine is recommended. See the manual for SafeMove in [References on page 10](#).

1.7 Safety during troubleshooting

General

When troubleshooting requires work with power switched on, special considerations must be taken:

- Safety circuits might be muted or disconnected.
- Electrical parts must be considered as *live*.
- The manipulator can move unexpectedly at any time.



DANGER

Troubleshooting on the controller while powered on must be performed by personnel trained by ABB or by ABB field engineers.

A risk assessment must be done to address both robot and robot system specific hazards.



WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

Related information

See also the safety information related to installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

1 Safety

1.8 Safety during decommissioning

1.8 Safety during decommissioning

General

See section [Decommissioning on page 585](#).

If the robot is decommissioned for storage, take extra precaution to reset safety devices to delivery status.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

2 Manipulator description

2.1 About IRB 930

Introduction

The IRB 930 is one of ABB Robotics latest generation of 4-axis robot, with a payload of 12 kg and 22 kg, designed based on industrial robot platform. The robot has an open structure that is especially adapted for flexible use, and can communicate extensively with external systems.

The IRB 930 contains the following variants:

- IRB 930-12/0.85
- IRB 930-12/1.05
- IRB 930-22/1.05



Note

Without any specific statement, IRB 930 represents all variants under this product.

2 Manipulator description

2.2 Technical data

2.2 Technical data

Weight, robot

The table shows the weight of the robot.

Robot model	Nominal weight
IRB 930	IRB 930-12/0.85: 64 kg
	IRB 930-12/1.05: 66 kg
	IRB 930-22/1.05: 66 kg



Note

The weight does not include additional options, tools and other equipment fitted on the robot.

Mounting positions

The table shows valid mounting positions and the installation (mounting) angle for the manipulator.

Mounting position	Installation angle
Floor mounted	0°

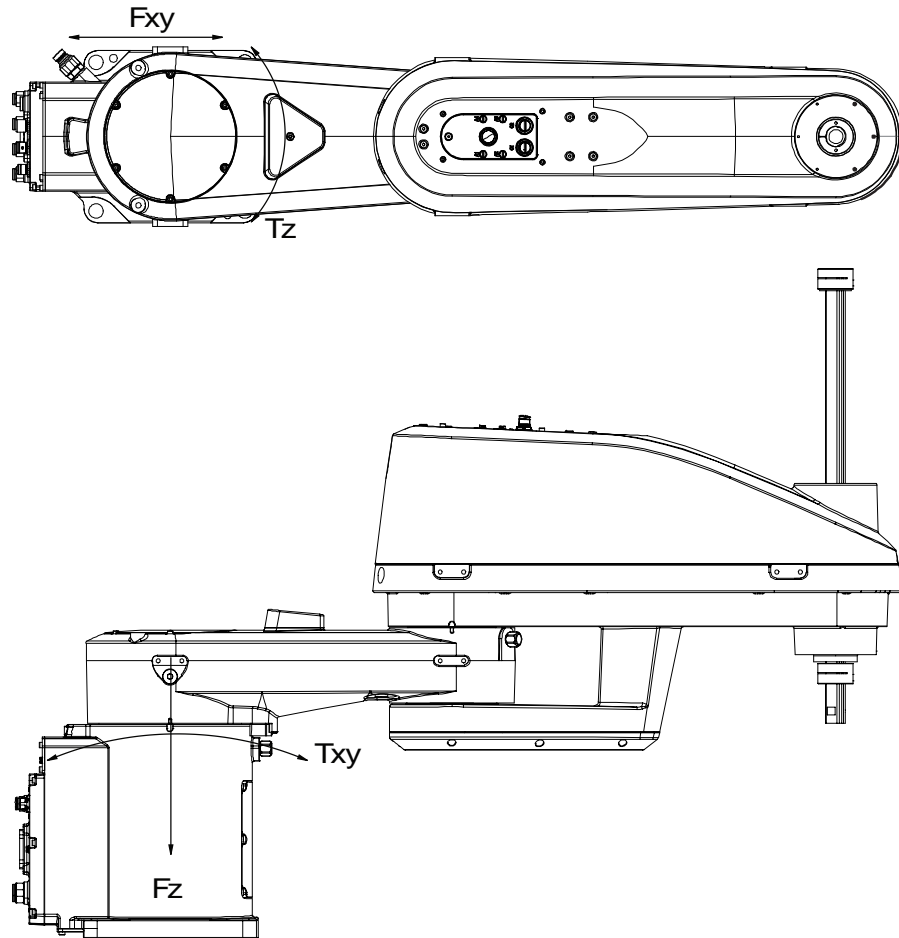


Note

The actual mounting angle must always be configured in the system parameters, otherwise the performance and lifetime is affected. For details, see *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

Continues on next page

Loads on foundation, robot



xx2300000160

F_{xy}	Force in any direction in Plane XY
F_z	Force along Axis Z
T_{xy}	Bending moment in any direction in Plane XY
T_z	Torsional moment around Axis Z

The table shows the various forces and torques working on the robot during different kinds of operation.



Note

These forces and torques are extreme values that are rarely encountered during operation. The values also never reach their maximum at the same time!



WARNING

The robot installation is restricted to the mounting options given in following load table(s).

Continues on next page

2 Manipulator description

2.2 Technical data


Continued

Floor mounted

Force	Endurance load (in operation)	Maximum load (emergency stop)
Force xy	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 1200 N IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 1000 N IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 1000 N	± 2000 N
Force z	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 815 N IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 950 N IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 950 N	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 1200 N IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 1300 N IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 1300 N
Torque xy	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 650 Nm IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 800 Nm IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 800 Nm	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 1310 Nm IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 1550 Nm IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 1550 Nm
Torque z	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 255 Nm IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 250 Nm IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 250 Nm	IRB 930-12/0.85: ± 510 Nm IRB 930-12/1.05: ± 520 Nm IRB 930-22/1.05: ± 520 Nm

Requirements, foundation

The table shows the requirements for the foundation where the weight of the installed robot is included:

Requirement	Value	Note
Flatness of foundation surface	0.1/500 mm	Flat foundations give better repeatability of the resolver calibration compared to original settings on delivery from ABB. The value for levelness aims at the circumstance of the anchoring points in the robot base. In order to compensate for an uneven surface, the robot can be recalibrated during installation. If resolver/encoder calibration is changed this will influence the absolute accuracy.
Minimum resonance frequency	22 Hz  Note It may affect the manipulator lifetime to have a lower resonance frequency than recommended.	The value is recommended for optimal performance. Due to foundation stiffness, consider robot mass including equipment. ⁱ For information about compensating for foundation flexibility, see the description of <i>Motion Process Mode</i> in the manual that describes the controller software option, see References on page 10 .
Minimum foundation material yield strength	150 MPa	

ⁱ The minimum resonance frequency given should be interpreted as the frequency of the robot mass/inertia, robot assumed stiff, when a foundation translational/torsional elasticity is added, i.e., the stiffness of the pedestal where the robot is mounted. The minimum resonance frequency should not be interpreted as the resonance frequency of the building, floor etc. For example, if the equivalent mass of the floor is very high, it will not affect robot movement, even if the frequency is well below the stated frequency. The robot should be mounted as rigid as possible to the floor.
Disturbances from other machinery will affect the robot and the tool accuracy. The robot has resonance frequencies in the region 10 – 20 Hz and disturbances in this region will be amplified, although somewhat damped by the servo control. This might be a problem, depending on the requirements from the applications. If this is a problem, the robot needs to be isolated from the environment.

Continues on next page

Storage conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed storage conditions for the robot:

Parameter	Value
Minimum ambient temperature	-25 °C
Maximum ambient temperature	55 °C
Maximum ambient temperature (less than 24 hrs)	70 °C
Maximum ambient humidity	95% at constant temperature (gaseous only)

Operating conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed operating conditions for the robot:

Parameter	Value
Minimum ambient temperature	+5°C ⁱ
Maximum ambient temperature	+45°C
Maximum ambient humidity	5% - 95% non-condensing according to IEC61131-2

ⁱ At low environmental temperature < 10°C is, as with any other machine, a warm-up phase recommended to be run with the robot. Otherwise there is a risk that the robot stops or run with lower performance due to temperature dependent oil and grease viscosity.

Protection classes, robot

The table shows the available protection types of the robot, with the corresponding protection class.

Protection type	Protection class ⁱ
Manipulator, protection type Standard	IP30 ⁱⁱ

ⁱ According to IEC 60529.

ⁱⁱ The protection class of the ballscrew area is IP20. For more information, please contact ABB.

Environmental information

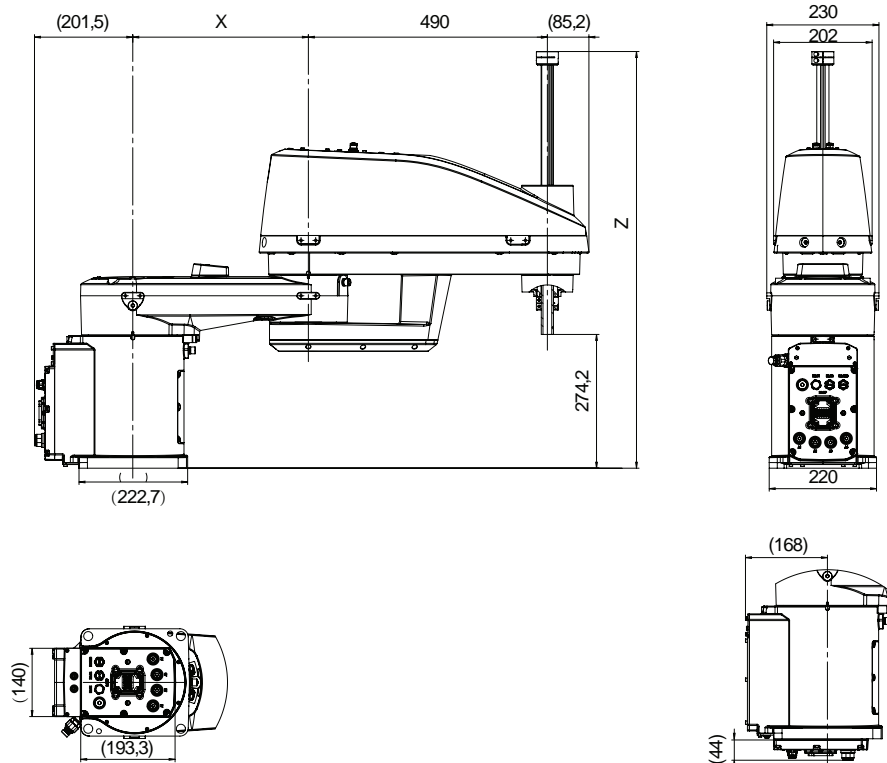
The product complies with IEC 63000. *Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances.*

2 Manipulator description

2.3 Robot dimensions

2.3 Robot dimensions

Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300



xx2300000161

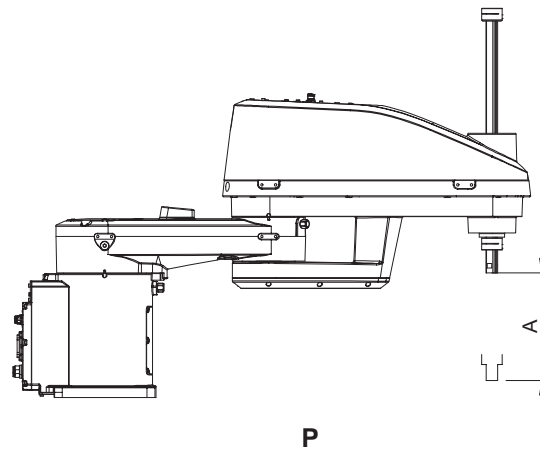
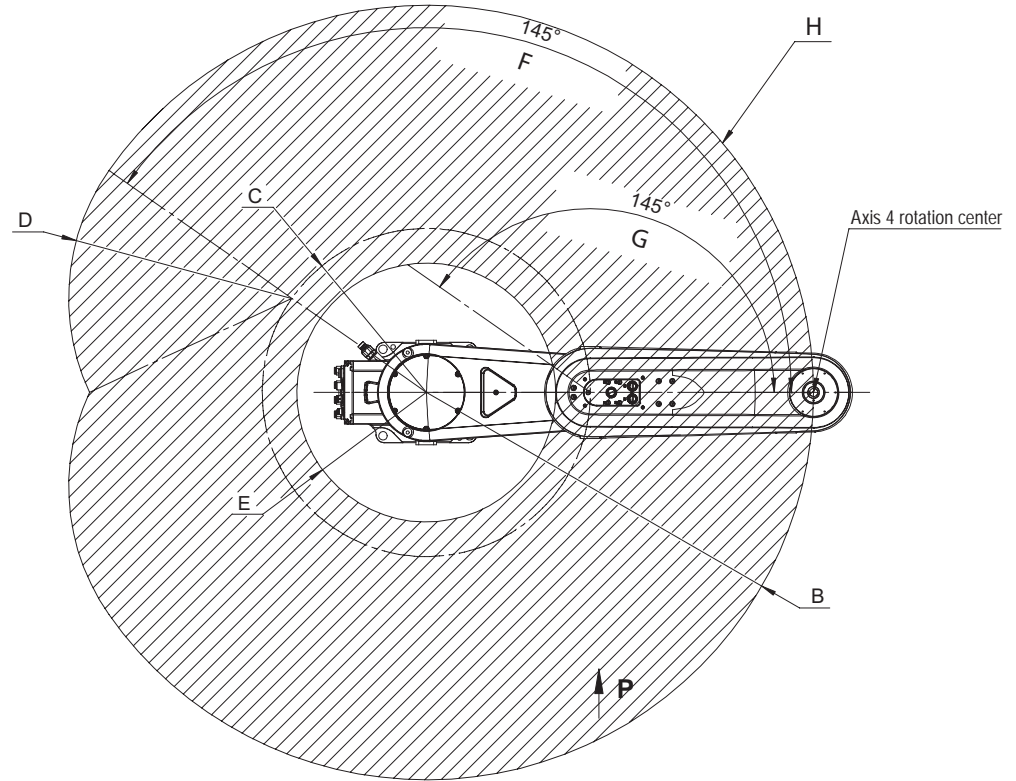
Variants	0.85_0.3	0.85_0.45	1.05_0.3	1.05_0.45
X	360 mm	360 mm	560 mm	560 mm
Y	330 mm	330 mm	530 mm	530 mm
Z	854.2 mm	1,004.2 mm	854.2 mm	1,004.2 mm

2.4 Working range

Illustration, working range

Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2300000163

Variants	0.85_0.3	0.85_0.45	1.05_0.3	1.05_0.45
A (Axis3)	300 mm	450 mm	300 mm	450 mm
B	850 mm		1,050 mm	
C	360 mm		560 mm	

Continues on next page

2 Manipulator description

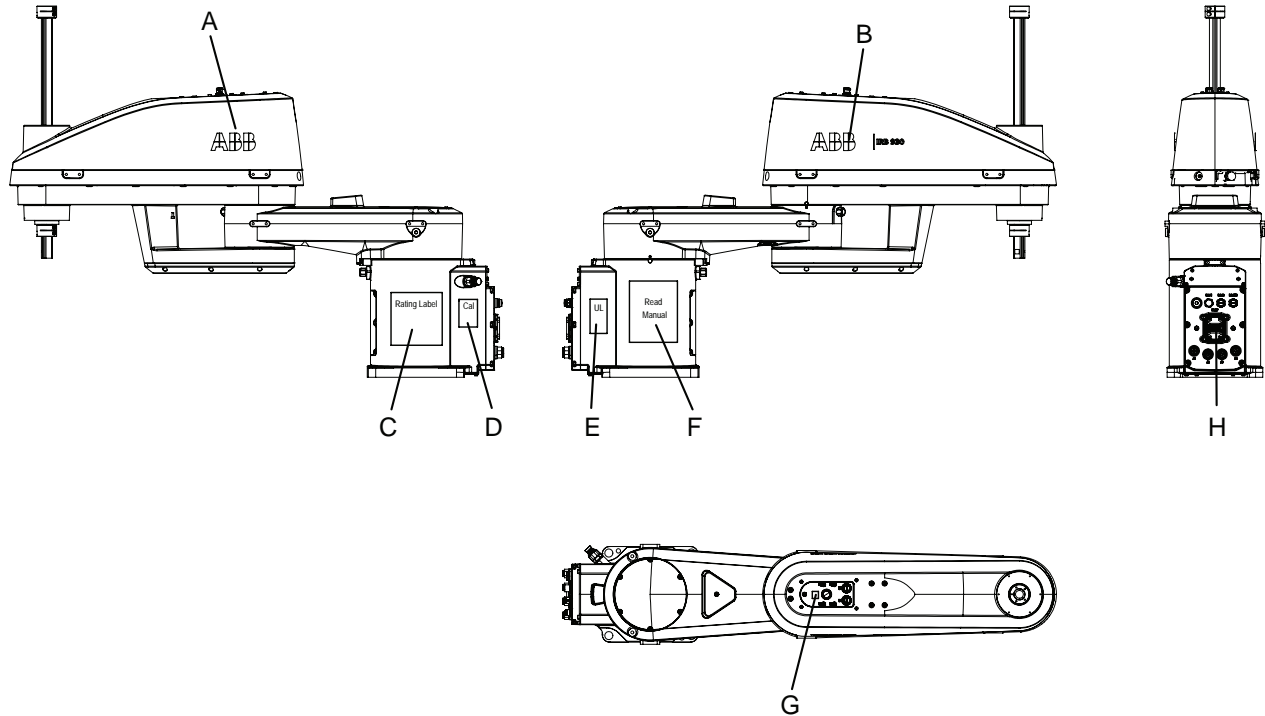
2.4 Working range

Continued

Variants	0.85_0.3	0.85_0.45	1.05_0.3	1.05_0.45
D	490 mm			
E	284.1 mm		322.7 mm	
F (Axis1)	±145°			
G (Axis2)	±145°			
H (Axis4)	±400°			

2.5 Information labels

Illustration



xx2300000167

A	ABB logo
B	IRB 930 logo
C	Rating label
D	Calibration label
E	UL label
F	Read manual and caution
G	Brake release label
H	Extra O-ring fitting label

2 Manipulator description

2.6 The unit is sensitive to ESD

2.6 The unit is sensitive to ESD

Description

ESD (electrostatic discharge) is the transfer of electrical static charge between two bodies at different potentials, either through direct contact or through an induced electrical field. When handling parts or their containers, personnel not grounded may potentially transfer high static charges. This discharge may destroy sensitive electronics.

Safe handling

Use one of the following alternatives:

- Use a wrist strap.

Wrist straps must be tested frequently to ensure that they are not damaged and are operating correctly.

- Use an ESD protective floor mat.

The mat must be grounded through a current-limiting resistor.

- Use a dissipative table mat.

The mat should provide a controlled discharge of static voltages and must be grounded.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning

General

This chapter contains assembly instructions and information for installing the IRB 930 at the working site.

See also the product manual for the robot controller.

The installation must be done by qualified installation personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The technical data is detailed in section [Technical data on page 38](#).

Safety information

Before any installation work is commenced, all safety information must be observed. There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before performing any installation work.



Note

Always connect the IRB 930 and the robot to protective earth and residual current device (RCD) before connecting to power and starting any installation work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT*

3 Installation and commissioning

3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

3.2 Unpacking

3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

Introduction


This section is intended for use when unpacking and installing the robot for the first time. It also contains information useful during later re-installation of the robot.

Prerequisites for installation personnel

Installation personnel working with an ABB product must:

- Be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/maintenance/repair work.
- Conform to all national and local codes.

Checking the pre-requisites for installation

	Action
1	Make a visual inspection of the packaging and make sure that nothing is damaged.
2	Remove the packaging.
3	Check for any visible transport damage.  Note Stop unpacking and contact ABB if transport damages are found.
4	Clean the unit with a lint-free cloth, if necessary.
5	Make sure that the lifting accessory used (if required) is suitable to handle the weight of the robot as specified in: Weight, robot on page 38
6	If the robot is not installed directly, it must be stored as described in: Storage conditions, robot on page 41
7	Make sure that the expected operating environment of the robot conforms to the specifications as described in: Operating conditions, robot on page 41
8	Before taking the robot to its installation site, make sure that the site conforms to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Loads on foundation, robot on page 39• Protection classes, robot on page 41• Requirements, foundation on page 40
9	Before moving the robot, please observe the stability of the robot: Risk of tipping/stability on page 49
10	When these prerequisites are met, the robot can be taken to its installation site as described in section: On-site installation on page 54
11	Install required equipment, if any.

3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

Risk of tipping

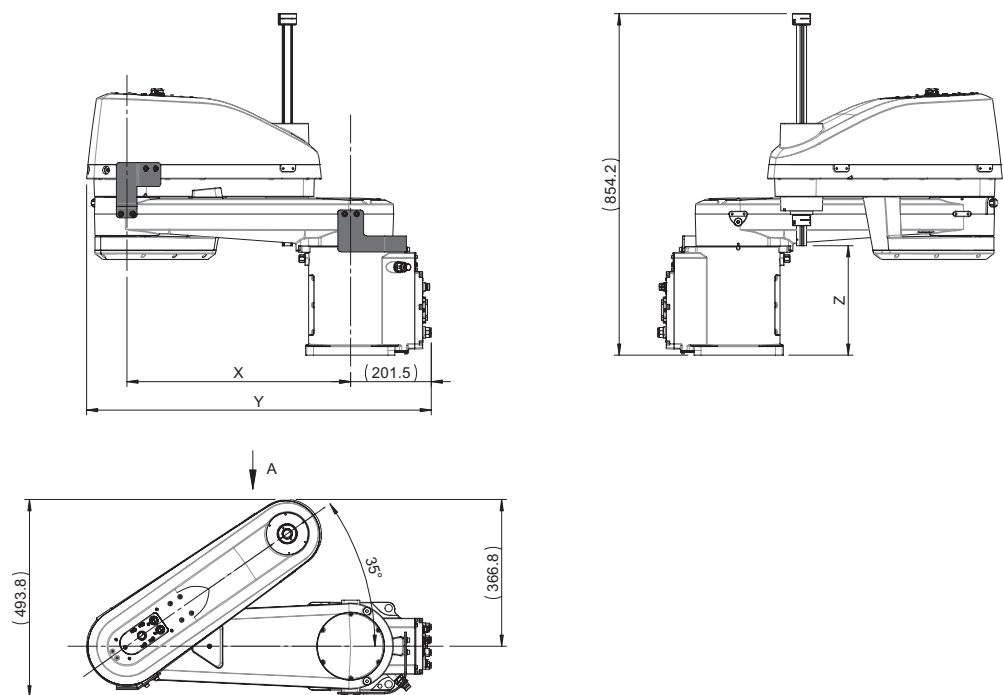
If the robot is not fastened to the foundation while moving the arm, the robot is not stable in the whole working area. Moving the arm will displace the center of gravity, which may cause the robot to tip over.

The transportation position is the most stable position.

Do not change the robot position before securing it to the foundation!

Transportation position

This figure shows the robot in its transportation position.



xx230000583

Variants	0.85_0.3	0.85_0.45	1.05_0.3	1.05_0.45
X	360 mm		560 mm	
Y	(662.2 mm)		(862.2 mm)	
Z	274.2 mm	124.2 mm	274.2 mm	124.2 mm
Axis1	0°			
Axis2	-145°			
Axis3	0 mm	-150 mm	0 mm	-150 mm



Note

The robot might be positioned in a different position at delivery, due to actual configurations and options (for example DressPack).

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

Continued

Transportation bracket

At delivery, the robot is locked in the correct position with a transportation bracket for securing the position during shipping and transport. The bracket must be removed before conducting any service work.

How to use the transportation bracket is described further in [Transportation bracket on page 51](#).



WARNING

The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.

3.2.3 Transportation bracket

Location of the transportation bracket

At delivery, the robot is locked in the correct position with the transportation brackets for securing the position during shipping and transport. The transportation brackets cannot be removed until the robot is secured to the foundation.



Note

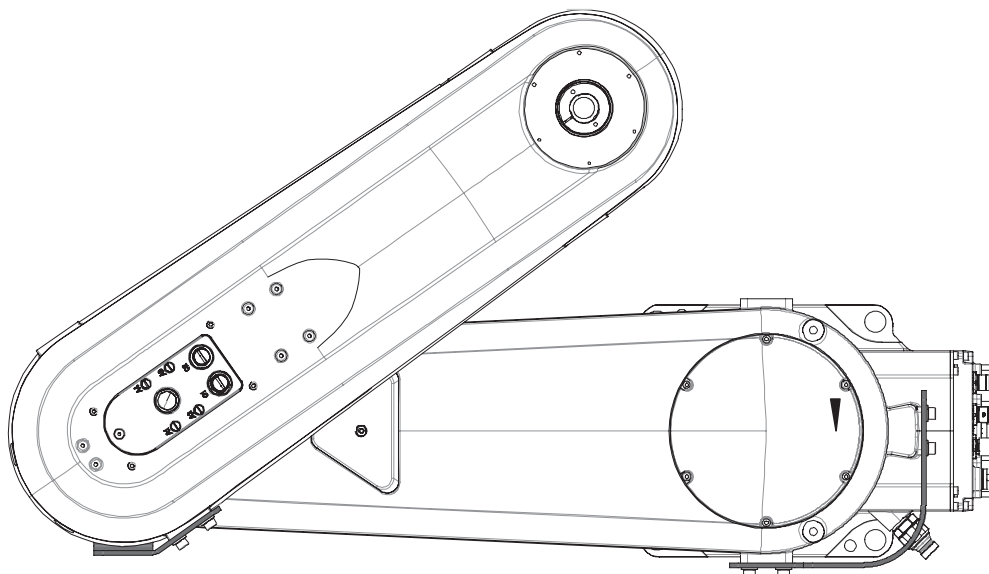
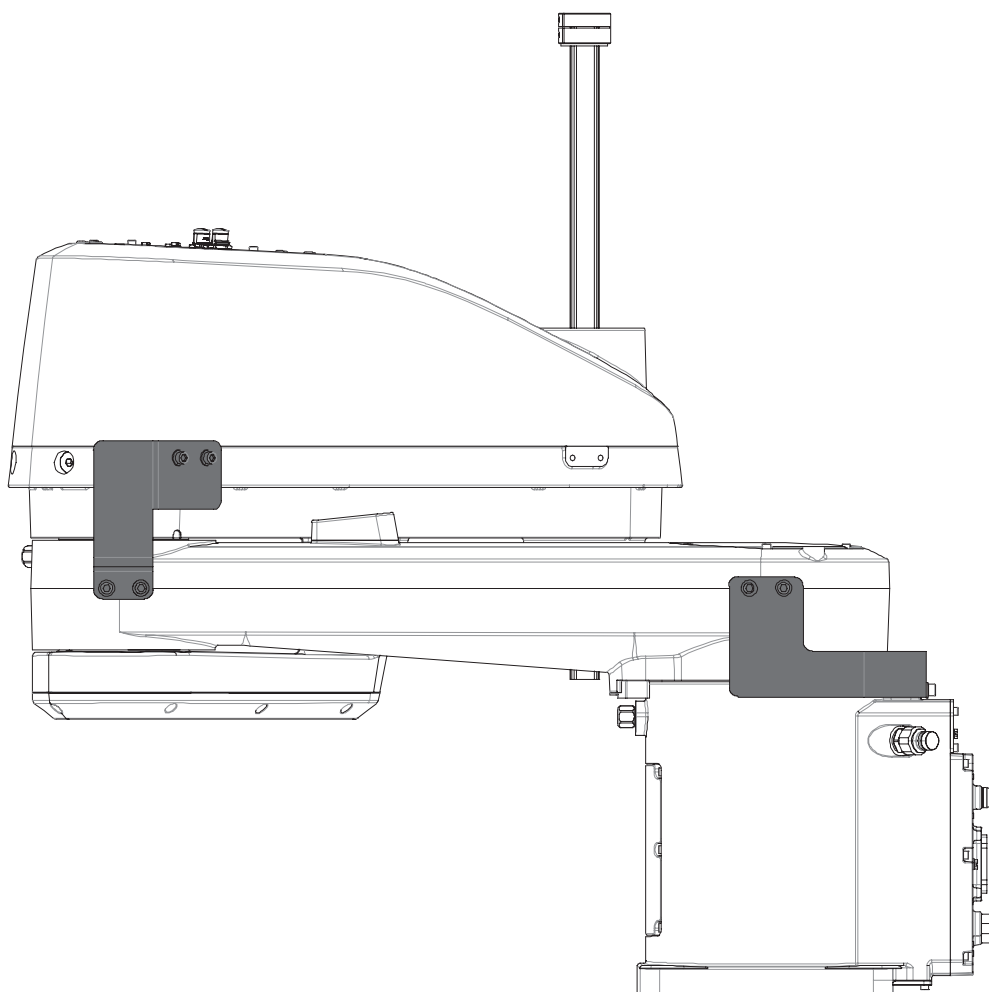
Keep the brackets every time when it's removed from the robot for further use.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.2.3 Transportation bracket

Continued



xx2300000584

Continues on next page

Removing the transportation bracket

	Action	Note
1	Remove the screws.	
2	Remove the bracket.	

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.1 Brief installation procedure

3.3 On-site installation


3.3.1 Brief installation procedure

Introduction

This procedure is a brief guide when installing the robot for the first time. Also see [Pre-installation procedure on page 48](#).

First installation

Use these procedures to install the IRB 930.

	Action	Note
1	Transport the manipulator to its intended location.	
2	Install the valid platform or prepare the foundation for the manipulator.	
3	Lift and secure the manipulator to the platform/foundation.	See Lifting the robot on page 56 . See Orienting and securing the robot on page 60 .
4	Connect the manipulator to the controller.	See <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Product manual - OmniCore C30• Product manual - OmniCore C90XT
5	Configure the safety settings.	See <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Product manual - OmniCore C30• Product manual - OmniCore C90XT
6	How to start and run the robot is described in the product manual for the controller.	See <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Product manual - OmniCore C30• Product manual - OmniCore C90XT
7	Install required equipment, if any.	
8	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

3.3.2 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



DANGER

Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

	Action
1	Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area.
2	Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up.
3	Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed.
4	Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable.
5	Verify that all safety equipment is installed, as designed for the application.
6	Verify that no personnel are inside the safeguarded space.
7	If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was maintained.
8	Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed.

Collision risks



CAUTION

When programming the movements of the robot, always identify potential collision risks before initiating motion.

3 Installation and commissioning

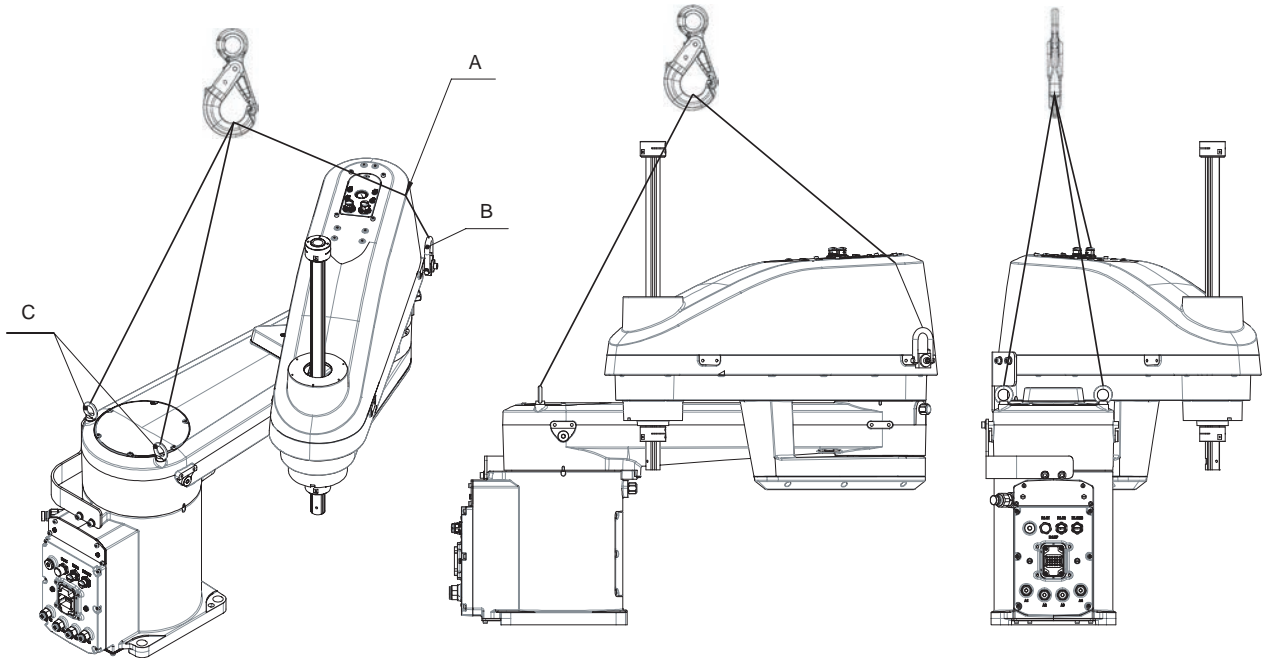
3.3.3.1 Lifting robot with lifting accessories

3.3.3 Lifting the robot

3.3.3.1 Lifting robot with lifting accessories

Illustration - attaching the roundslings

Only 550 mm and 650 mm can be lifted with lifting accessories.



xx2300000164

A: Sling may rub against the manipulator. Be careful to avoid damaging the painting surface. Better to use a buffer.

B: Lifting eye, M6; Rotatable type is recommended.

C: Lifting eye, M8.



DANGER

Attempting to lift a robot in any other position than the recommended lifting position may result in the robot tipping over, causing severe damage or injury.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Overhead crane	-	
Roundslings, 0.6 m	-	Length: 0.6 m. Lifting capacity: >70 kg.
Lifting eye, M6	-	
Lifting eye, M8	-	

Continues on next page




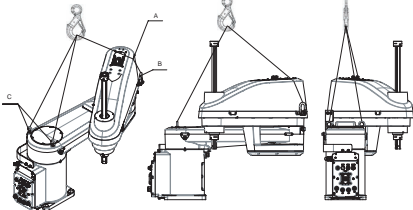
Lifting the robot



WARNING

The transportation brackets cannot be removed until the robot is secured to the foundation.

Use this procedure to lift the robot.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Move the robot to the appropriate lifting position.</p> <p> WARNING</p> <p>The robot is mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.</p>	
2	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>The weight of the IRB 930 robot is 22 kg All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>	
3	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Personnel must not, under any circumstances, be present under the suspended load.</p>	
4	<p>Attach the lifting roundslings to the robot.</p>	<p>Lifting capacity for the lifting chain is specified in Required tools and equipment on page 56.</p>  <p>xx2300000164</p>
5	<p>Carefully stretch the roundslings by lifting the crane slowly. This prevents the robot from falling down when it is unfastened. Do not overstretch the roundslings if the robot is fastened because there is a risk of the robot being damaged.</p>	
6	<p>Remove the robot attachment screws (if the robot is fastened).</p>	<p>Screw: M16x50 (4 pcs)</p>
7	<p>Raise the overhead crane to lift the robot.</p>	

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

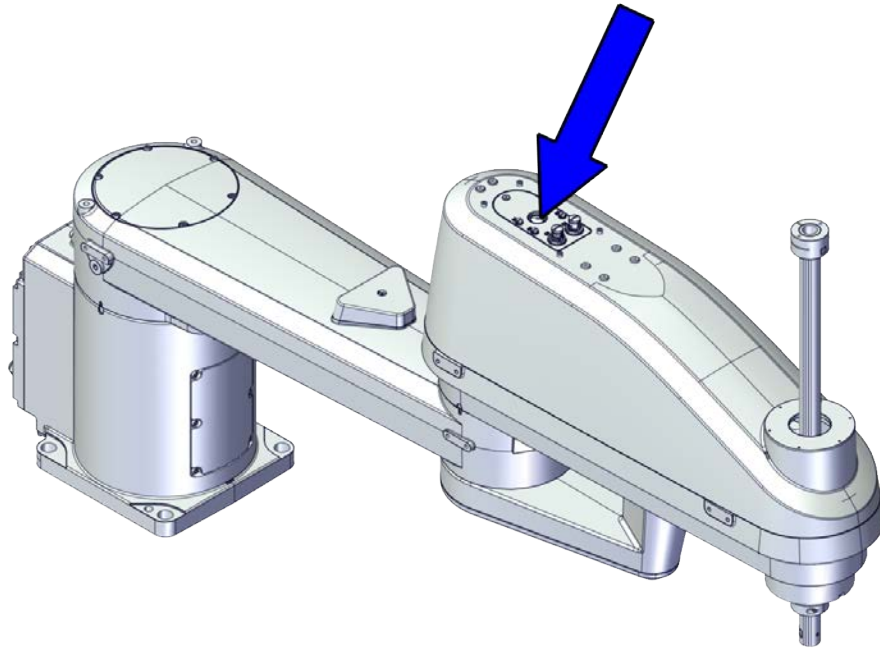
3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

Introduction to manually releasing the brakes

This section describes how to release the holding brakes for the axes motors.

Location of the brake release unit



The brake release unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000168

Releasing the brakes

This procedure describes how to release the holding brakes when the robot is equipped with a brake release unit.


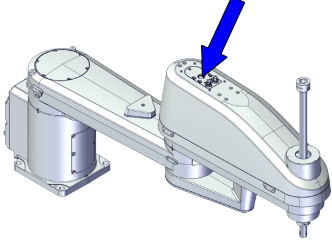
	Action	Note
1	 Note If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 59 .	
2	 DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways. Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot.	

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning



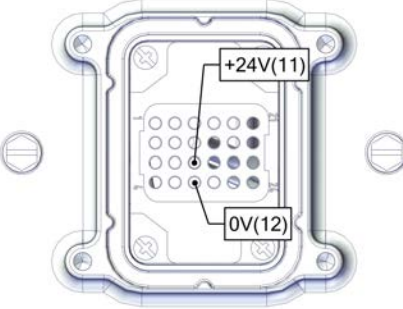
3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Release the holding brake of all axes by pressing the brake release button.</p> <p>The brake will be enable as soon as the button is released.</p> <p> WARNING</p> <p>Pressing the brake release button will release the holding brakes on all axes simultaneously.</p>	 <p>xx2300000168</p>

Supplying power to connector R1.MP

If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to connector R1.MP on the robot, in order to enable the brake release buttons.

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Incorrect connections, such as supplying power to the wrong pin, may cause all brakes to be released simultaneously and instantly!</p>	
2	<p>Supply</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0V on pin 12. • 24V on pin 11. <p> Note</p> <p>Do not interchange the 24V and 0V pins. If they are mixed up, damage can be caused to internal electrical components.</p>	 <p>xx2300000169</p>
3	<p>Use the brake releasing button as described in Releasing the brakes on page 58.</p>	

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

General

This section describes how to orient and secure the robot to the base plate or foundation in order to run the robot safely.

Attachment screws


The table below specifies the type of securing screws and washers to be used for securing the robot to the base plate/foundation.

Suitable screws	M16x50
Quantity	4 pcs
Quality	8.8
Suitable washer	30 x 17 x 3 steel hardness class 200HV
Guide pins	2 pcs, D10x30, ISO 2338 - 10m6x30 - A1
Tightening torque	150 Nm±10 Nm
Length of thread engagement	Minimum 22 mm for ground with material yield strength 150 MPa
Level surface requirements	0.1/500 mm ⁱ

ⁱ See [Requirements, foundation on page 40](#).

Securing a floor mounted robot

Use this procedure to orient and secure the robot floor mounted.

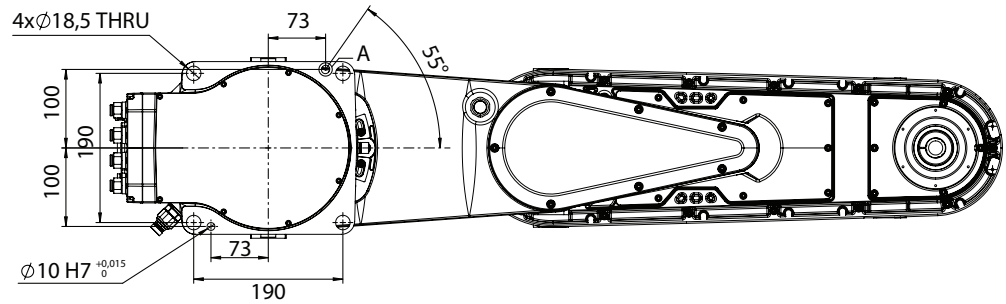
	Action	Note
1	Make sure the installation site for the robot conforms to the specifications in section Technical data on page 38 .	
2	Prepare the installation site with attachment holes. The foundation surface must be clean and unpainted.	The hole configuration of the base is shown in the figure in Hole configuration, base on page 61 .
3		
4	 CAUTION When the robot is put down after being lifted or transported, there is a risk of it tipping, if not properly secured.	
5	Lift the robot.	See Lifting the robot on page 56 .
6	Fit two pins to the holes in the base.	2 pcs, D10x30, ISO 2338 - 10m6x30 - A1
7	Guide the robot gently, using the attachment screws while lowering it into its mounting position.	Make sure the robot base is correctly fitted onto the pins.
8	Fit the securing screws and washers in the attachment holes of the base.	Screws: M16x50, 4 pcs, quality 8.8 Washers: 30 x 17 x 3 steel hardness class 200HV
9	Tighten the bolts in a crosswise pattern to ensure that the base is not distorted.	Tightening torque: 150 Nm±10 Nm

Continues on next page

Hole configuration, base

This illustration shows the hole configuration used when securing the robot.

Illustration for rear outlet cable version:



xx2300000165

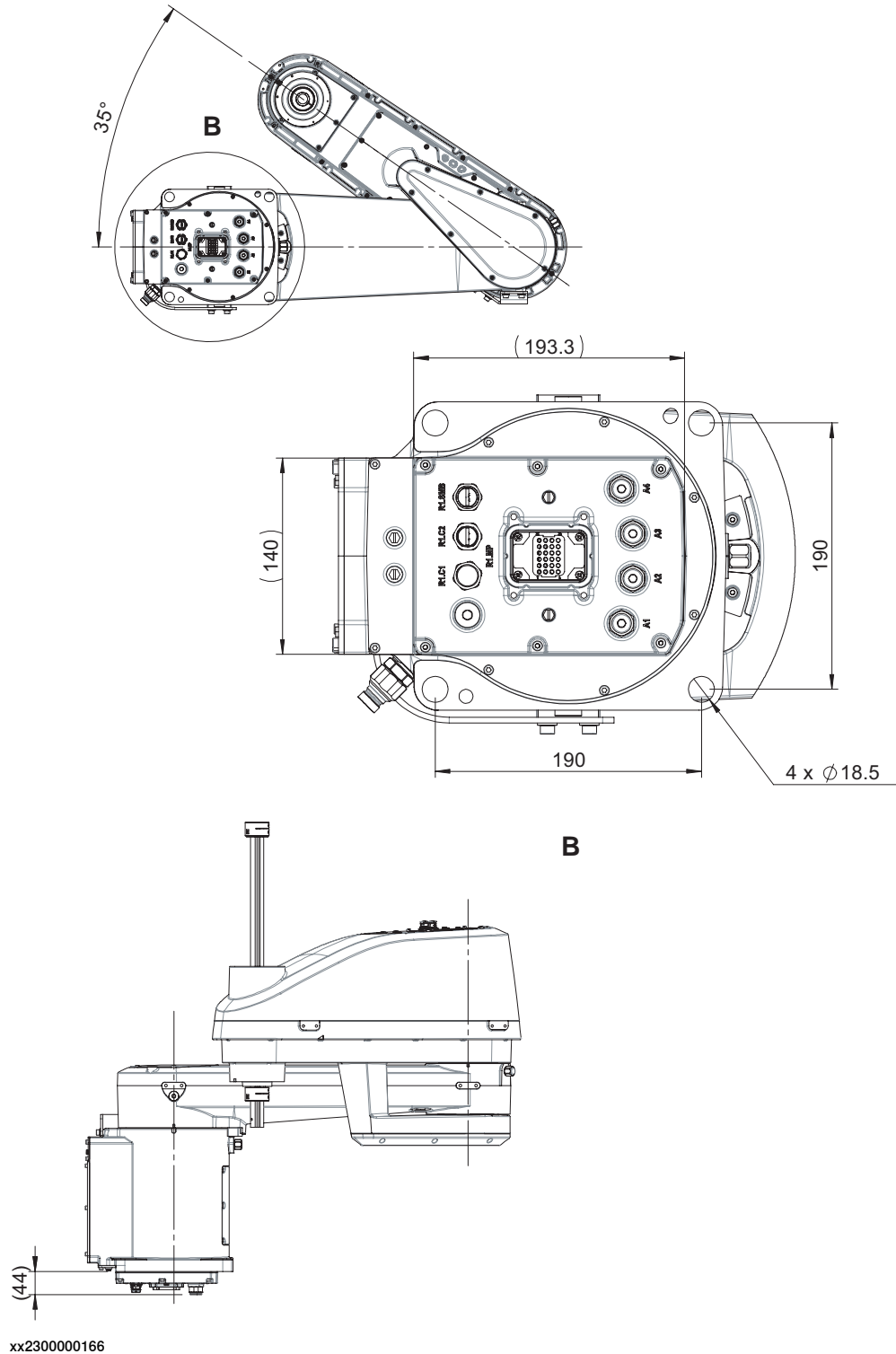
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

Continued

Illustration for underneath outlet cable version:



3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

Define loads carefully

Any loads mounted on the robot must be defined correctly and carefully (with regard to the position of center of gravity and mass moments of inertia) in order to avoid jolting movements and overloading motors, gears and structure.



CAUTION

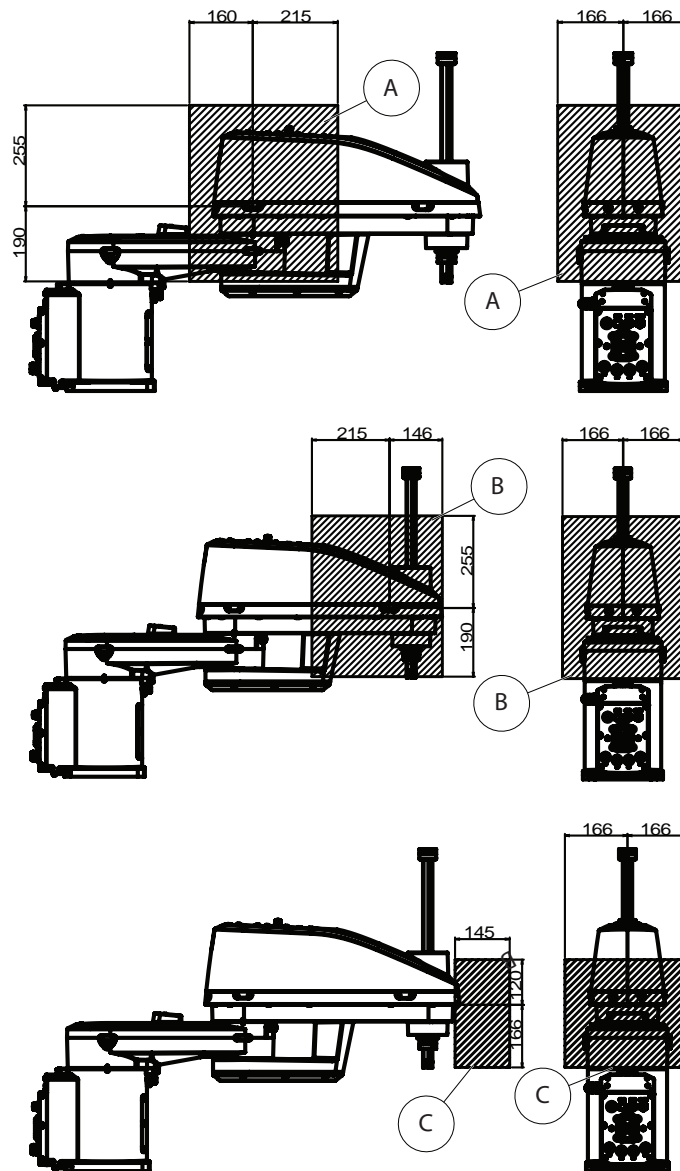
Incorrectly defined loads may result in operational stops or major damage to the robot.

Load diagrams, permitted extra loads (equipment) and their positions are specified in the product specification. The loads must be defined in the software.

Stopping time and braking distances

The performance of the motor brake depends on if there are any loads attached to the robot.

See the product specification for the robot, listed in [References on page 10](#).



xx2300000429

Load area robot	Max load		
	A	B	C
IRB 930-12/0.85	1 kg	1 kg	1 kg
IRB 930-12/1.05			
IRB 930-22/1.05	1.5 kg	1.5 kg	1.5 kg

Fitting of end effector to the ball screw spline shaft

An end effector can be attached to the lower end of the shaft of the ball screw spline unit. The dimensions for fitting the end effector is shown in the following figure.



Note

Mounting of other equipment on the IRB 930 may damage the gearboxes.

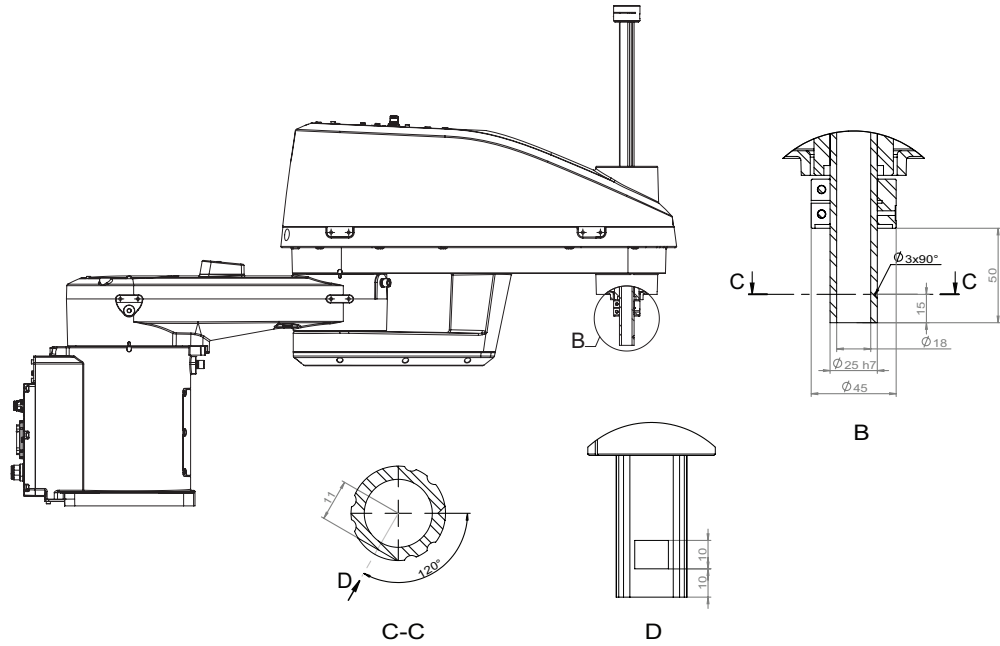
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

Continued

Robots with protection class IP30 3350-300



xx2300000171

Fastener quality

When fitting tools on the tool flange, only use screws with quality 12.9. For other equipment use suitable screws and tightening torque for your application.

3.4 Restricting the working range

3.4.1 Adjusting the working range

Reasons for adjusting the manipulator working range

The working range of each manipulator axis is configured in the software. If there is a risk that the manipulator may collide with other objects at installation site, its working space should be limited. The manipulator must always be able to move freely within its entire working space.

Working range configurations

The parameter values for the axes working range can be altered within the allowed working range and according to available options for the robot, either to limit or to extend a default working range. Allowed working ranges and available options for each manipulator axis are specified in [Working range on page 43](#).

Mechanical stops on the manipulator

Mechanical stops are and can be installed on the manipulator as limiting devices to ensure that the manipulator axis does not exceed the working range values set in the software parameters.



Note

The mechanical stops are only installed as safety precaution to physically stop the robot from exceeding the working range set. A collision with a mechanical stop always requires actions for repair and troubleshooting.

Axis	Fixed mechanical stop ⁱ	Movable mechanical stop ⁱⁱ
Axis 1	yes	no
Axis 2	yes	no
Axis 3	yes	yes
Axis 4	no	no

ⁱ Part of the casting or fixed on the casting and can not /should not be removed.

ⁱⁱ Can be installed in one or more than one position, to ensure a reduced working range, or be removed to allow extended working range.

3 Installation and commissioning

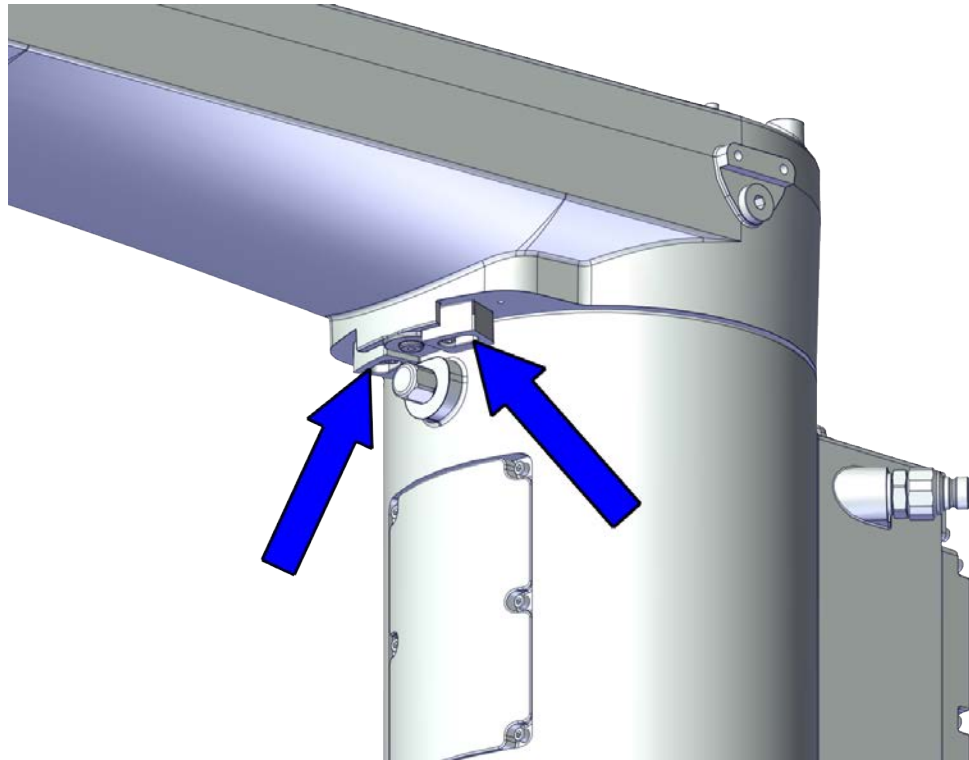
3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

Axis-1 mechanical stops

Location of the axis-1 mechanical stop

The figures shows where the axis-1 mechanical stop is placed on the robot.



xx2300000173

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Rubber stop	3HAC081815-001	With bolt
Hex socket head cap flange screw	3HAB3412-416	Used for axis-1 mechanical stop.

Replacement of the axis-1 mechanical stop

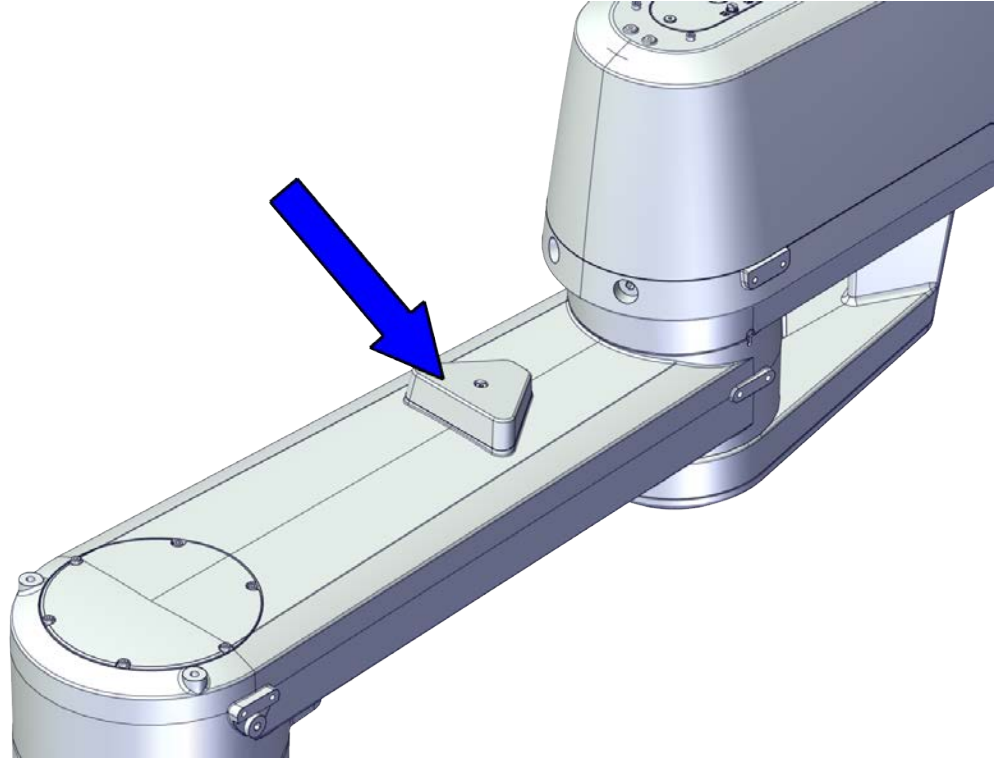
For more details about replacing the axis-1 mechanical stop, see [Replacing the mechanical stopper on page 277](#).

Continues on next page

Axis-2 mechanical stops

Location of the axis-2 mechanical stop

The figures shows where the axis-2 mechanical stop is placed on the robot.



xx230000174

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Damper	3HAC084073-001	Replace if damaged.
Hex socket head cap flange	3HAB3412-412	Used for axis-2 mechanical stop.

Replacement of the axis-2 mechanical stop

For more details about replacing the axis-2 mechanical stop, see [Replacing the mechanical stopper on page 277](#).

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

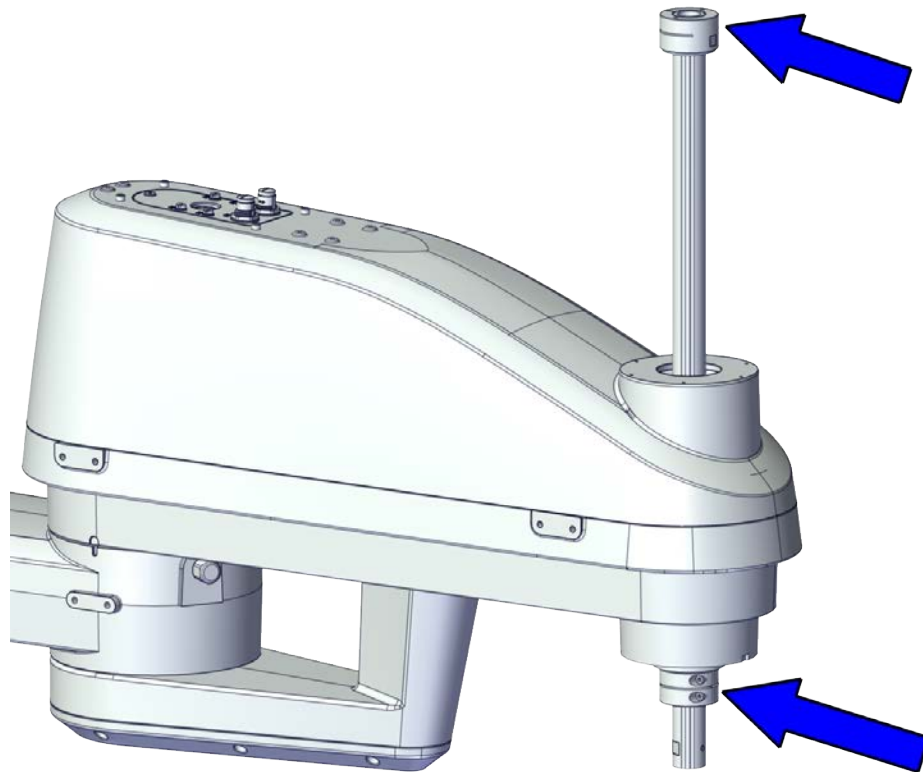
3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

Continued

Axis 3 mechanical stops

Location of the mechanical stops

The figures shows where the axis 3 mechanical stops are placed on the robot.



xx2300000172

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Rubber bumper	3HAC081787-001	
Mechanical stopper	3HAC081786-001	

Replacement of the axis-3 mechanical stop

For more details about replacing the axis-3 mechanical stop, see [Replacing the mechanical stopper on page 277](#).

3.5 Electrical connections

3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

Introduction

Connect the robot and controller to each other after securing them to the foundation. The lists below specify which cables to use for each respective application.



DANGER

Turn off the main power before connecting any cables.



CAUTION

Verify that the robot serial number is according to the number(s) in the *Declaration of Incorporation (DoI)*.

Main cable categories

The following table specifies cabling categories between the robot and the controller. Some of the cabling belong to optional applications.

Cable category	Description
Robot cables	Handles power supply to and control of the robot's motors as well as feedback from the serial measurement board. Specified in the table Robot cables on page 71 .
Customer cables	Handles communication with equipment fitted on the robot by the customer, low voltage signals and high voltage power supply + protective ground. The customer cables also handle databus communication. The customer cables also include the air hose. See the product manual for the controller, see document number in References on page 10 .
Air hoses	The hose for compressed air is integrated with the manipulator cable harness.

Robot cables

These cables are included in the standard delivery. They are completely pre-manufactured and ready to plug in.

Cable sub-category	Description	Connection point, cabinet	Connection point, robot
Robot cables, power	Transfers drive power from the drive units in the control cabinet to the robot motors.	X1	R1.MP
Robot cable, signals	Transfers resolver data from and power supply to the serial measurement board.	X2	R1.SMB

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

Continued

Robot cable, power

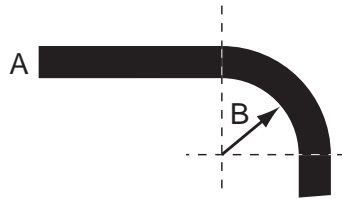
Power cable length	Article number
Power cable, straight connector, 3 m	3HAC077245-001
Power cable, straight connector, 7 m	3HAC077245-002
Power cable, straight connector, 15 m	3HAC077245-003
Power cable, angled connector, 3 m	3HAC077247-001
Power cable, angled connector, 7 m	3HAC077247-002
Power cable, angled connector, 15 m	3HAC077247-003

Robot cable, signals

Signal cable length	Article number
Signal cable, shielded: 3 m	3HAC067446-001
Signal cable, shielded: 7 m	3HAC067446-002
Signal cable, shielded: 15 m	3HAC067446-003

Bending radius for static floor cables

The minimum bending radius is 10 times the cable diameter for static floor cables.



xx1600002016

A	Diameter
B	Diameter x10

Customer cables - CP/CS cable

CP/CS cable length	Article number
3 m	3HAC067449-001
7 m	3HAC067449-002
15 m	3HAC067449-003

Customer cables - Ethernet floor cable

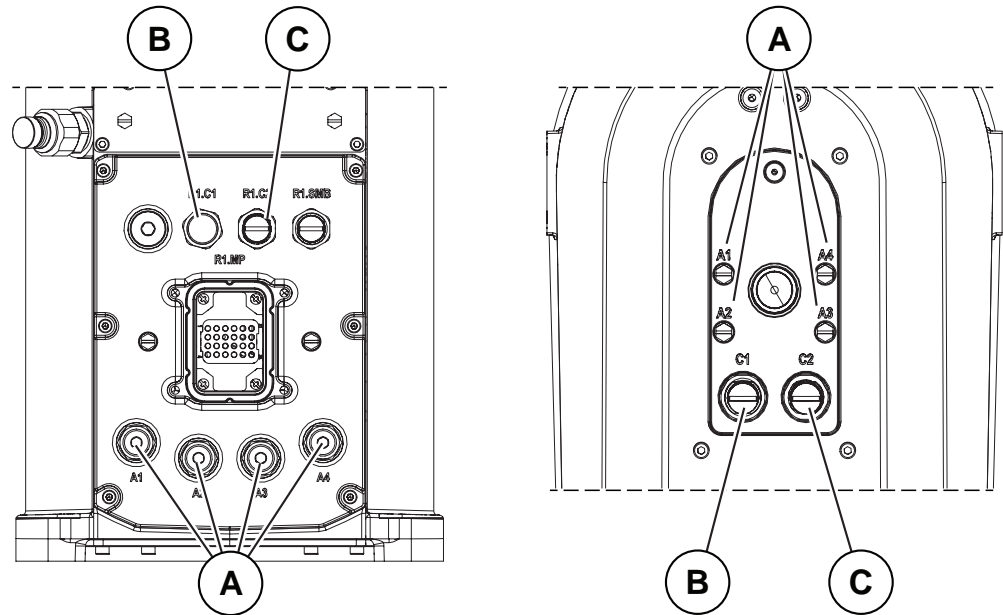
Ethernet floor cable length	Article number
7 m	3HAC067447-002
15 m	3HAC067447-003

3.5.2 Customer connections

Introduction to customer connections

The cables for customer connection are integrated in the robot and the connectors are placed at the outer arm and base. There are two connectors C1/C2 at the outer arm. Corresponding connector R1.C1/R1.C2 are located at the base.

Hose for compressed air is also integrated into the manipulator. There are 4 inlets at the base (R1/8") and 4 outlets (M5) on the outer arm.



xx230000175

Position	Connection	Description	Number	Value
A	Air	Max. 6 bar	4	Air hose with outer diameter 6 mm, 4 pcs
B	C1	Customer power/signal	12 wires	30 V, 1.5 A
C	C2	Customer power/signal or ethernet	8 wires	30 V, 1 A or 1 Gbits/s

Connector kits (optional)

Connector kits, base

R1.C1 and R1.C2 connectors on the base are parts of the CP/CS cable and Ethernet floor cable, respectively. For details about the robot cabling, see [Robot cabling and connection points on page 71](#).

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.2 Customer connections

Continued

Connector kits, outer arm

The table describes the CP/CS and Ethernet (if any) connector kits for the outer arm.

Position	Description	Art. no.	
Connector kits	CP/CS	M12 CPCS Male straight connector kits	3HAC066098-001
		M12 CPCS Male angled connector kits	3HAC066099-001
	Ethernet	M12 Ethernet Cat5e Male straight connector kits	3HAC067413-001
		M12 Ethernet Cat5e Male angled connector kits	3HAC067414-001

Protection covers

Protection covers for water and dust proofing

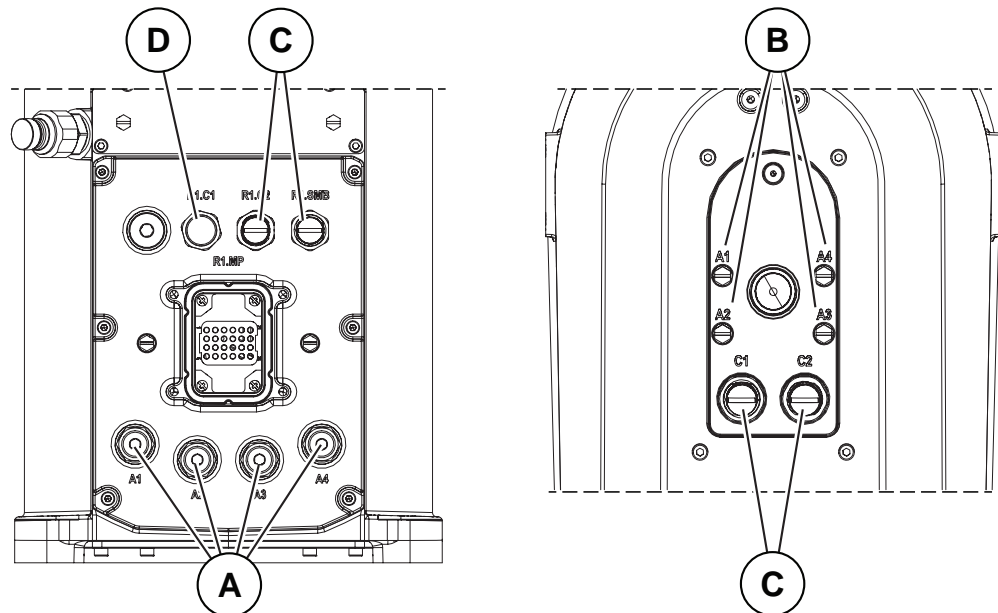
Protection covers are delivered together with the robot and must be well fitted to the connectors in any application requiring water and dust proofing.

Always remember to refit the protection covers after removing them.



Note

If the protection covers are not refitted back with the connectors exposed, the protection class will be lost.



xx2300000176

A	Protection covers for air hose connector on the base
B	Protection covers for air hose connector on the process hub
C	Protection covers for C2/SMB connector on the base and C1/C2 connector on the process hub

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.2 Customer connections

Continued

D	Protection cover for C1 connector on the base
---	---

3 Installation and commissioning

3.6 Start of robot in cold environments

3.6 Start of robot in cold environments

Introduction

This section describes how to start the robot in a cold environment if it is not starting the normal way.

Problems with starting the robot

Event message from Motion Supervision

Use this procedure if an event message indicates a problem with Motion supervision at start-up. More information about Motion Supervision is found in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

	Action	Note
1	Turn off Motion Supervision.	
2	Start the robot.	
3	When the robot has reached normal working temperature, the Motion Supervision can be turned on again.	

Robot stopping with other event message

Use this procedure if the robot is not starting.

	Action	Note
1	Start the robot with its normal program but with reduced speed.	The speed can be regulated with the RAPID instruction <code>VelSet</code> .

Adjusting the speed and acceleration during warm-up

Depending on how cold the environment is and what program is being used, the speed might need to be ramped up until reached maximum. The table shows examples of how to adjust the speed:

Work cycles	AccSet	Speed/velocity
3 Work cycles	20, 20	v100 (100 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	40, 40	v400 (400 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	60, 60	v600 (600 mm/s)
5 Work cycles	100, 100	v1000 (1000 mm/s)
More than 5 Work cycles	100, 100	Max.

If the program consists of large wrist movements, it is possible that the reorientation velocity, which is always high in predefined velocities, needs to be included in the ramping up.

3.7 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



DANGER

Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

	Action
1	Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area.
2	Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up.
3	Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed.
4	Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable.
5	Verify that all safety equipment is installed, as designed for the application.
6	Verify that no personnel are inside the safeguarded space.
7	If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was maintained.
8	Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed.

Collision risks



CAUTION

When programming the movements of the robot, always identify potential collision risks before initiating motion.

This page is intentionally left blank

4 Maintenance

4.1 Introduction

Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes all the maintenance activities recommended for the IRB 930.

It is based on the maintenance schedule found at the beginning of the chapter. The schedule contains information about required maintenance activities including intervals, and refers to procedures for the activities.

Each procedure contains all the information required to perform the activity, including required tools and materials.

The procedures are gathered in different sections and divided according to the maintenance activity.

Safety information

Observe all safety information before conducting any service work.

There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before performing any service work.

The maintenance must be done by qualified personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.



Note

If the IRB 930 is connected to power, always make sure that the IRB 930 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any maintenance work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT*
- [Robot cabling and connection points on page 71.](#)

4 Maintenance

4.2 Service Information System (SIS)

4.2 Service Information System (SIS)

General

Service Information System (SIS) is a software function within the robot controller, which simplifies maintenance of the robot system. It supervises the operating time and mode of the robot, and alerts the operator when a maintenance activity is scheduled.

Troubleshooting

The SIS function *Gearbox* is available for estimating the service interval (remaining lifetime) of the gearboxes of a robot. Such information of the ball screw spline unit of the IRB 930 is reported as **axis 3** in the SIS system. When a service message is reported for axis 3 of the IRB 930, an inspection on the ball screw spline unit is required.

For more information about the SIS function, see *Operating manual - Service Information System*.

4.3 Maintenance schedule and expected component life

4.3.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

Introduction

The intervals are specified in different ways depending on the type of maintenance activity to be carried out and the working conditions of the IRB 930:

- Calendar time: specified in months regardless of whether the system is running or not.
- Operating time: specified in operating hours. More frequent running means more frequent maintenance activities.
- SIS: specified by the robot's SIS (Service Information System). A typical value is given for a typical work cycle, but the value will differ depending on how hard each part is run.

The SIS used in OmniCore is further described in the *Operating manual - OmniCore*.

Robots with the functionality *Service Information System* activated can show active counters in the device browser in RobotStudio, or on the FlexPendant.

4 Maintenance

4.3.2 Maintenance schedule

4.3.2 Maintenance schedule

Scheduled and non-predictable maintenance

The robot must be maintained regularly to ensure proper function. The maintenance activities and intervals are specified in the table below.

Non-predictable situations also give rise to inspections of the robot. Any damage must be attended to immediately.

Life of each component

The inspection intervals *do not* specify the life of each component. Values for these are specified in the section [Expected component life on page 84](#)

Maintenance schedule

Maintenance activities	Regularly	Every 12 months	Every 36 months	Every 15,000 hours ⁱ	Every 20,000 hours ⁱ	Reference
Cleaning the robot	x					Cleaning the IRB 930 on page 98
Inspecting the robot	x					Check for abnormal wear or contamination.
Inspecting the robot harness	x ⁱⁱ					Inspecting the robot cabling on page 86
Inspecting the information labels		x				Inspecting the information labels on page 85
Inspecting the ball screw spline unit	x					Inspecting the ball screw spline unit on page 87
Inspecting the mechanical stop	x					Inspecting mechanical stops on page 90
Inspecting the timing belt		x				Inspecting timing belts on page 94
Lubricating the ball screw spline unit	x ⁱⁱⁱ					Lubricating the ball screw spline unit on page 96
Replacing the SMB battery pack			x ^{iv}			Replacing the battery pack on page 95
Running the <i>Brake Check</i> routine ^v	x ^{vi}					Recommended to robots without the SafeMove option. See <i>Operating manual - OmniCore</i> .
Running the <i>Cyclic Brake Check</i> routine ^v	x ^{vi}					Recommended to robots with the SafeMove option. See <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove</i> .
Overhaul of complete robot					x	

ⁱ Operating hours counted by the DTC = Duty time counter.

Continues on next page

- ii Replace when damage or cracks is detected or life limit is approaching that specified in section [Expected component life on page 84](#).
- iii Inspect the grease condition on ball screw spline unit frequently and lubricate the unit if any of grease degradation (including but not limited to discoloration or dry-out) or insufficiency is observed. Alternatively, lubricate the ball screw spline unit regularly depending on the application condition.
- iv The battery is to be replaced at given maintenance interval or at battery low alert.
- v Not needed separately if already included in the application.
- vi Recommended test interval is within the range 8-48 hours.

4 Maintenance

4.3.3 Expected component life

4.3.3 Expected component life

Expected life depends on usage

The expected life of a specific component of the robot can vary greatly depending on how hard it is run.

Expected component life

Component	Expected life	Note
Cable harness, normal usage ⁱ	20000 hours ⁱⁱ	
Cable harness, extreme usage ⁱⁱⁱ	20000 hours ⁱⁱ	
Gearboxes	20000 hours	

ⁱ Examples of "normal usage" in regard to movement: most material handling applications and limited use of bending backwards mode of axis 3.

ⁱⁱ Severe chemical or thermal environments, or similar environments, can result in shortened life expectancy.

ⁱⁱⁱ Examples of "extreme usage" in regard to movement: press tending, very severe palletizing applications, major use of axis 1 movement and major use of bending backwards of axis 3.

4.4 Inspection activities

4.4.1 Inspecting the information labels


Location of labels

These figures show the location of the information labels to be inspected. The symbols are described in section [Safety symbols on manipulator labels on page 19](#).

Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Inspecting, labels

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	
2	Inspect the labels, located as shown in the figures.	
3	Replace any missing or damaged labels.	Article numbers for the labels and plate set is specified in Spare parts on page 599 .

4 Maintenance

4.4.2 Inspecting the robot cabling

4.4.2 Inspecting the robot cabling


Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.

Inspection, robot cabling

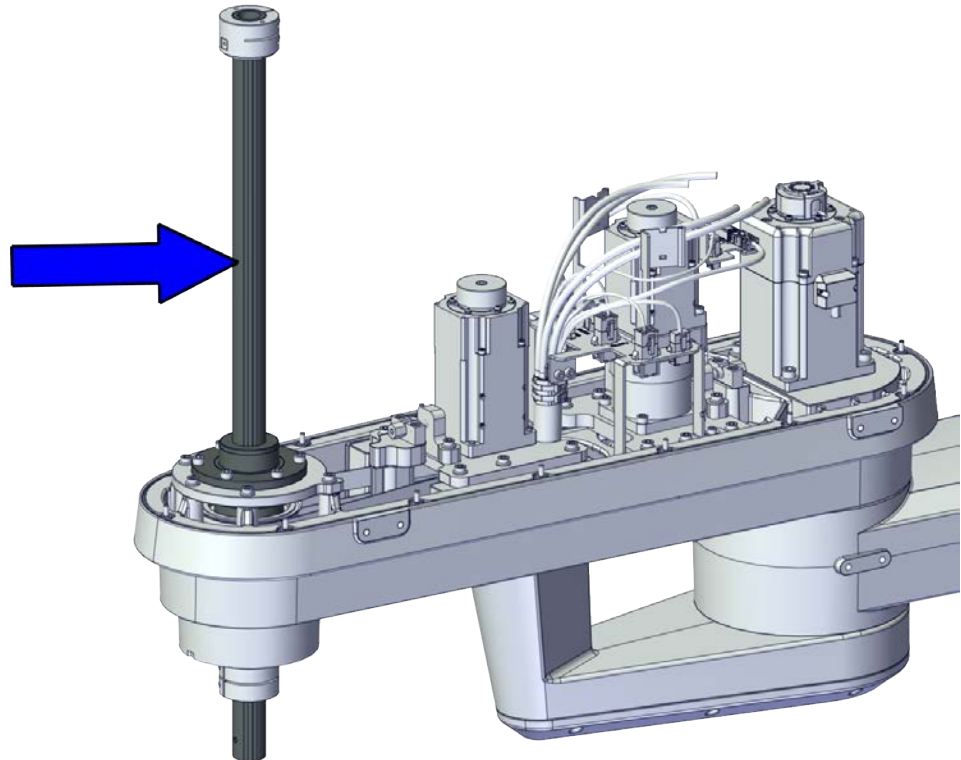
Use this procedure to inspect the robot cabling.

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply to the robot• hydraulic pressure supply to the robot• air pressure supply to the robot Before entering the robot working area.	
2	Visually inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the control cabling between the robot and control cabinet• the cabling to motors 1 and 2. Look for abrasions, cuts or crush damage.	
3	Replace the cabling if wear or damage is detected.	

4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

Location of ball screw spline unit

The ball screw spline unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000475

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ball screw	3HAC081796-001	
Ball screw, long stroke	3HAC081797-001	
Ball screw flange	3HAC081785-001	
Rubber bumper	3HAC081787-001	
Mechanical stopper	3HAC081786-001	
Pulley on the ball screw upper position	3HAC081703-001	

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance


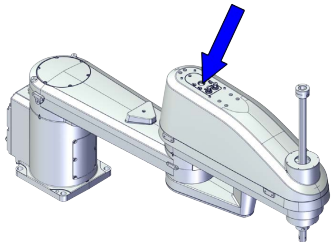
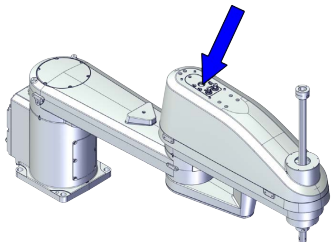
4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

Continued

Required tools and equipment

Spare part	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.

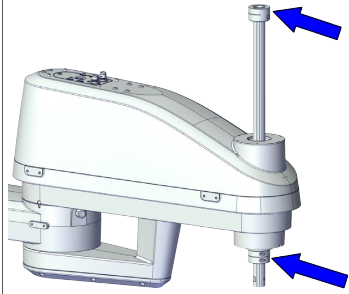
Inspecting, ball screw spline unit

	Action	Note
1	Turn on the electric power supply to the robot. If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 59 .	
2	 DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways! Make sure the payload is disassembled or tooling is properly supported; otherwise, fast downward movements of axis 3 may cause severe hits.	
3	Release the holding brake by pressing the button on the internal brake release unit.	 xx2300000168
4	Move the outer arm to a position where the axis 3 can be moved in full stroke.	
5	Press the brake release button and move the shaft to its upper and lower limits manually.	 xx2300000168

Continues on next page

4.4.3 Inspecting the ball screw spline unit

Continued

	Action	Note
6	<p>Visually inspect:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the stop blocks on the ball screw spline unit • the shaft of the ball screw spline unit <p>Look for abrasions, cuts or crush damages on the spline, and grease amount on the shaft.</p>	 <p>xx2300000172</p>
7	Apply grease to the shaft if it is not enough.	See Lubricating the ball screw spline unit on page 96 .
8	Replace the ball screw spline unit if wear or damage is detected.	See Replacing the ball screw on page 308 .

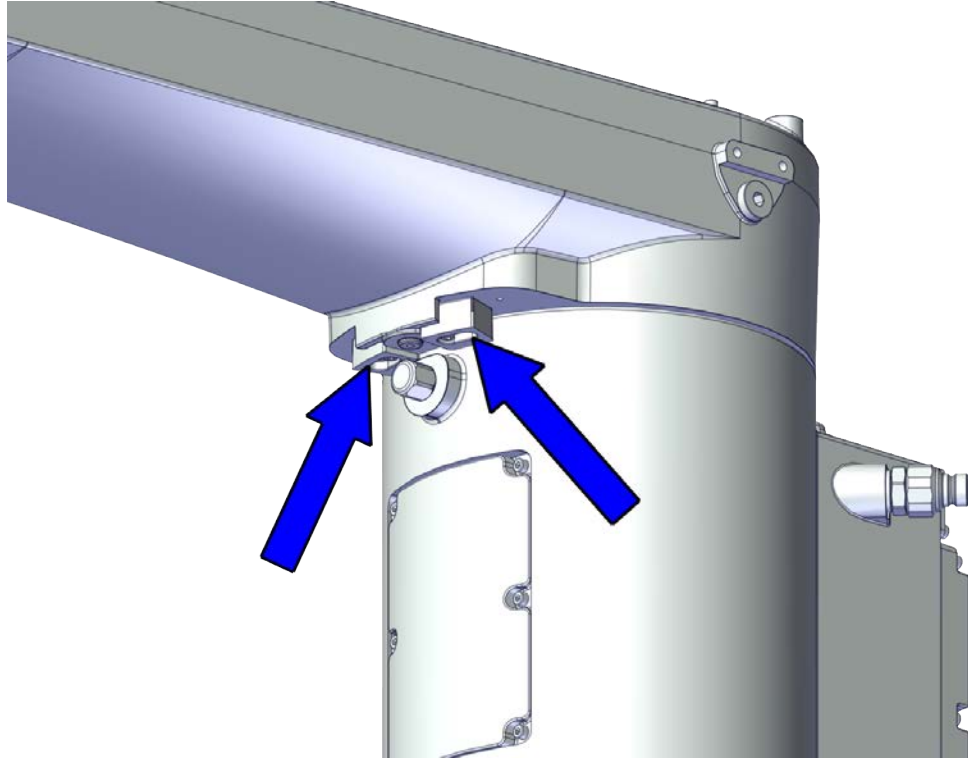
4 Maintenance

4.4.4 Inspecting mechanical stops

4.4.4 Inspecting mechanical stops

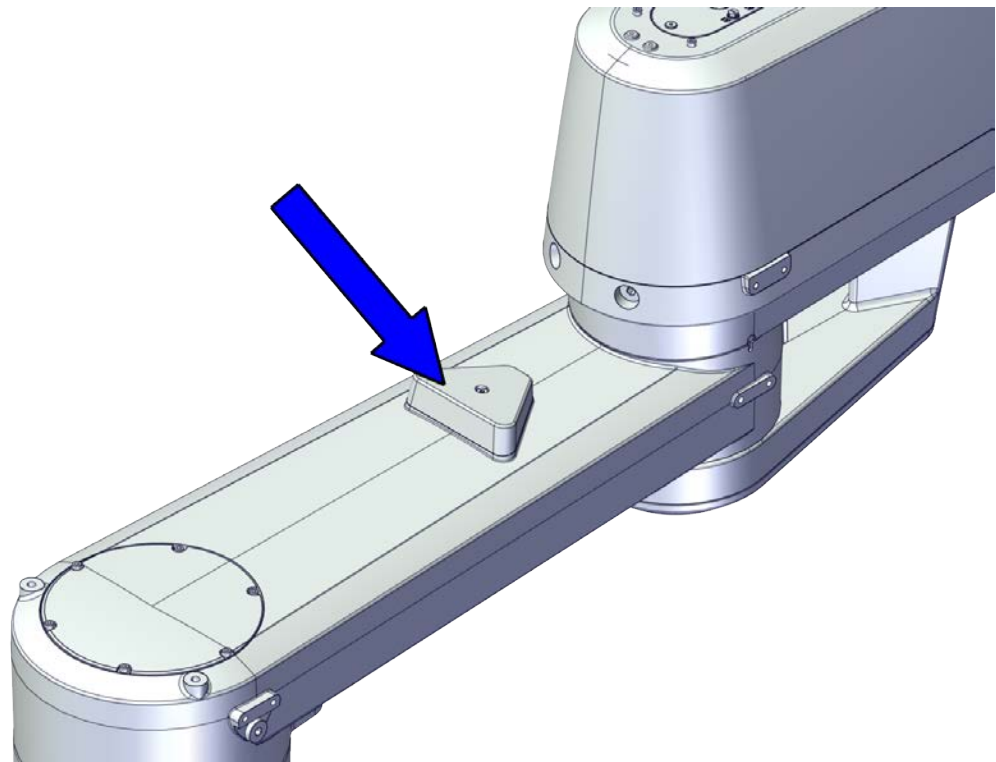
Location of mechanical stops

The mechanical stops on axis 1, 2 and 3 are located as shown in the figures.

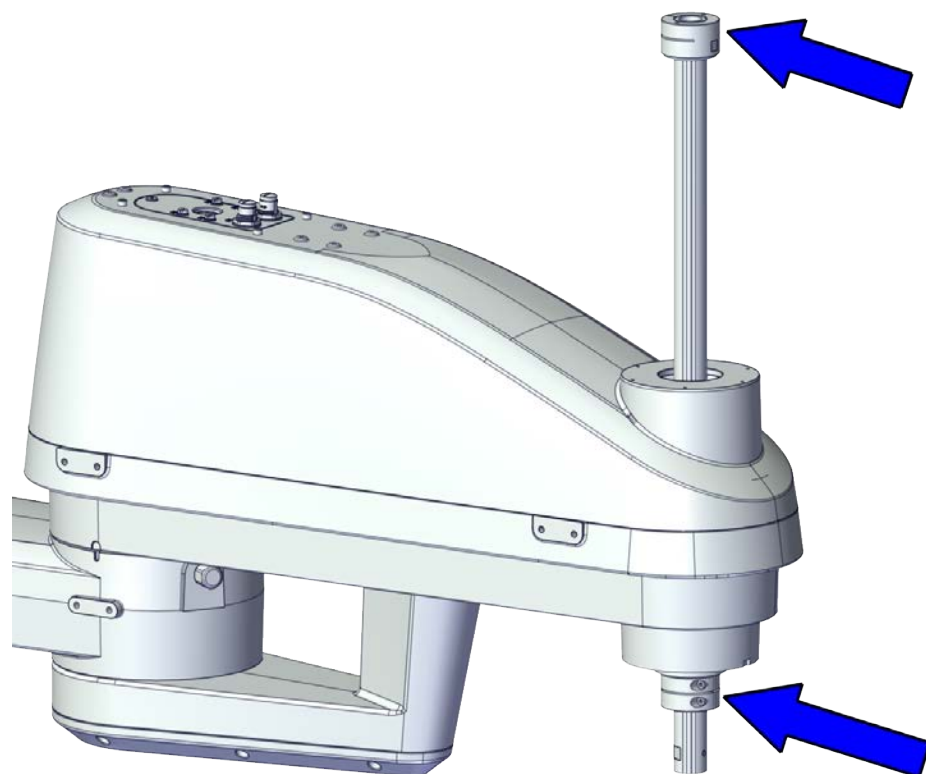


xx2300000173

Continues on next page



xx230000174



xx230000172

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.4.4 Inspecting mechanical stops

Continued

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Rubber bumper	3HAC081787-001	
Mechanical stopper	3HAC081786-001	


Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

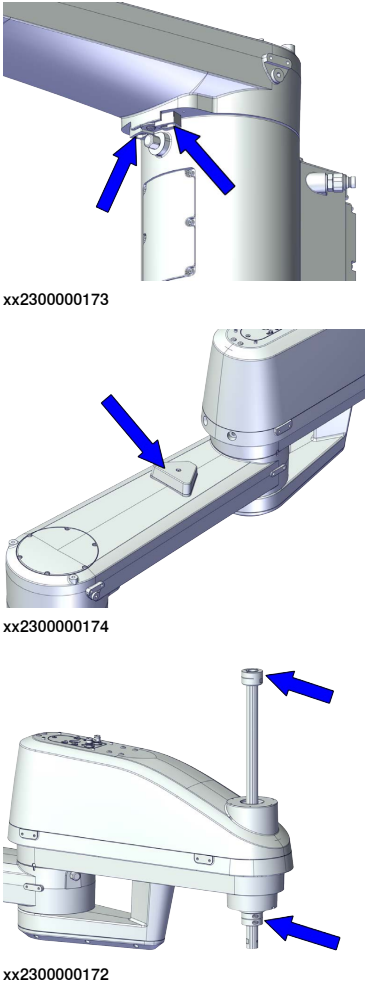

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.

Inspecting, mechanical stops

Use this procedure to inspect mechanical stops on axes 1,2 and 3.

	Action	Information
1	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Information
2	Inspect the mechanical stops.	 <p>xx2300000173</p> <p>xx2300000174</p> <p>xx2300000172</p>
3	<p>Replace if any mechanical stop is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bent • loose • damaged. <p> Note</p> <p>The expected life of gearboxes can be reduced as a result of collisions with the mechanical stop.</p>	

4 Maintenance

4.4.5 Inspecting timing belts

4.4.5 Inspecting timing belts

Location of timing belts

The timing belts are located as shown in the figures.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Note
Standard toolkit	The content is defined in the section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.	


Timing belt tension

The table describes the timing belt tension.

Axis	Force		Frequency	
	Used timing belt	New timing belt	Used timing belt	New timing belt
Axis 3	36.6-41.8 N	40-53 N	139-149 Hz	109-119 Hz
Axis 4	36.3-41.4 N	35-50 N	312-333 Hz	88.4-92.7 Hz

Inspecting timing belts

Use this procedure to inspect timing belts.

	Action	Information
1	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	Gain access to each <i>timing belt</i> by removing the cover.	
3	Check the timing belts for damage or wear.	
4	Check the <i>timing belt pulleys</i> for damage.	
5	If any damage or wear is detected, the part must be replaced!	
6	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. Adjust the belt tension if needed!	See Timing belt tension on page 94 .

4.5 Replacement/changing activities

Replacing the battery pack

Replacing the battery pack is accessible after removing the SMB from the base, see [Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit on page 129](#).

4 Maintenance

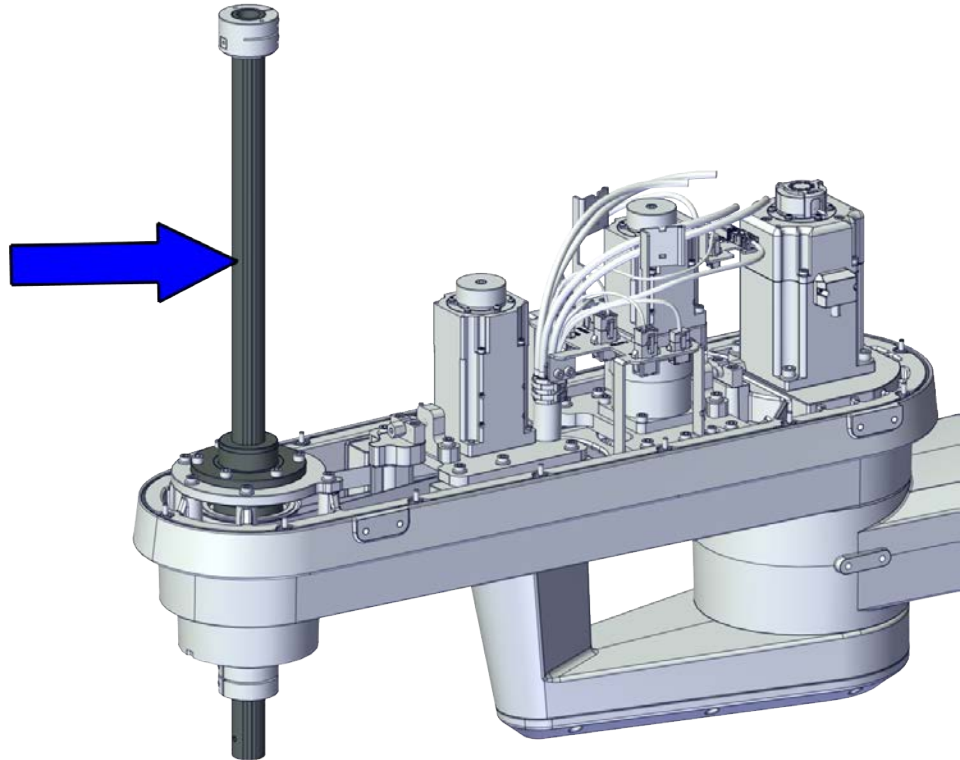
4.6.1 Lubricating the ball screw spline unit

4.6 Lubrication activities

4.6.1 Lubricating the ball screw spline unit

Location of the ball screw spline unit

The ball screw spline unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000475

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.

Required consumables


Consumable	Article number	Note
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Sphero EPL 1

Continues on next page

Lubricating the ball screw spline unit

**Note**

Cover the end effector and peripheral equipment in case the grease drips, before lubricating the ball screw spline unit.

	Action	Note
1	Turn on the electric power supply to the robot. If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 59 .	
2	 DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways! Make sure the payload is disassembled or tooling is properly supported; otherwise, fast downward movements of axis 3 may cause severe hits.	
3	Release the holding brake by pressing the button on the internal brake release unit.	
4	Move the outer arm to a position where the axis 3 can be moved in full stroke.	
5	Move the shaft manually to its upper limit while pressing the brake release button.	
6	Wipe off old grease from the shaft.	
7	Apply new grease and fill the grooves. Wipe off excessive grease.	
8	Move the shaft manually to its lower limit while pressing the brake release button.	
9	Wipe off old grease from the shaft.	
10	Apply new grease and fill the grooves. Wipe off excessive grease.	
11	Move the shaft up and down several times while pressing the brake release button to smooth out the grease on the shaft. Wipe off excessive grease.	

4 Maintenance

4.7.1 Cleaning the IRB 930

4.7 Cleaning activities

4.7.1 Cleaning the IRB 930

General

To secure high uptime it is important that the IRB 930 is cleaned regularly. The frequency of cleaning depends on the environment in which the manipulator works. Different cleaning methods are allowed depending on the type of protection of the IRB 930.



Note

Always verify the protection type of the robot before cleaning.



WARNING

Turn off all electrical power supplies to the robot before starting the cleaning.

Special cleaning considerations

This section specifies some special considerations when cleaning the robot.

- Always use cleaning equipment as specified. Any other cleaning equipment may shorten the life of the robot.
- Always check that all protective covers are fitted to the robot before cleaning.
- Do not point the water jet at connectors, joints, sealings or gaskets.
- Do not use compressed air to clean the robot.
- Do not use solvents that are not approved by ABB to clean the robot.
- Do not remove any covers or other protective devices before cleaning the robot.

Cleaning methods

The following table defines what cleaning methods are allowed for ABB manipulators depending on the protection type.

Protection type	Cleaning method			
	Vacuum cleaner	Wipe with cloth	Rinse with water	High pressure water, steam or spray
Standard	Yes	Yes. With light cleaning detergent.	Yes. It's highly recommended to inspect the fans for contamination that could hinder the air supply at the regular cleaning, and then clean if necessary.	No

Continues on next page

Cleaning with water and steam

Instructions for rinsing with water

ABB robots with protection types *Standard*, *Foundry Plus*, *Wash*, or *Foundry Prime* can be cleaned by rinsing with water (water cleaner).¹

The following list defines the prerequisites:

- Maximum water pressure at the nozzle: 700 kN/m² (7 bar)¹
- Fan jet nozzle should be used, min. 45° spread
- Minimum distance from nozzle to encapsulation: 0.4 meters
- Maximum flow: 20 liters/min¹

¹ Typical tap water pressure and flow

Cables

Movable cables need to be able to move freely:

- Remove waste material, such as sand, dust and chips, if it prevents cable movement.
- Clean the cables if they have a crusty surface, for example from dry release agents.

¹ See [Cleaning methods on page 98](#) for exceptions.

4 Maintenance

4.8.1 Type of lubrication in gearboxes

4.8 Changing activities

4.8.1 Type of lubrication in gearboxes

Introduction

This section describes where to find information about the type of lubrication, article number and the amount of lubrication in the specific gearbox. It also describes the equipment needed when working with lubrication.

Type and amount of oil in gearboxes

Information about the type of lubrication, article number as well as the amount in the specific gearbox can be found in *Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes* available for registered users on myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Location of gearboxes

The figure shows the location of the gearboxes.

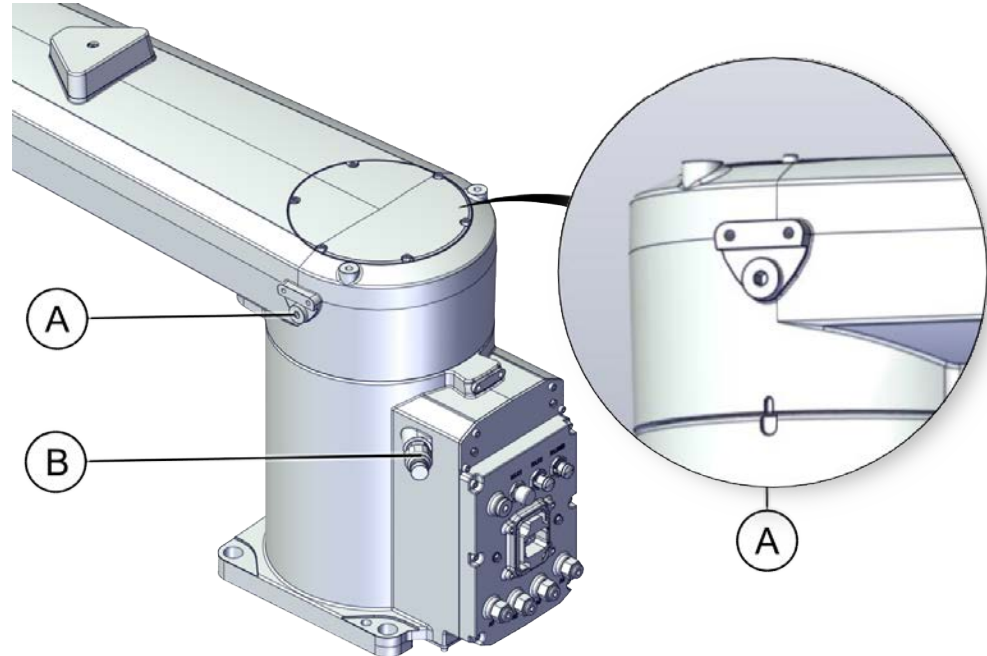
Equipment

Equipment	Note
Oil dispenser	Includes pump with outlet pipe. Use the suggested dispenser or a similar one: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Orion OriCan article number 22590 (pneumatic)
Nipple for quick connect fitting, with o-ring	

4.8.2 Changing oil, axis-1 gearbox

Location of oil plugs

The oil plugs of the gearbox are located as shown in the figure.



xx230000465

A	Oil plug, filling and venting
B	Quick coupling, draining

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Oil collecting vessel	-	The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.
Oil dispenser	-	One example of oil dispenser can be found in section Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 100 .
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Consumable

Material	Note
Lubricating oil	Information about the oil is found in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> . See Type and amount of oil in gearboxes on page 100 .

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.8.2 Changing oil, axis-1 gearbox

Continued

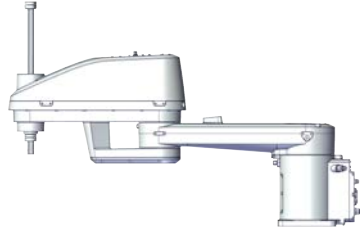

Required documents

Document name	Document number
<i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>	<i>3HAC042927-001</i>



Draining the axis-1 gearbox

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

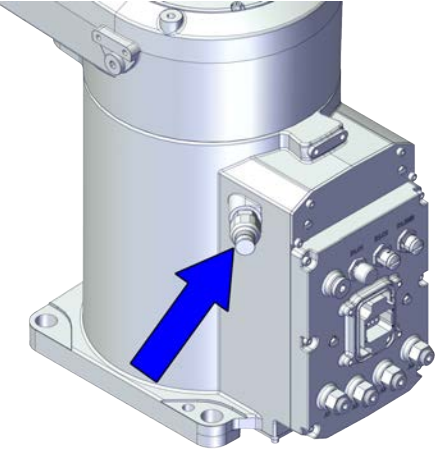
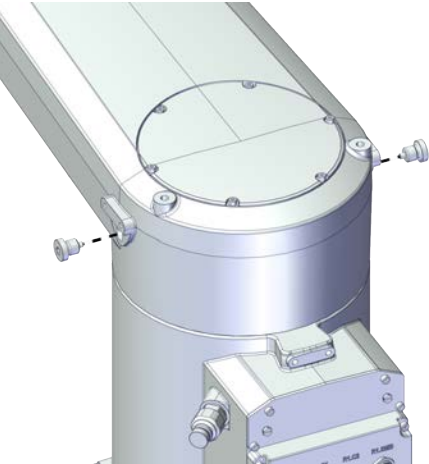


Preparations before draining oil

	Action	Note
1	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2300000486
2	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Draining oil of axis-1 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Lay down the robot to let the quick coupling facing the ground if needed.	

Continues on next page


	Action	Note
4	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the quick coupling.	 <p>xx2300000546</p>
5	Remove the oil plugs and keep them opened to speed up the drainage.	 <p>xx2300000547</p>
6	Plug a G3/8 quick coupling connector with pipe to the quick coupling on base.	
7	 <p>WARNING</p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.</p>	
8	Drain the gearbox oil.	 <p>Note</p> <p>Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.</p>

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.8.2 Changing oil, axis-1 gearbox



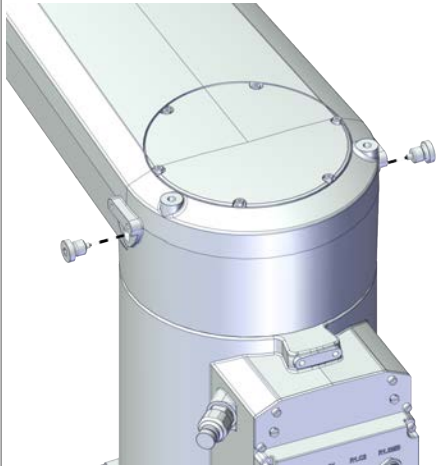
Continued

	Action	Note
9	Remove the quick coupling connector and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
10	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm



Filling oil into the axis-1 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.


Refilling oil to axis-1 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Open the oil plugs, one for filling and the other for venting.	 xx230000547

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	 WARNING Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	Refill the gearbox with oil.  Note The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.	Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .
6	Refit the oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

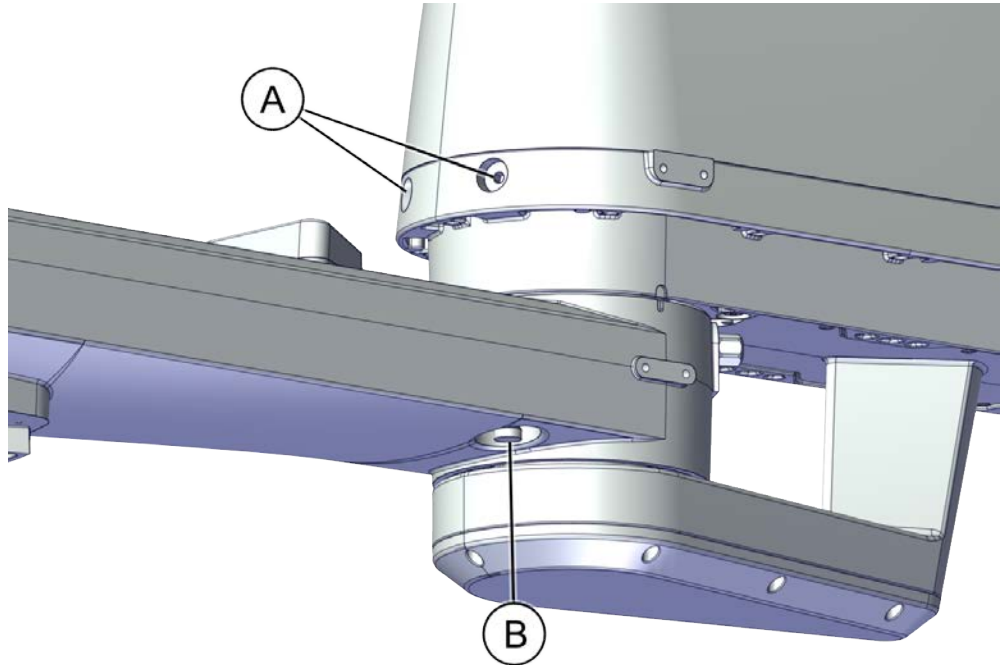
4 Maintenance

4.8.3 Changing oil, axis-2 gearbox

4.8.3 Changing oil, axis-2 gearbox

Location of oil plugs

The oil plugs of the gearbox are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000466

A	Oil plug, filling and venting
B	Oil plug, filling, draining and venting

Required tools and equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Oil collecting vessel	-	The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.
Oil dispenser	-	One example of oil dispenser can be found in section Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 100 .
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Consumable

Material	Note
Lubricating oil	Information about the oil is found in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> . See Type and amount of oil in gearboxes on page 100 .

Continues on next page

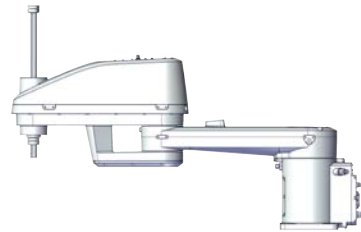

Required documents

Document name	Document number
Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes	3HAC042927-001



Draining the axis-2 gearbox

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

Preparations before draining oil

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2300000486
3	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Draining oil of axis-2 gearbox

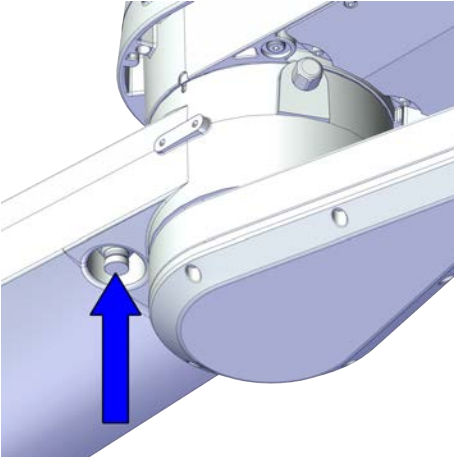
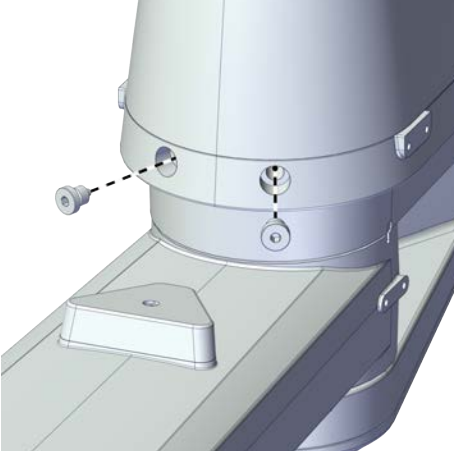


	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	

Continues on next page


4 Maintenance

4.8.3 Changing oil, axis-2 gearbox

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the oil plug, draining.	 <p>xx2300000548</p>
4	Plug a clean pipe to the oil plug, draining, with the other end to the oil collecting vessel.	
5	Remove the oil plug, draining.	 <p>xx2300000549</p>
6	 <p>WARNING</p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.</p>	
7	Drain the gearbox oil.	 <p>Note</p> <p>Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.</p>




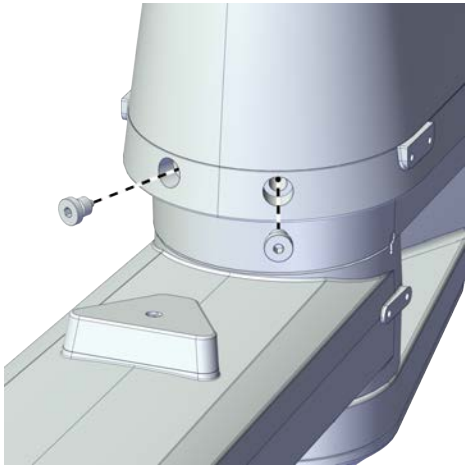
Continues on next page

	Action	Note
8	Remove and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
9	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Filling oil into the axis-2 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

Refilling oil to axis-2 gearbox





	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Open the upper oil plug.  Note The lower oil plug has to be closed; otherwise, the oil may leak before required oil amount is filled.	 xx2300000549

Continues on next page


4 Maintenance

4.8.3 Changing oil, axis-2 gearbox

Continued

	Action	Note
4	 WARNING Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	Refill the gearbox with oil.  Note The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.  CAUTION Oil filling must be slow to make sure air venting is fluent.	Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .
6	Refit the oil plug.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm
7	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5 Repair

5.1 Introduction

Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes repair activities for the IRB 930. Each procedure contains the information required to perform the activity, for example spare parts numbers, required special tools, and materials.



WARNING

Repair activities not described in this chapter must only be carried out by ABB.

Report replaced units



Note

When replacing a part on the IRB 930, report to your local ABB the serial number, the article number, and the revision of both the replaced unit and the replacement unit.

This is particularly important for safety equipment to maintain the safety integrity of the installation.

Safety information

Make sure to read through the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before commencing any service work.



Note

The robot should be secured with the transportation brackets during removing from/refitting to the foundation.



Note

If the IRB 930 is connected to power, always make sure that the IRB 930 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any repair work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- *Product manual - OmniCore C90XT*

5 Repair

5.2.1 Performing a leak-down test

5.2 General procedures

5.2.1 Performing a leak-down test

When to perform a leak-down test


After refitting any motor and gearbox, the integrity of all seals enclosing the gearbox oil must be tested. This is done in a leak-down test.

The gearbox must be drained of oil before performing the leak-down test.

Required equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Leak-down tester	-	
Leak detection spray	-	

Performing a leak-down test

	Action	Note
1	Finish the refitting procedure of the motor or gear in question, but do not refill the gearbox with oil before performing the leak-down test.	
2	Remove the upper oil plug on the gear and replace it with the leak-down tester. Regulators, which are included in the leak-down test, may be required.	
3	Use caution, apply compressed air and raise the pressure with the knob until the correct value is shown on the manometer.  CAUTION The pressure must under no circumstance be higher than 0.25 bar (20-25 kPa). Also during the time when the pressure is raised.	Correct value: 0.2-0.25 bar (20-25 kPa)
4	Disconnect the compressed air supply.	
5	Wait for approximately 8-10 minutes and make sure that no pressure loss occurs.	If the compressed air is significantly colder or warmer than the gearbox to be tested, a slight pressure increase or decrease may occur. This is quite normal.
6	If any pressure drop occurred, then localize the leak as described in step 7. If no pressure drop occurred, then remove the leak-down tester and refit the oil plug. The test is complete.	
7	Spray any suspected leak areas with the leak detection spray. Bubbles indicate a leak.	
8	When the leak has been localized, take the necessary measures to correct the leak.	

5.2.2 Mounting instructions for bearings

General

This section describes how to mount and grease different types of bearings on the robot.

Equipment

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Shell Gadus S2 Used to grease the bearings, if not specified otherwise.

Assembly of all bearings


Attend to the following instructions while mounting a bearing on the robot.

	Action	Note
1	To avoid contamination, let a new bearing remain in its wrapping until it is time for fitting.	
2	Ensure that the parts included in the bearing fitting are free from burrs, grinding waste, and other contamination. Cast components must be free of foundry sand.	
3	Bearing rings, inner rings, and roller elements must not be subjected to direct impact. The roller elements must not be exposed to any stresses during the assembly work.	

Assembly of tapered bearings

Follow the preceding instructions for the assembly of the bearings when mounting a tapered bearing on the robot.

In addition to those instructions, the following procedure must be carried out to enable the roller elements to adjust to the correct position against the race flange.

	Action	Note
1	Tension the bearing gradually until the recommended pre-tension is achieved.  Note The roller elements must be rotated a specified number of turns before pre-tensioning is carried out and also rotated during the pre-tensioning sequence.	
2	Make sure the bearing is properly aligned as this will directly affect the durability of the bearing.	

Greasing of bearings



Note

This instruction is not valid for solid oil bearings.

Continues on next page

The bearings must be greased after assembly according to the following instructions:

- The bearings must not be completely filled with grease. However, if space is available beside the bearing fitting, the bearing may be totally filled with grease when mounted, as excessive grease will be pressed out from the bearing when the robot is started.
- During operation, the bearing should be filled to 70-80% of the available volume.
- Ensure that grease is handled and stored properly to avoid contamination.

Grease the different types of bearings as following description:

- *Grooved ball bearings* must be filled with grease from both sides.
- *Tapered roller bearings* and axial needle bearings must be greased in the split condition.

5.2.3 Mounting instructions for sealings

General

This section describes how to mount different types of sealings.

Equipment

Consumable	Article number	Note
Grease	3HAC042536-001	Shell Gadus S2

Rotating sealings

The following procedures describe how to fit rotating sealings.



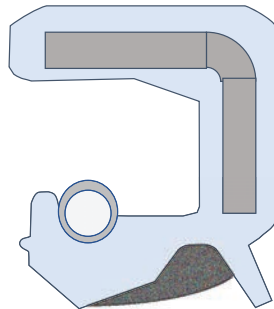
CAUTION

Please observe the following before commencing any assembly of sealings:

- Protect the sealing during transport and mounting, especially the main lip on radial sealings.
- Keep the sealing in its original wrappings or protect it well before actual mounting.
- The fitting of sealings and gears must be carried out on clean workbenches.
- Use a protective sleeve for the main lip during mounting, when sliding over threads, keyways or other sharp edges.

Radial sealings

A radial sealing consists of a flexible rubber lip bonded to a rigid metal case. Only one side of the sealing is static with a metal insert.



xx230000433

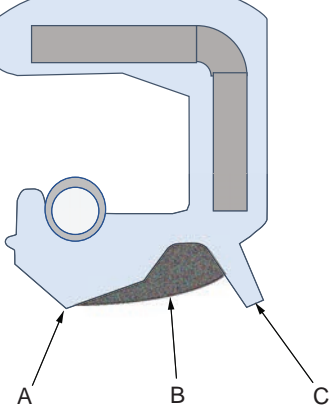
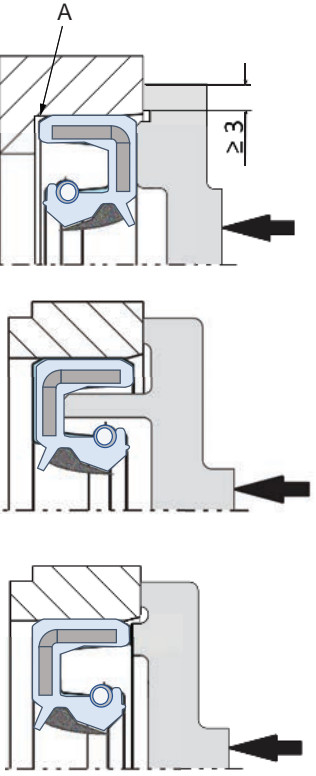
	Action	Note
1	Check the sealing to ensure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The sealing is of the correct type. • There is no damage on the main lip. 	
2	Inspect the shaft surface before mounting. If scratches or damage are found, the shaft must be replaced since it may result in future leakage. Do not try to grind or polish the shaft surface to get rid of the defect.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.2.3 Mounting instructions for sealings

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Lubricate the sealing with grease just before fitting. (Not too early - there is a risk of dirt and foreign particles adhering to the sealing.)</p> <p>Fill 2/3 of the space between the dust lip and the main lip with grease. If the sealing is without dust lip, just lubricate the main lip with a thin layer of grease.</p>	<p>Article number is specified in Equipment on page 115.</p>  <p>xx2000000071</p> <p>A Main lip B Grease C Dust lip</p>
4	<p>Mount the sealing correctly with a mounting tool. Never hammer directly on the sealing as this may result in leakage.</p>	 <p>xx2000000072</p> <p>A Gap</p>

Continues on next page

Flange sealings and static sealings

The following procedure describes how to fit flange sealings and static sealings.

	Action
1	Check the flange surfaces. They must be even and free from pores. It is easy to check flatness using a gauge on the fastened joint (without sealing compound). If the flange surfaces are defective, the parts may not be used because leakage could occur.
2	Clean the surfaces properly in accordance with the recommendations of ABB.
3	Distribute the sealing compound evenly over the surface.
4	Tighten the screws evenly when fastening the flange joint.

O-rings

The following procedure describes how to fit o-rings.

	Action	Note
1	Ensure that the correct o-ring size is used.	
2	Check the o-ring for surface defects, burrs, shape accuracy, or deformation.	Defective o-rings, including damaged or deformed o-rings, may not be used.
3	Check the o-ring grooves and mating surfaces. They should be free of pores, contamination and obvious scratches/damage.	
4	Lubricate the o-ring with grease.	
5	Tighten the screws evenly while assembling.	
6	Check that the o-ring is not squashed outside the o-ring groove.	

5 Repair

5.2.4 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

5.2.4 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

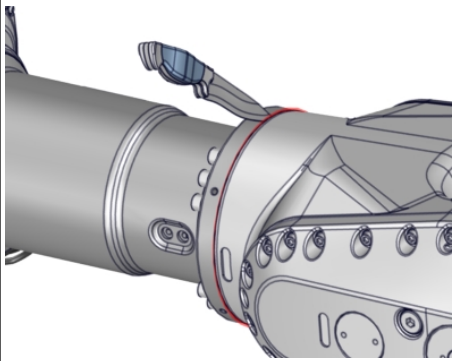
General

Follow the procedures in this section whenever breaking the paint of the robot during replacement of parts.

Required equipment

Equipment	Spare parts	Note
Cleaning agent		Ethanol
Knife		
Lint free cloth		
Touch up paint Standard/Foundry Plus	3HAC067974-001	Graphite White

Removing

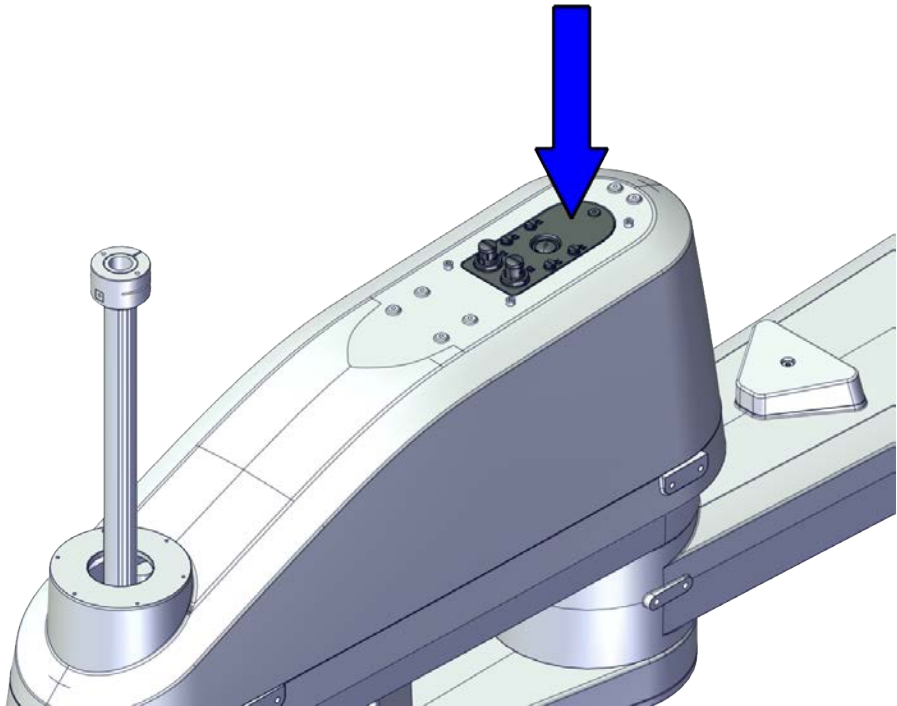
	Action	Description
1	Cut the paint with a knife in the joint between the part that will be removed and the structure, to avoid that the paint cracks.	 xx2300000950
2	Carefully grind the paint edge that is left on the structure to a smooth surface.	

5.3 Cable harness

5.3.1 Replacing the process hub

Location of the process hub

The process hub is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000467

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Process hub, Basic	3HAC087326-001	
Process hub, Basic+C1+A	3HAC087327-001	
Process hub, Basic+C1+C2+A	3HAC087328-001	
Outer arm cover	3HAC087313-001	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the process hub

Continued

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

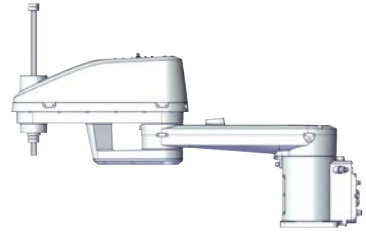

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page


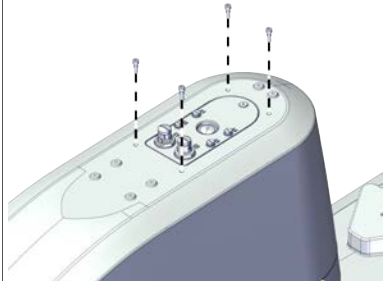
Removing the process hub

Use these procedures to remove the process hub.

Preparations before removing the process hub

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2300000486
3	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487

Continues on next page


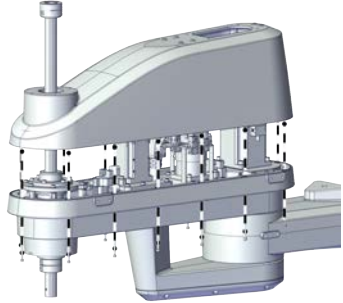
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the process hub



Continued

	Action	Note
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	


Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  <small>xx2300000488</small>




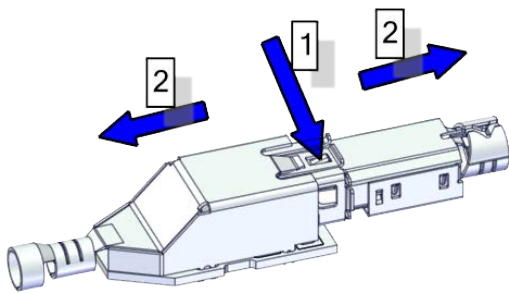
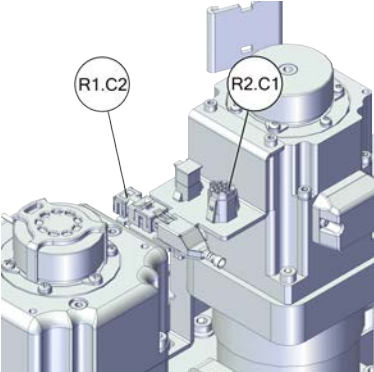

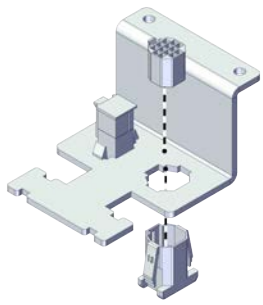
Releasing the straps on the bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Cut the straps on the brackets.  Tip Take photos of the straps before cut them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	
3	For robots with C1 cabling Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	For robots with C2 cabling Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  <p>xx1800002943</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
5	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket. <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>


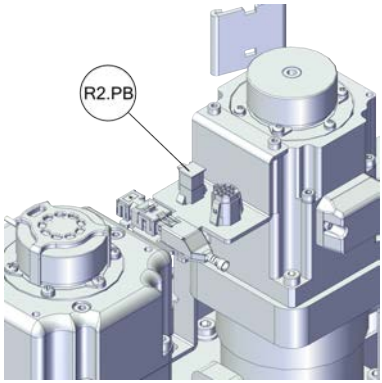

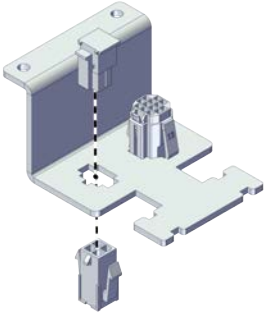
Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.3.1 Replacing the process hub

Continued

Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 xx2300000543
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000545

Removing the process hub




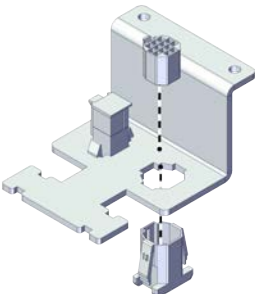

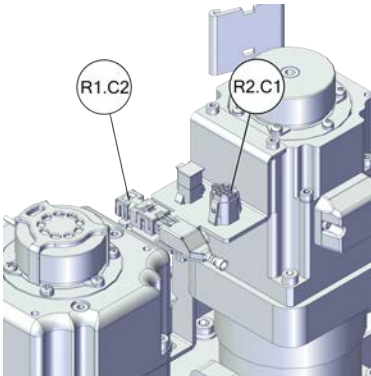

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the process hub

Use these procedures to refit the process hub.

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)



	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	

Continues on next page



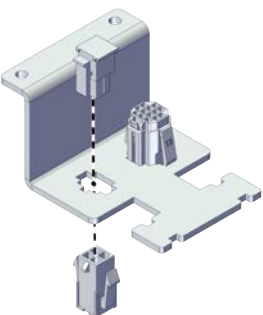

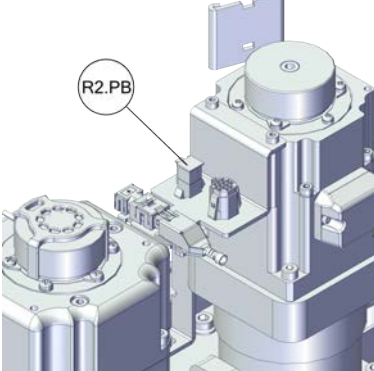
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the process hub


Continued

	Action	Note
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	
7	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>

Continues on next page


	Action	Note
3	Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
2	Refit the screws.	

xx2300000488

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)

xx2300000487

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the process hub

Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

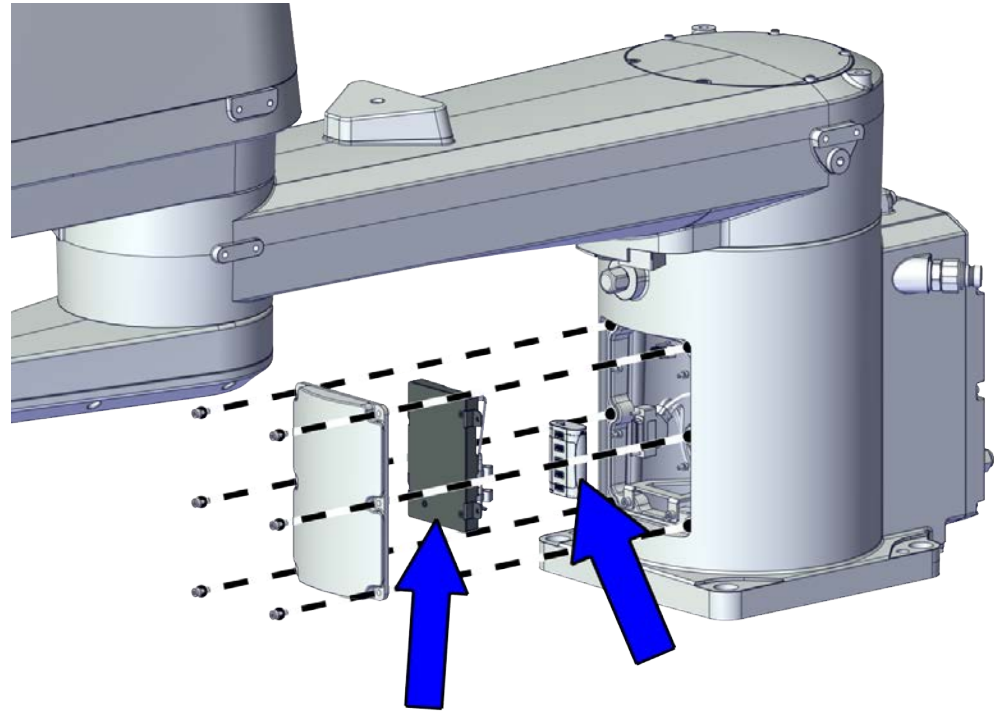
Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5.3.2 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

Location of the SMB unit and battery unit

The SMB unit and battery unit are located as shown in the figure.



xx230000468

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
SMB unit	3HAC063968-001	
Battery unit	3HAC044075-001	Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with a specified spare part or an ABB-approved equivalent.
SMB cover	3HAC087302-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

Continued

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

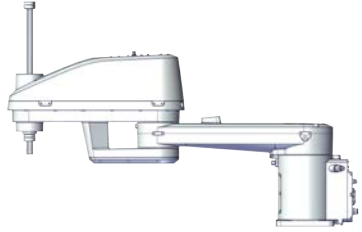

Removing the SMB unit and battery unit

Use these procedures to remove the SMB unit and battery unit.



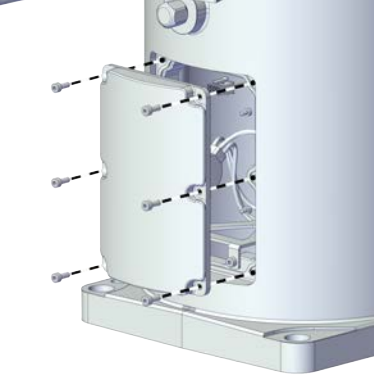
Preparations before removing the SMB unit and battery unit

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2300000486
3	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.	 xx2300000489




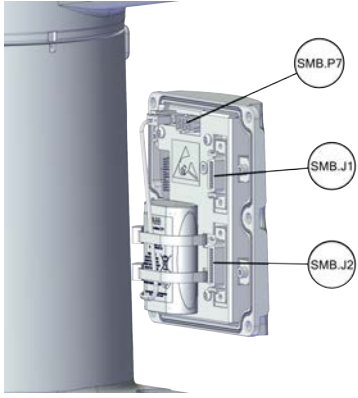
Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.3.2 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

Continued

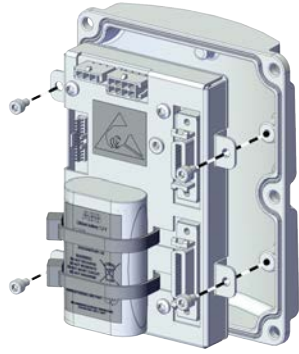
Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Cut the strips.	
4	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945



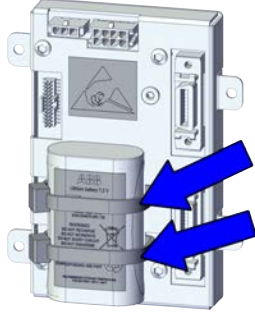
Removing the SMB unit

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	Remove the SMB package attachment screws and remove the SMB package from the SMB cover.	 <p>xx2100001036</p>

Separating the battery unit and SMB unit

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <p>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	
3	Separate the battery unit from the SMB assembly by cutting the cable straps.	 <p>xx2100001035</p>

Continues on next page

5 Repair


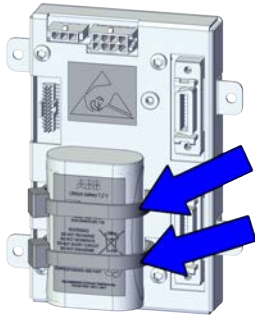
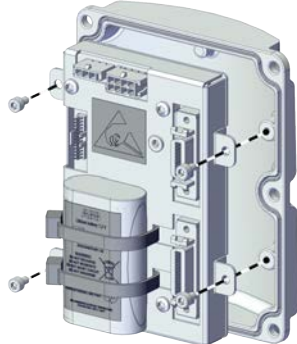

5.3.2 Replacing the SMB unit and battery unit

Continued

Refitting the SMB unit and battery unit


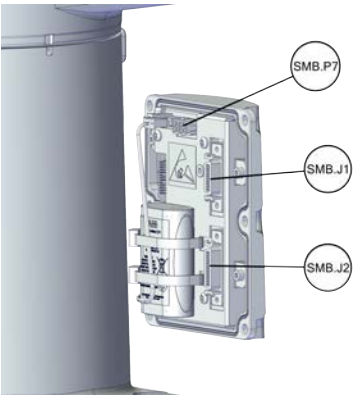
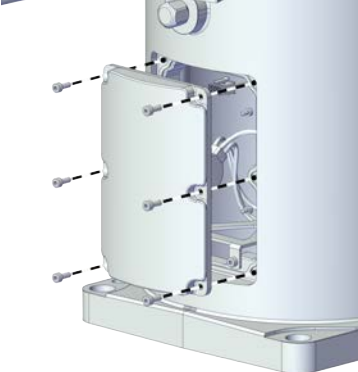
Use these procedures to refit the SMB unit and battery unit.

Refitting the SMB unit and battery unit


	Action	Note
1	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46</i> .	
2	Bind the SMB unit to the battery unit with the cable strap.	 xx2100001035
3	Refit the SMB package to the SMB cover with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx2100001036
4	Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>
2	Refit the SMB cover assembly.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55.</p>	

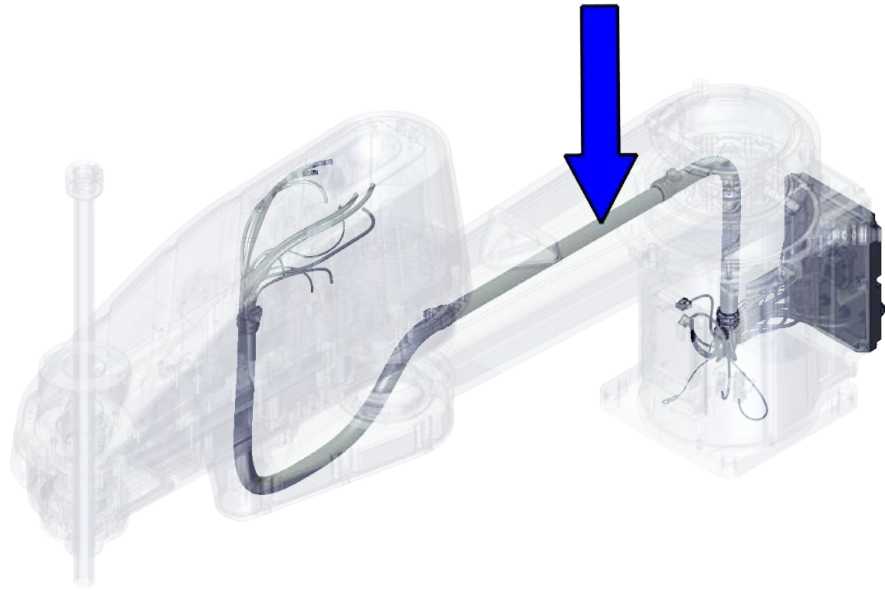
5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Location of the main harness

The main harness is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000469

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Main harness S, Basic	3HAC087320-001	
Main harness S, Basic+C1+Air	3HAC087321-001	
Main harness S, Basic+C1+C2+Air	3HAC087322-001	
Main harness L, Basic	3HAC087323-001	
Main harness L, Basic+C1+Air	3HAC087324-001	
Main harness L, Basic+C1+C2+Air	3HAC087325-001	
Base plate, rear outlet cable	3HAC0081803-001	Base bottom cover, rear cable
Rear plate, underneath outlet cable	3HAC087318-001	Base rear cover, bottom cable
Base plate, underneath outlet cable	3HAC081817-001	Base bottom cover, bottom cable
Outer arm bracket	3HAC081794-001	

Continues on next page

Spare part	Article number	Note
Cable arm bracket	3HAC081793-001	
Inner arm bracket	3HAC081792-001	
Base bracket	3HAC081791-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


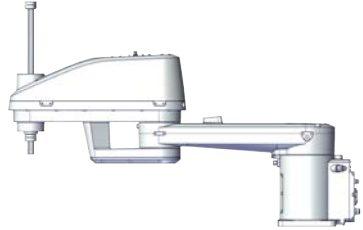

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued


Removing the main harness

Use these procedures to remove the main harness.

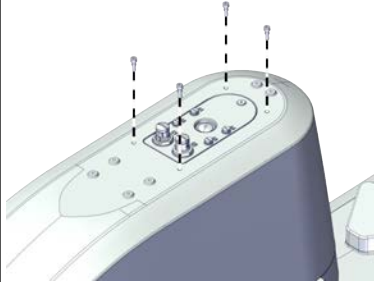
Preparations before removing the main arm

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	


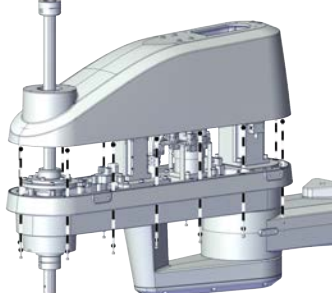
Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

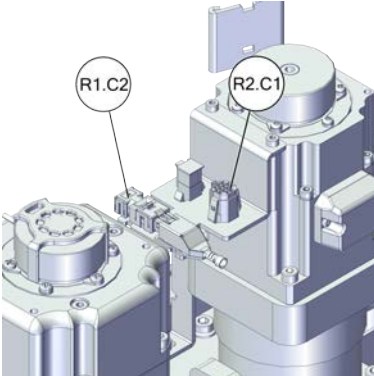



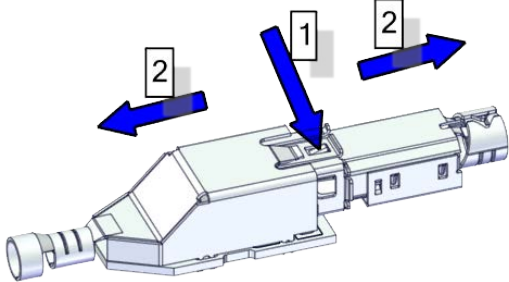

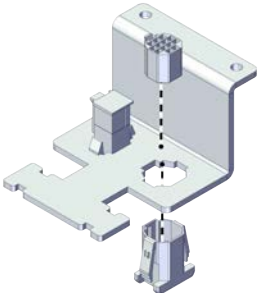
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


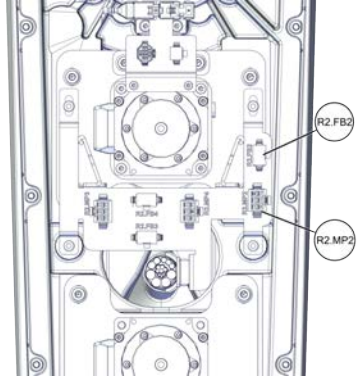

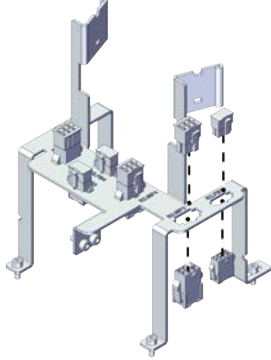
5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p> 	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p>  <p>Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

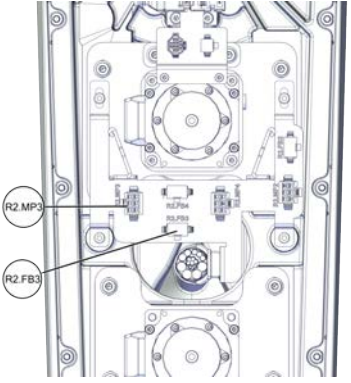

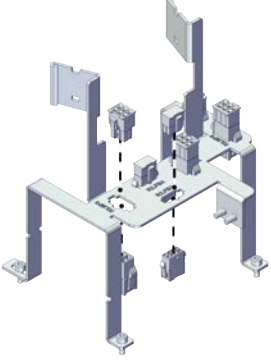
	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

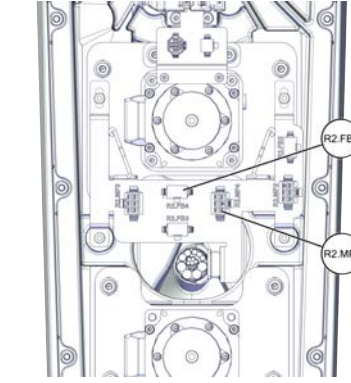
5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness


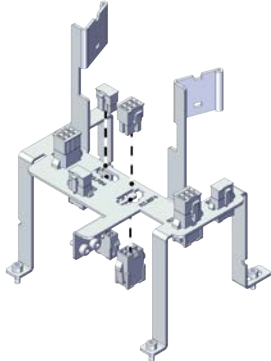
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>


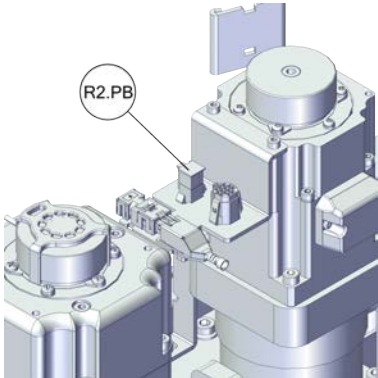

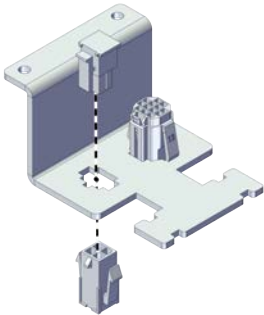
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>



Continues on next page

5 Repair



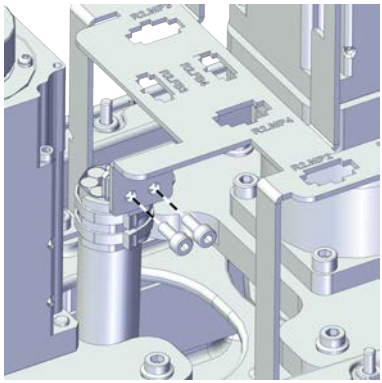

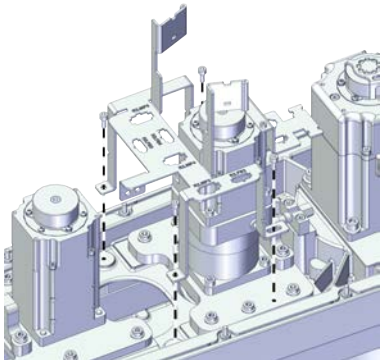
5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

Removing the process hub


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	

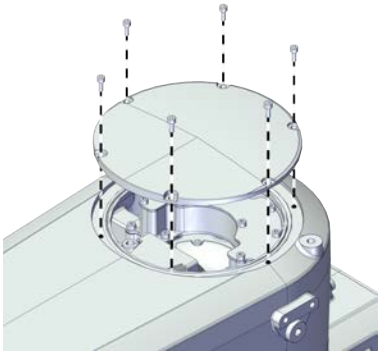
Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Continues on next page


Removing the axis-1 cover

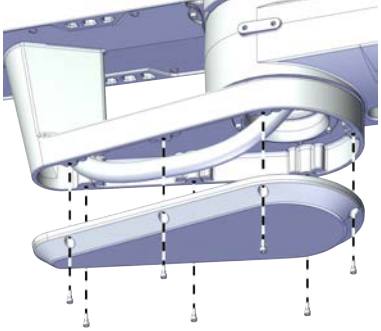
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Remove the cover.	



xx2300000498

Removing the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Remove the cover.	



xx2300000499



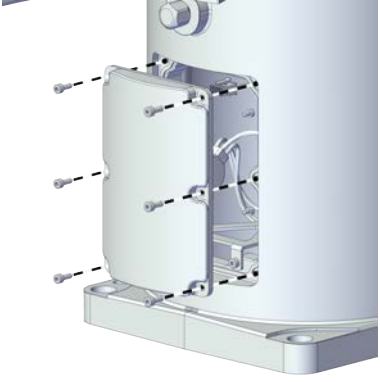
Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued


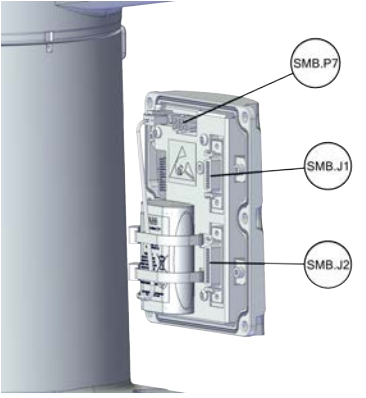
Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.	 <small>xx2300000489</small>


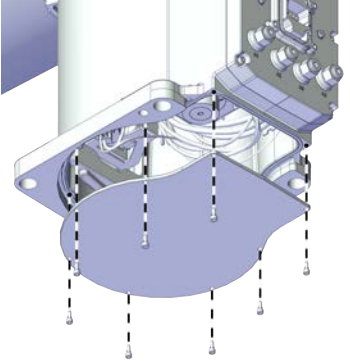
Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Cut the strips.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

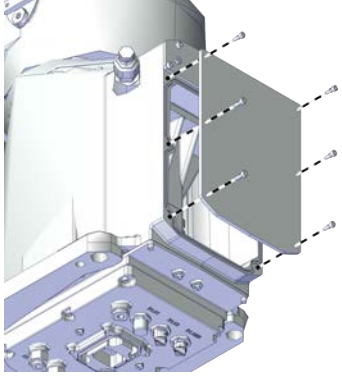
Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
3	Lay down the robot.	
4	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version:
5	Remove the base plate.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000500</p>


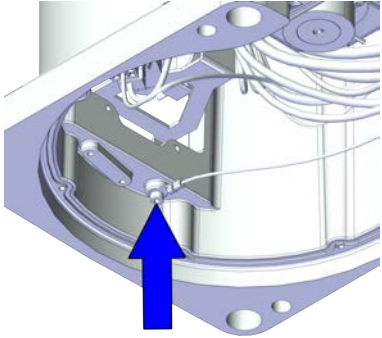
5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness


Continued

	Action	Note
6	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version:
7	Remove the rear plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608



Disconnecting the grounding cable connector

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the grounding cable from the base by unscrew the screw.	 xx2300000502


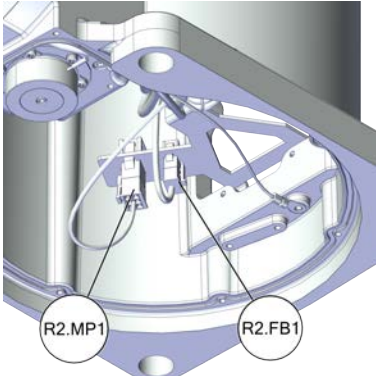

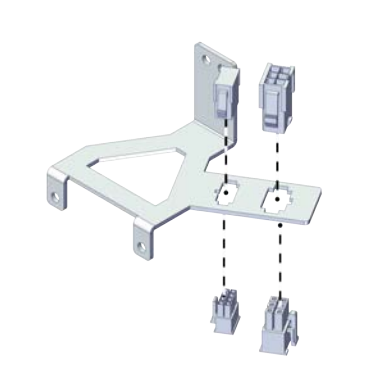
Removing the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000503
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base from the SMB side.	

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 	 xx2300000504
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000505



Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued



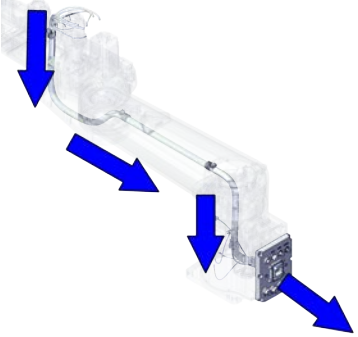

Removing the bracket of the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000506


Removing the main harness from the cable arm position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	<p>Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>
3	<p>Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.</p>	

Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

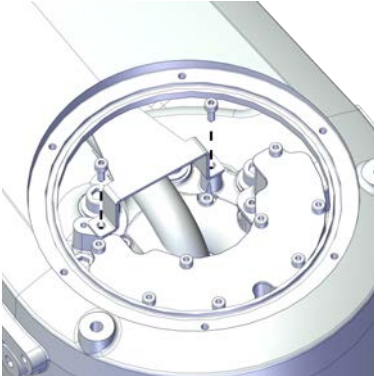

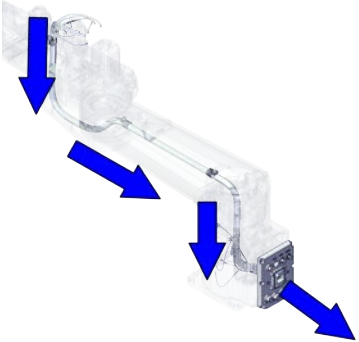
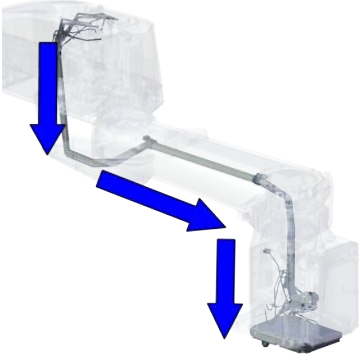
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


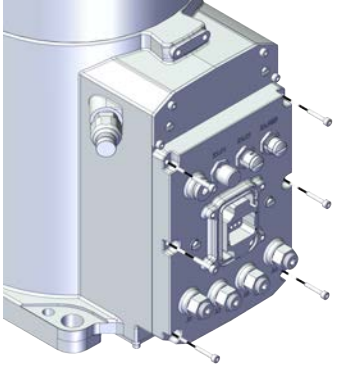

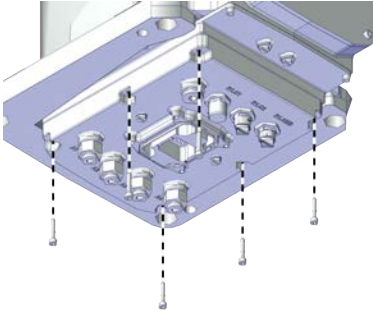
5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the bracket from the inner arm to release the cable.	 <p>xx2300000508</p>
3	Remove the screws on the cable ferrule to the bracket and take the bracket out.	
4	<p>Pull the main harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the main harness

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>
3	<p>Remove the main harness.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000509</p>
4	<p>For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>
5	<p>Remove the main harness assembly.</p>  <p>Note</p> <p>Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000609</p>

Continues on next page

5 Repair

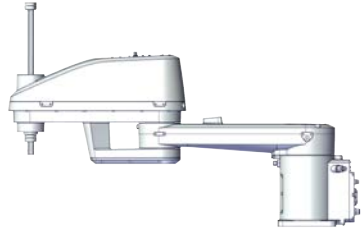



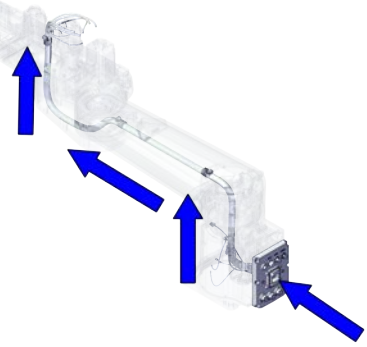
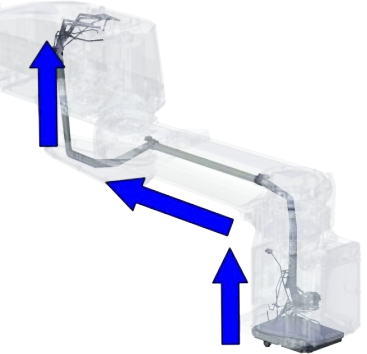
5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

Refitting the main harness



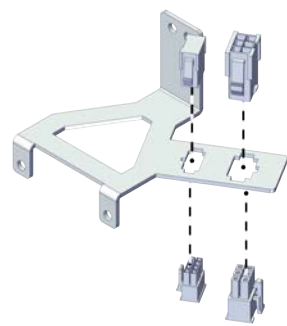

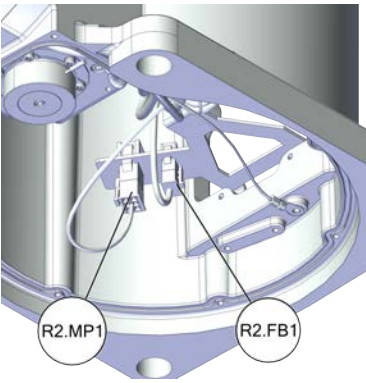

Use these procedures to refit the main harness.

Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position


	Action	Note
1	<p>Make sure that the robot is at zero position.</p>	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the inner arm through the protection tube of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000505</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000504</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the base bracket





	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p>	

Continues on next page

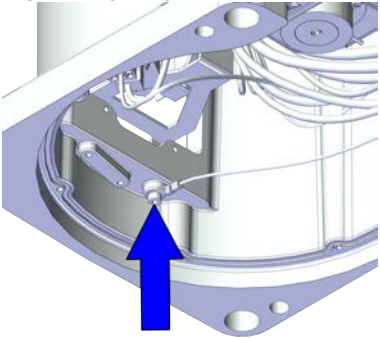

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued


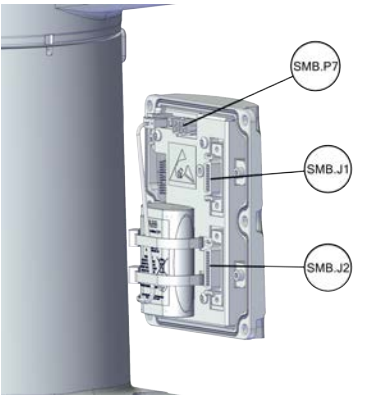
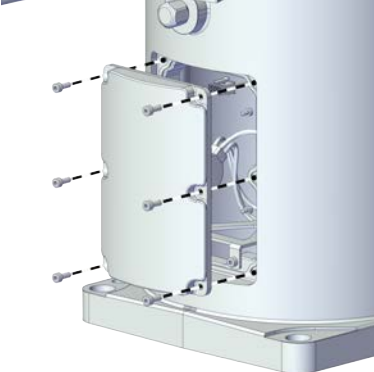
	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000503</p>
3	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	 <p>xx2300000503</p>

Reconnecting the grounding cable connector

	Action	Note
1	<p>Secure the grounding cable to the bracket with the screw.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000502</p>
2	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>
2	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>

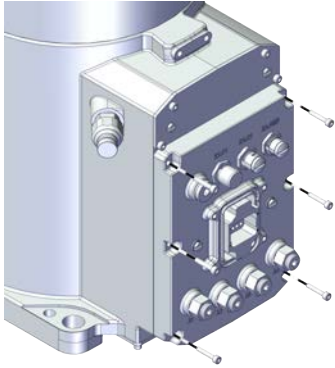

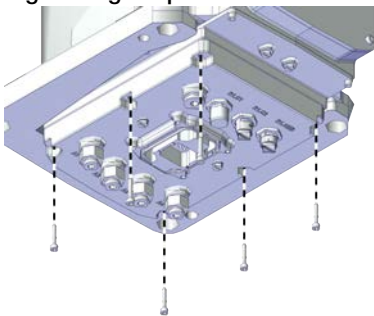
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

Refitting the main harness

	Action	Note
1	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	<p>For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000509</p>
2	Secure with the screws.	
3	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> Note Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000609</p>
4	Secure with the screws.	

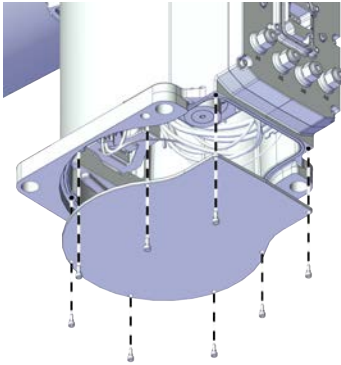
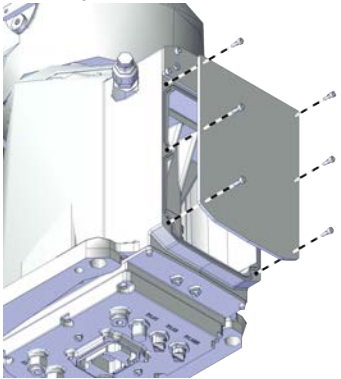
Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	

Continues on next page

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

	Action	Note
2	For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base. For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%
3	Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.	<p>For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000500</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000608</p>
4	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
5	Secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Steel Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 56 Nm ±10%

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position


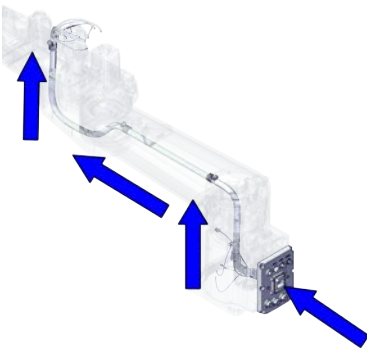

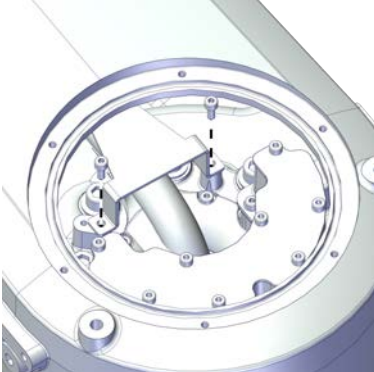
	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2 Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%

Continues on next page

5 Repair


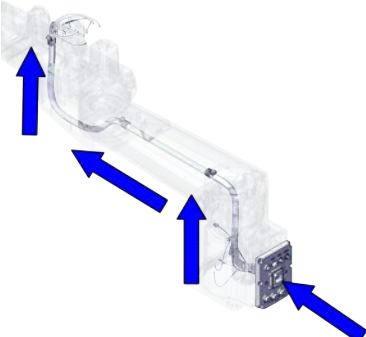
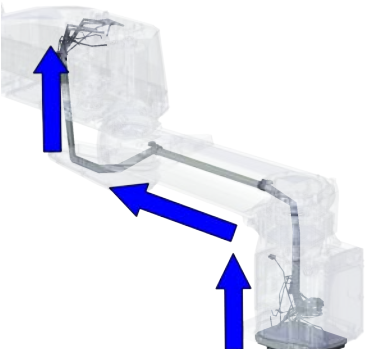

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
3	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>

Continues on next page

Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
2	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>



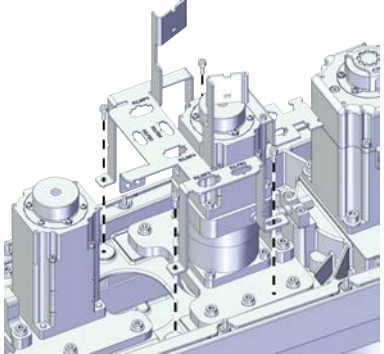





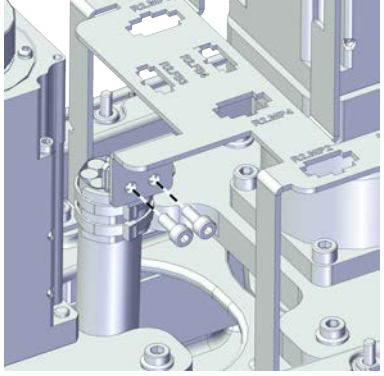
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness



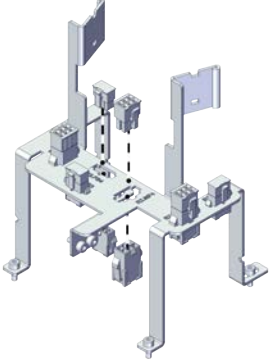


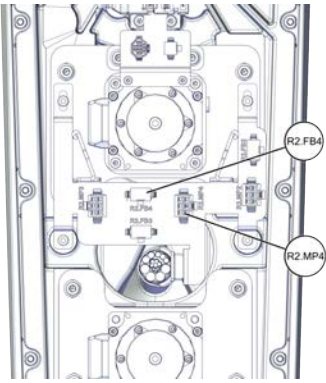

Continued

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



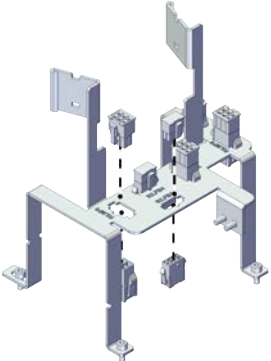

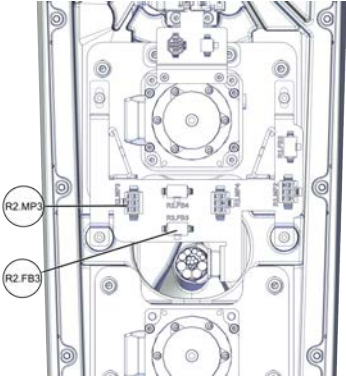

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness



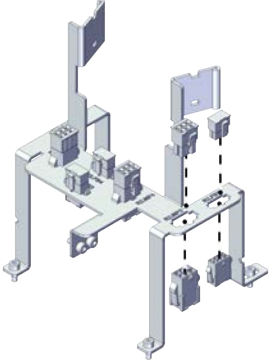

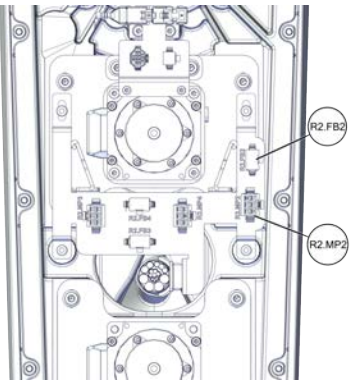

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



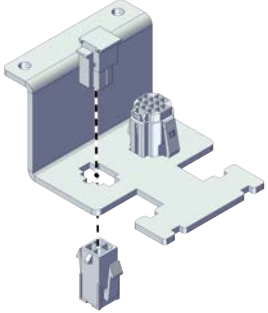

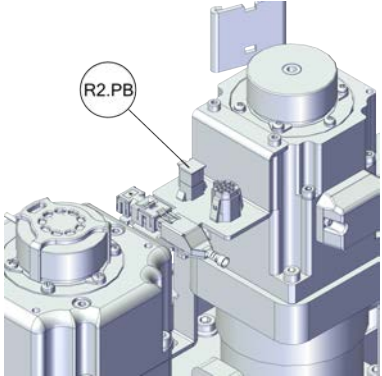

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued



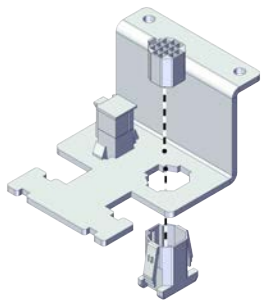

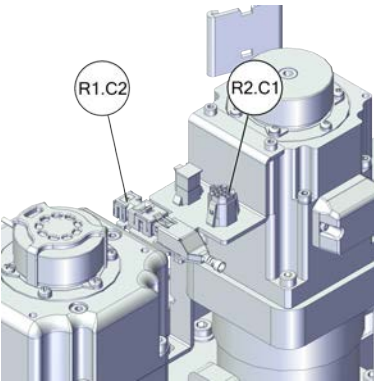


Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page


	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

Continues on next page

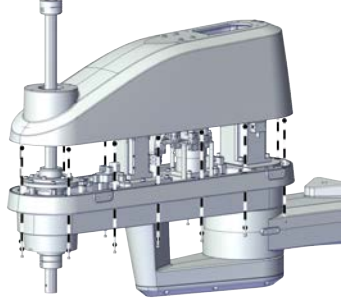
5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness


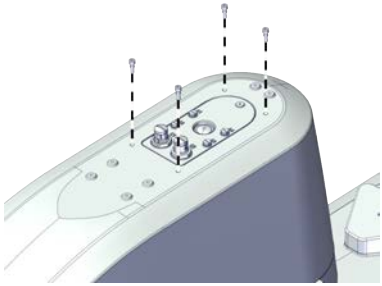
Continued

	Action	Note
7	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

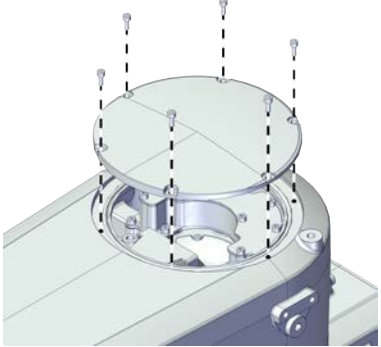
Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>


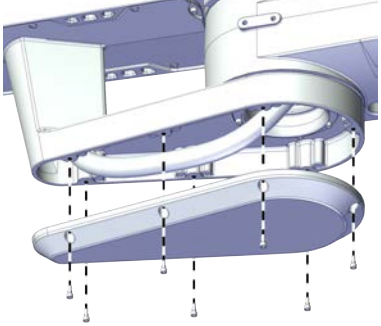
Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Refit the cover.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000499</p>
3	Refit the screws.	


Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the main harness

Continued

Concluding procedure

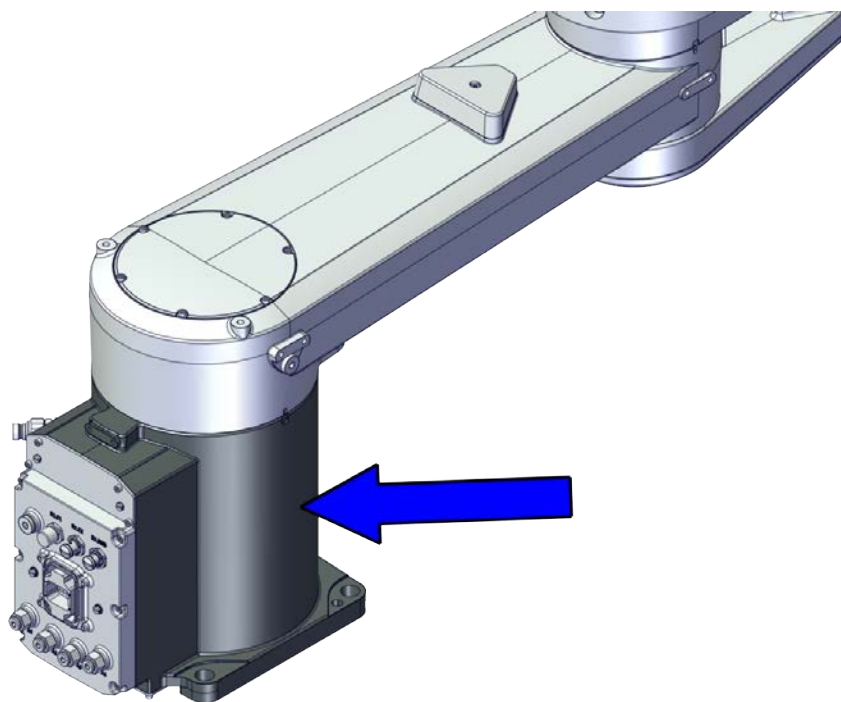
	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5.4 Base

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Location of the base

The base is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000470

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Base	3HAC087301-001	
Airway cover	3HAC087316-001	
Airway cover gasket	3HAC084080-001	
Base plate, rear outlet cable	3HAC0081803-001	Base bottom cover, rear cable
Rear plate, underneath outlet cable	3HAC087318-001	Base rear cover, bottom cable
Base plate, underneath outlet cable	3HAC081817-001	Base bottom cover, bottom cable
Quick coupling	3HAC074630-001	
Base bracket	3HAC081791-001	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

Spare part	Article number	Note
Plug G1/4	3HAC071966-001	
Seal bolt	3HAC032050-001	
Cooling cover	3HAC084066-001	Used in airway.
Air connector	3HAC032049-001	Used in Airway cover.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .


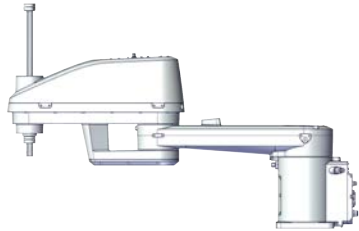

Continues on next page

Action	Note
<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Removing the base

Use these procedures to remove the base.

Preparations before removing the base

Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>
3	<p>Jog all axes to zero position.</p> <div style="text-align: right;">  <small>xx2300000486</small> </div>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>



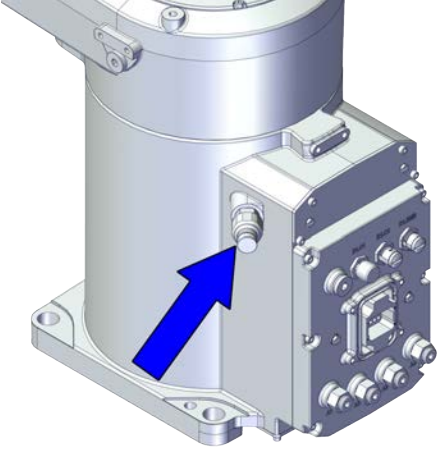
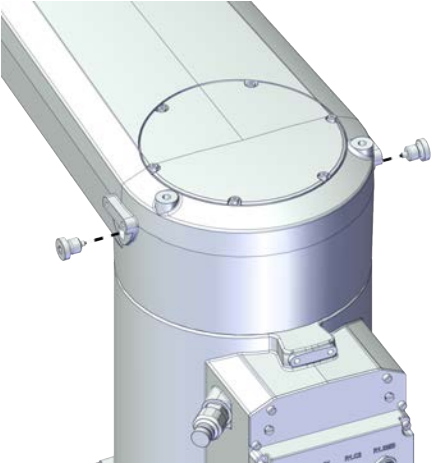
Continues on next page

5 Repair




5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


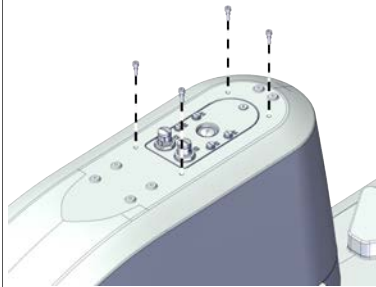
Draining oil of axis-1 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Lay down the robot to let the quick coupling facing the ground if needed.	
4	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the quick coupling.	 xx2300000546
5	Remove the oil plugs and keep them opened to speed up the drainage.	 xx2300000547
6	Plug a G3/8 quick coupling connector with pipe to the quick coupling on base.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
7	 WARNING Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <i>Decommissioning on page 585</i> for more information.	
8	Drain the gearbox oil.	 Note Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.
9	Remove the quick coupling connector and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
10	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  <small>xx2300000487</small>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	


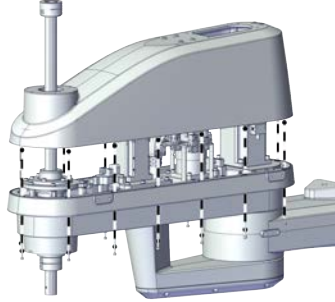
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

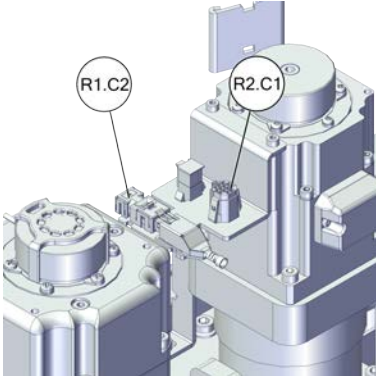



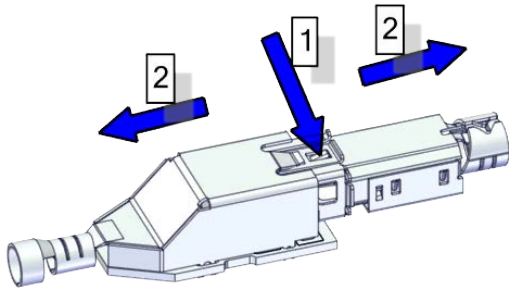
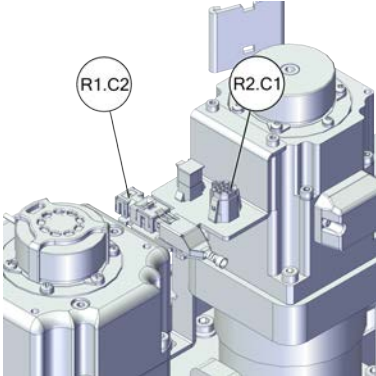

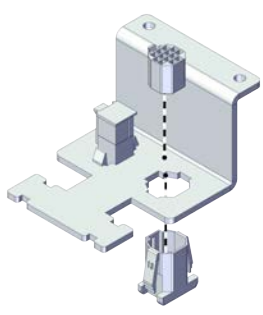
Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p> 	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>


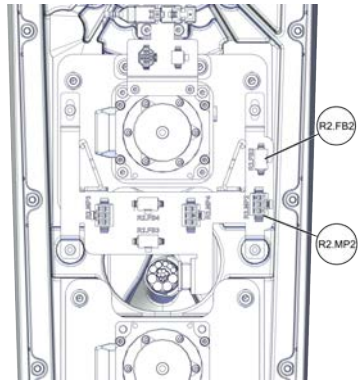

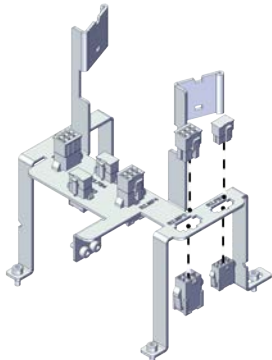
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

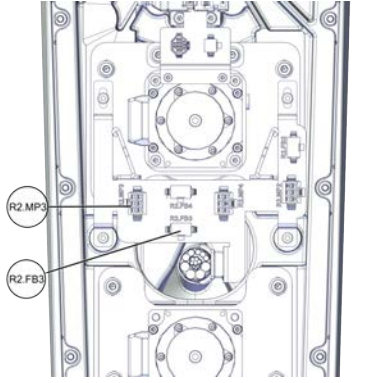

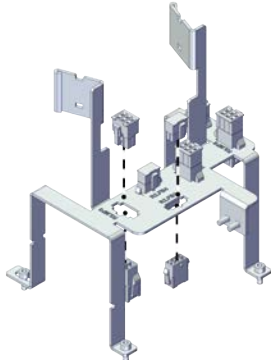
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 xx2300000490
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000493

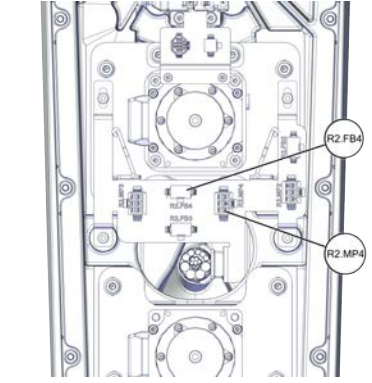
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor


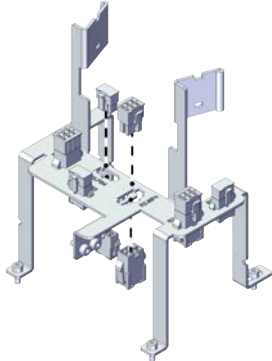
	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page


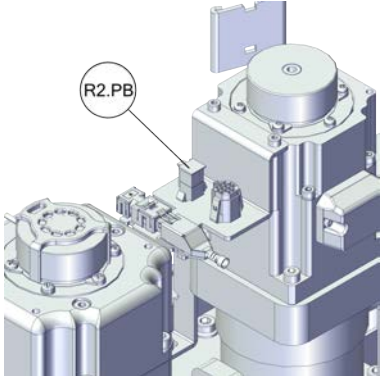

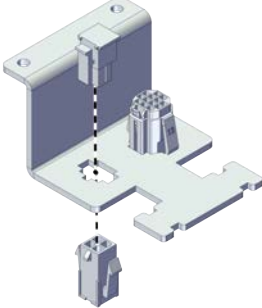
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued



	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB



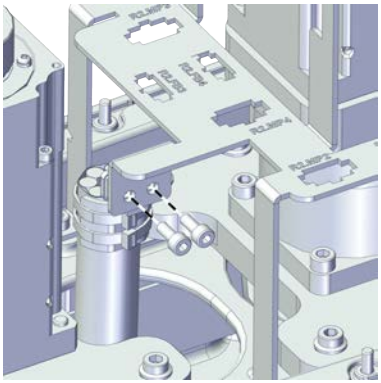

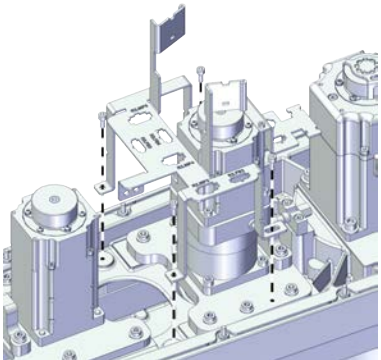
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>


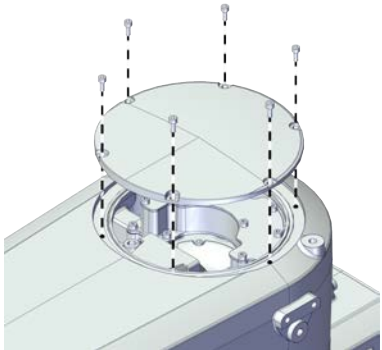
Continues on next page

5 Repair


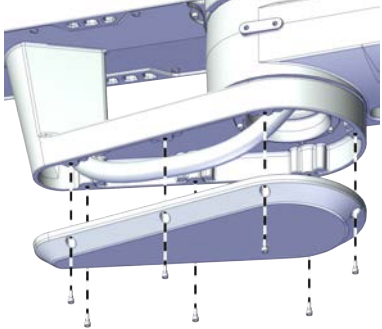
5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

Removing the axis-1 cover



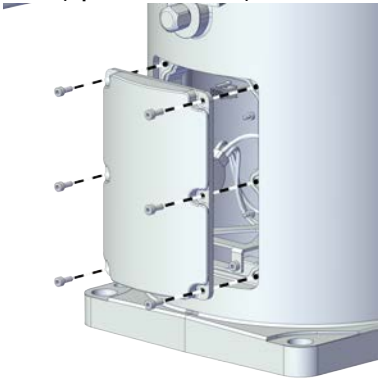
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000498</small>
3	Remove the cover.	

Removing the cable arm cover



	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000499</small>
3	Remove the cover.	

Continues on next page

Removing the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.	 xx2300000489

Disconnecting the SMB cabling


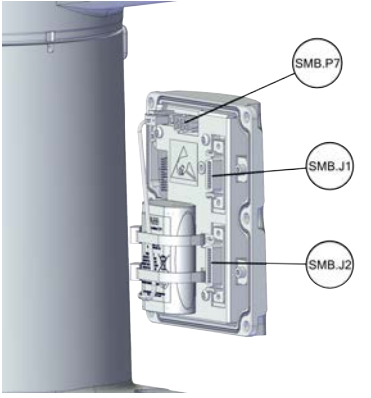
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Cut the strips.	

Continues on next page


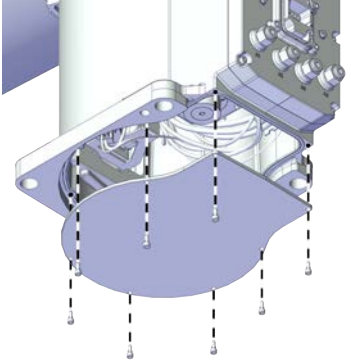
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

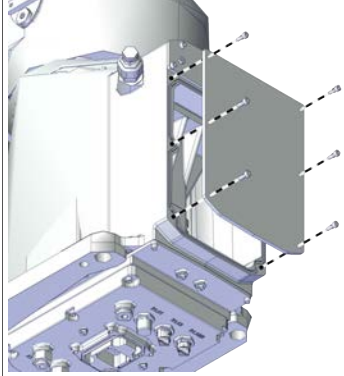
Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>


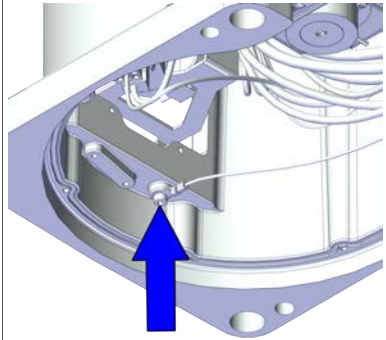
Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
3	Lay down the robot.	
4	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version:
5	Remove the base plate.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000500</p>


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
6	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version:
7	Remove the rear plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608

Disconnecting the grounding cable connector

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the grounding cable from the base by unscrew the screw.	 xx2300000502

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

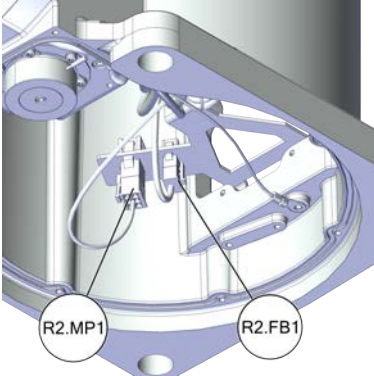

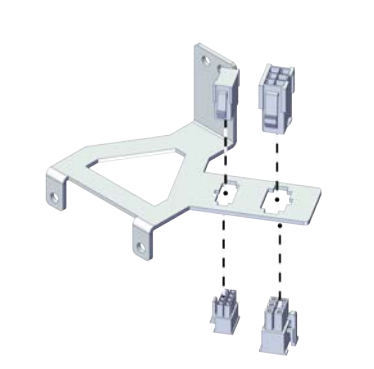
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page





5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued



	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 	 <p>xx2300000504</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000505</p>

Removing the base bracket


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base from the SMB side.	 <p>xx2300000503</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the bracket of the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000506

Removing the main harness from the cable arm position



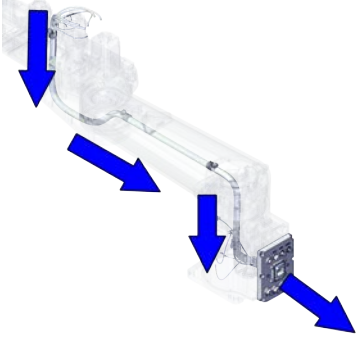

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

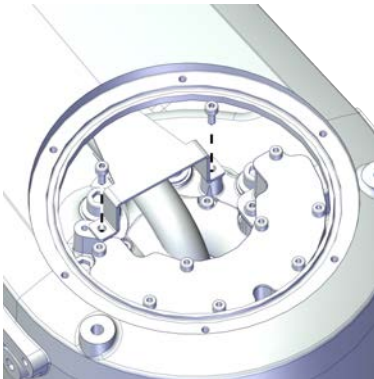



Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>
3	<p>Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.</p>	

Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the bracket from the inner arm to release the cable.	 <p>xx2300000508</p>
3	Remove the screws on the cable ferrule to the bracket and take the bracket out.	
4	<p>Pull the main harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>


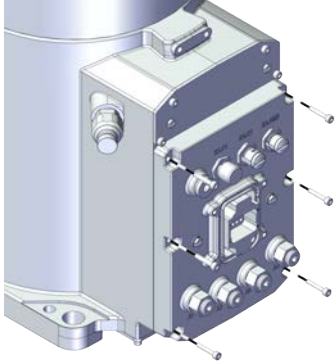

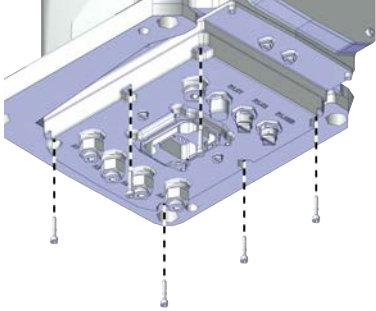
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


Removing the main harness

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version:
3	Remove the main harness.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000509</small>
4	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version:
5	Remove the main harness assembly.  Note Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000609</small>


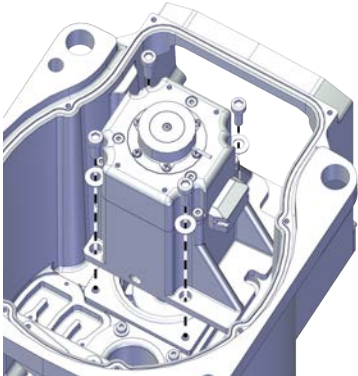
Removing the oil tank

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	 <p>xx2300000511</p>
3	Remove the oil tank.	

Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 <p>xx2300000512</p>
2	Remove the screws and washers.	
3	Remove the motor.	

Removing the protection tube

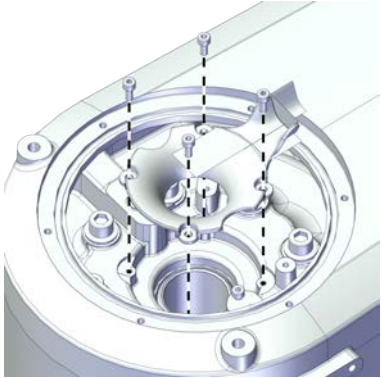
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


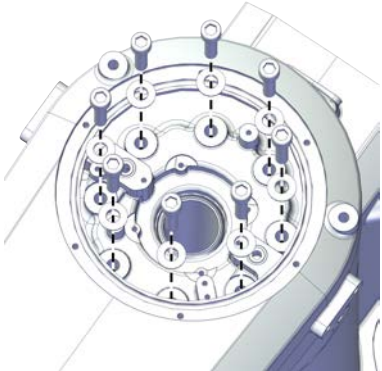
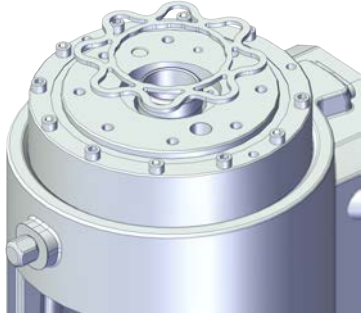
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


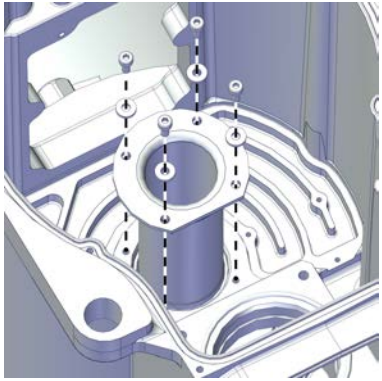
	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the protection tube to the inner arm.	 <p>xx2300000513</p>
3	Remove the protection tube.	

Removing the base from inner arm


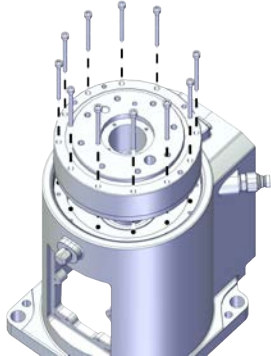
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws and washers on the inner to the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000514</p>
3	Disconnect the axis-1 gear to the inner arm.	
4	Remove the BassSwing gasket on the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000602</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the center pipe

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws and washers on the center pipe to the base.	 <p>xx2300000514</p>

Removing the base from the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws and washers on the base to the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000515</p>
3	Remove the base.	


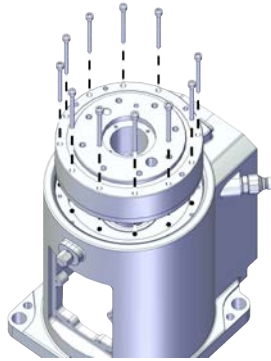
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

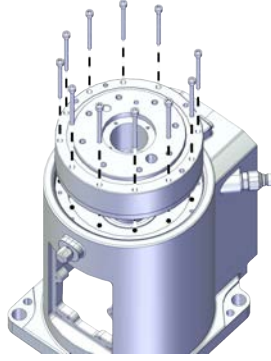
Removing the parts on the base

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws and washers on the base to the axis-1 gear unit.	 xx2300000515
3	Remove the base.	

Refitting the base


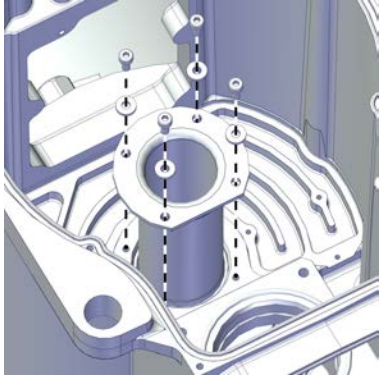
Use these procedures to refit the base.

Refitting the base to the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

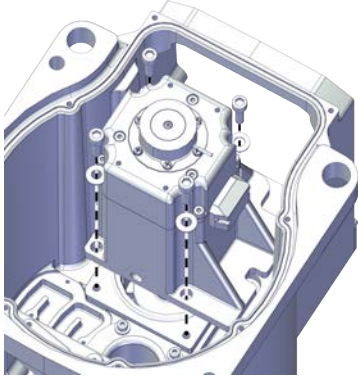
	Action	Note
1	Refit the base to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x65 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (11 pcs) Tightening torque: 10 Nm \pm 10%  xx2300000515
2	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the center pipe

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the center pipe.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Washers: Washer 4.3x10x2 steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1 Nm
3	Secure the screws on the center pipe to the base.	
		 <p>xx2300000514</p>

Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Replace the o-ring if needed.	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Washers: Spring washer, conical 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 10 Nm ±10%
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	
		 <p>xx2300000512</p>


Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


Refitting the base to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the BassSwing gasket to the axis-1 gearbox.	 xx2300000602
2	Refit the inner arm to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M8x40 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (8 pcs) Washers: Spring washer, conical 9ADA334-7 18x4x2 Steel (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 25 Nm \pm 3%
3	Refit the screws.	



Refitting the protection tube

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Refit the protection tube.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000513</p>
3	Secure the screws on the protection tube to the inner arm.	

Refitting the oil tank

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the oil tank.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000511</p>
3	Secure the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	

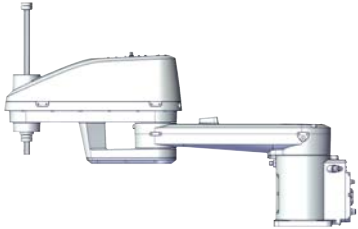



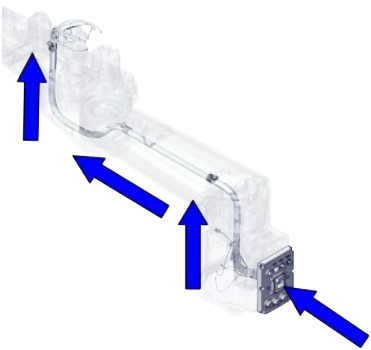

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base



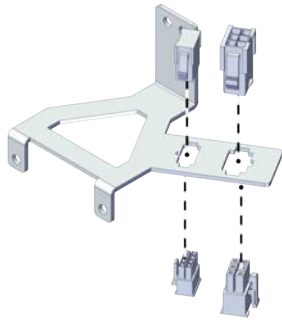

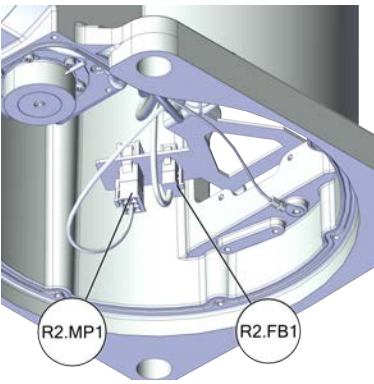

Continued

Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position


	Action	Note
1	<p>Make sure that the robot is at zero position.</p>	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the inner arm through the protection tube of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000505</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000504</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the base bracket





	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p>	

Continues on next page

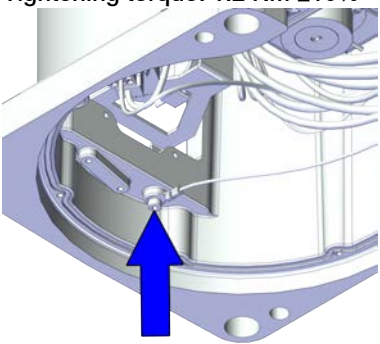

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


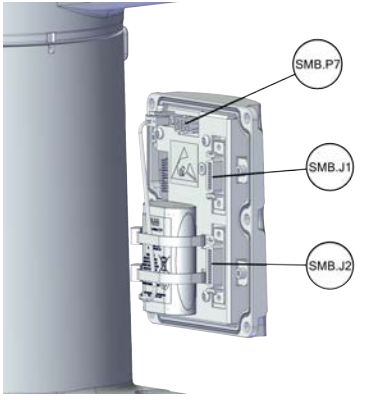
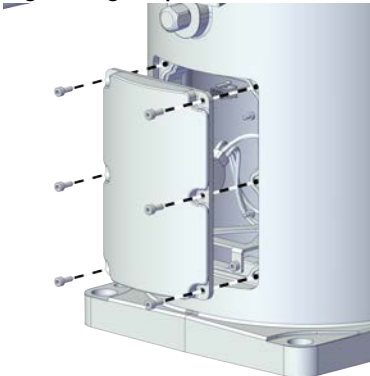
	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000503</p>
3	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	 <p>xx2300000503</p>

Reconnecting the grounding cable connector

	Action	Note
1	<p>Secure the grounding cable to the bracket with the screw.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000502</p>
2	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>
2	<p>Refit the SMB cover assembly.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>
3	<p>Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>

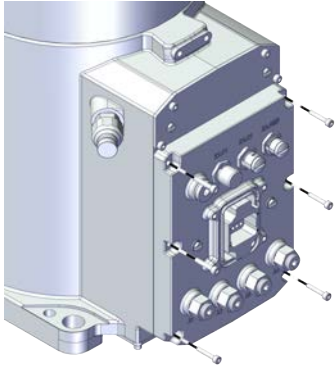

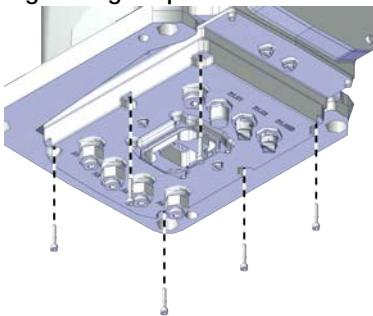
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

Refitting the main harness

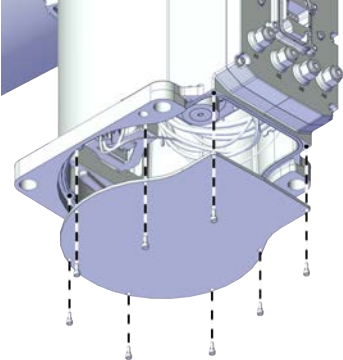
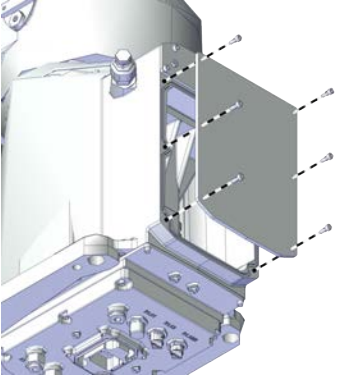
	Action	Note
1	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	<p>For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000509</p>
2	Secure with the screws.	
3	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> Note Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000609</p>
4	Secure with the screws.	

Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	

Continues on next page

5.4.1 Replacing the base
Continued

	Action	Note
2	For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base. For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%
3	Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.	<p>For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000500</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000608</p>
4	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
5	Secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Steel Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 56 Nm ±10%

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position


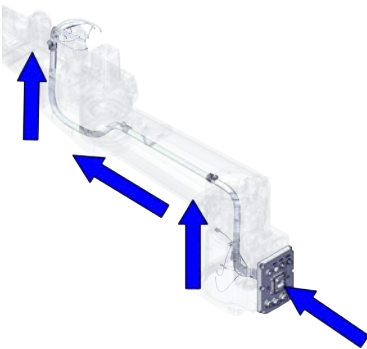

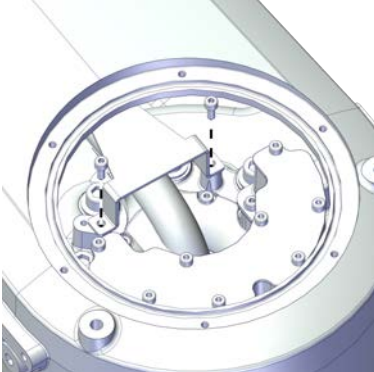
	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2 Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%

Continues on next page

5 Repair


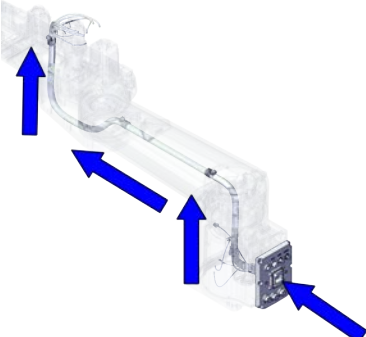
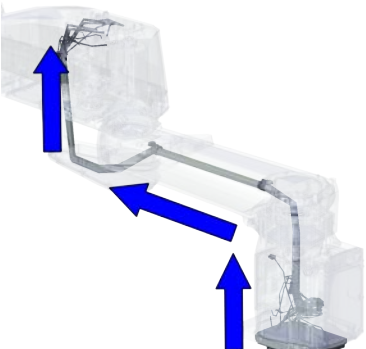

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
3	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>

Continues on next page

Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
2	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>



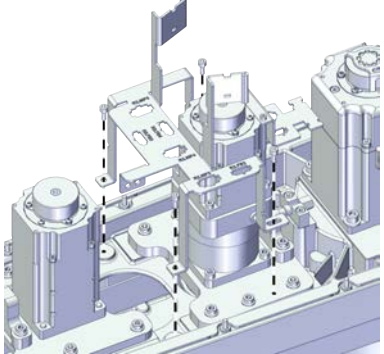





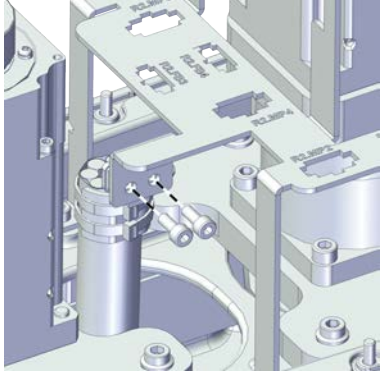
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base



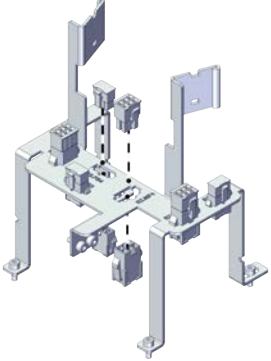


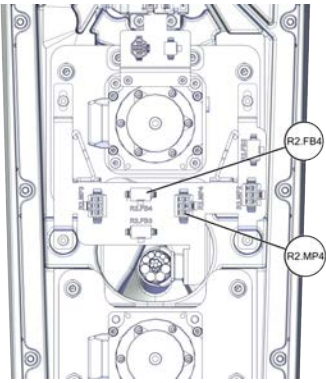

Continued

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



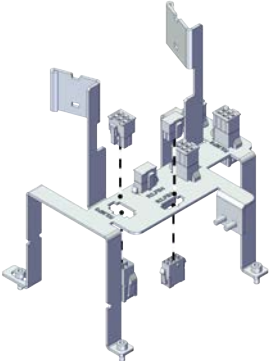

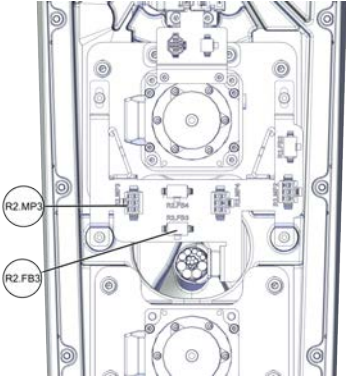

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base



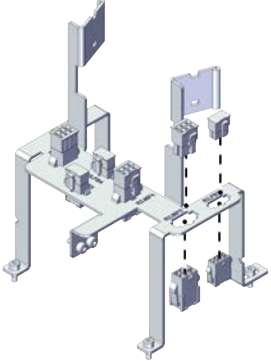

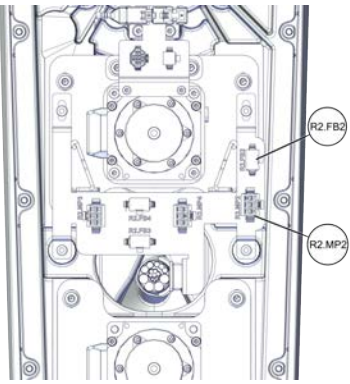

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



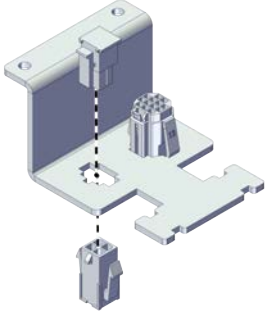

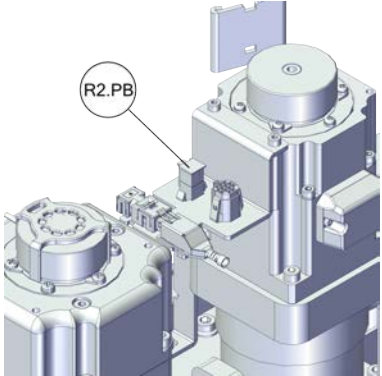

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued



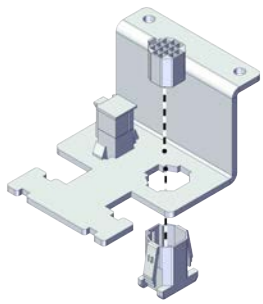

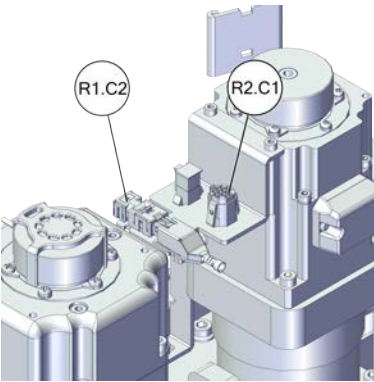


Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page


	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

Continues on next page

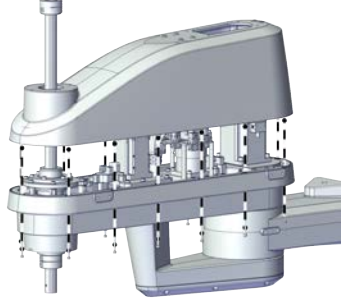
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

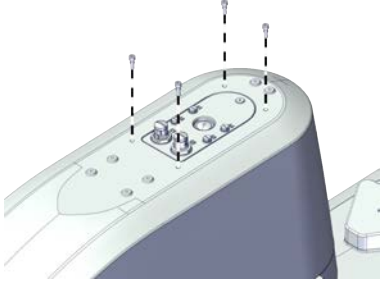

Continued

	Action	Note
7	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

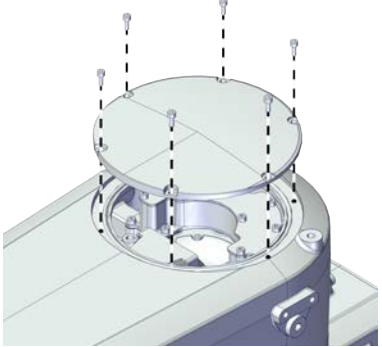
Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	


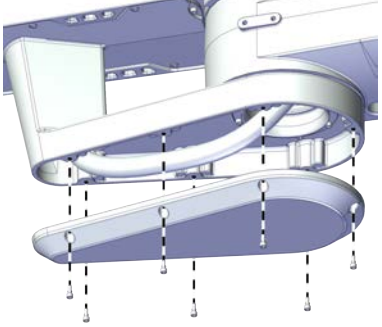
Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cover.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000499</p>
3	Refit the screws.	



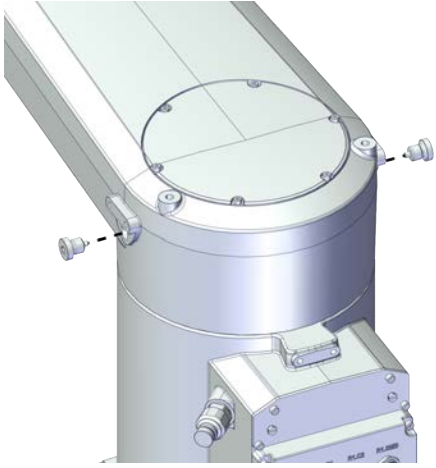


Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base


Continued

Refilling oil to axis-1 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Open the oil plugs, one for filling and the other for venting.	 xx2300000547
4	 WARNING Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	Refill the gearbox with oil.  Note The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.	Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .
6	Refit the oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Continues on next page

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5 Repair

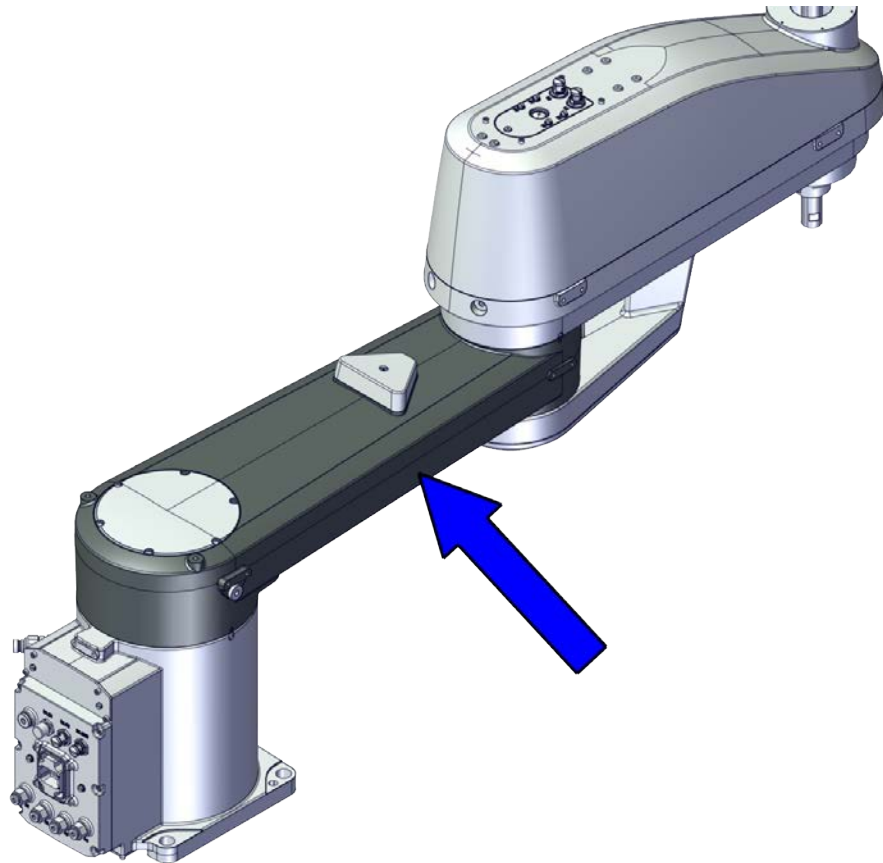
5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

5.5 Inner arm

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Location of the inner arm

The inner arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000471

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Inner arm, 850 mm	3HAC087304-001	
Inner arm, 1,050 mm	3HAC087305-001	
Axis 1 Cover	3HAC087308-001	
Oil tank	3HAC081810-001	Replace if damaged.
Oil tank cover	3HAC081812-001	Replace if damaged.

Continues on next page

Spare part	Article number	Note
Oil tank gasket	3HAC081814-001	Replace if damaged.
Oil tank O-ring	3HAB3772-138	Replace if damaged.
A2 Swing	3HAC087306-001	
A1 seal ring	3HAB3702-22	
Rubber stop	3HAC081815-001	With bolt
Damper	3HAC084073-001	Replace if damaged.
Magnetic plug, G 1/4"	3HAC037925-001	With bolt
Cable arm bracket	3HAC081793-001	
Inner arm bracket	3HAC081792-001	
Hex socket head cap flange screw	3HAB3412-416	Used for axis-1 mechanical stop.
Hex socket head cap flange	3HAB3412-412	Used for axis-2 mechanical stop.
Washer	3HAC065801-001	Used for inner arm and axis-2 gear.
Spring washer, conical	9ADA334-7	Used for inner arm and axis-1 gear.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

Deciding calibration routine


Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

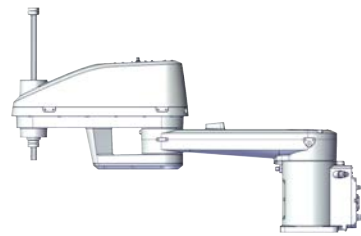

Removing the inner arm

Use these procedures to remove the inner arm.



Preparations before removing the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.  CAUTION Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 xx2300000486
4	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Draining oil of axis-1 gearbox

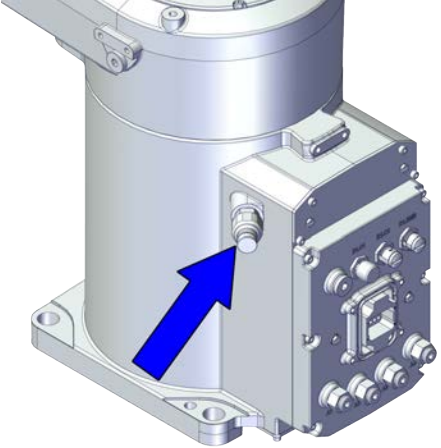
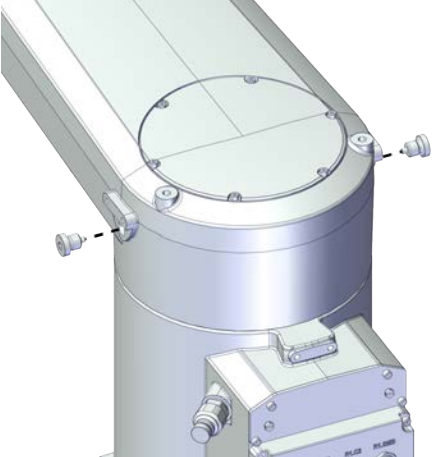


	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Lay down the robot to let the quick coupling facing the ground if needed.	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm



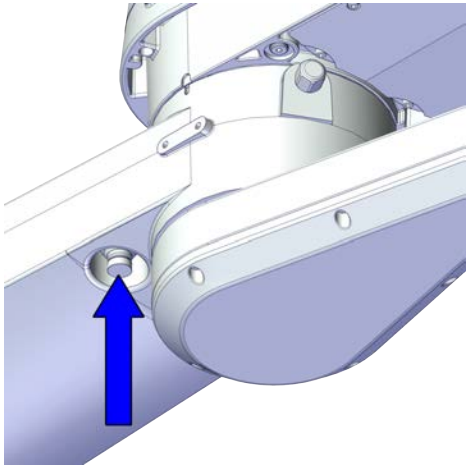
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the quick coupling.	 <p>xx2300000546</p>
5	Remove the oil plugs and keep them opened to speed up the drainage.	 <p>xx2300000547</p>
6	Plug a G3/8 quick coupling connector with pipe to the quick coupling on base.	
7	 <p>WARNING</p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.</p>	
8	Drain the gearbox oil.	 <p>Note</p> <p>Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
9	Remove the quick coupling connector and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
10	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Draining oil of axis-2 gearbox

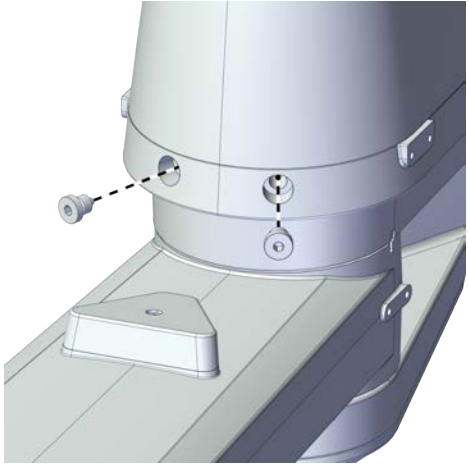



	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the oil plug, draining.	 <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">xx2300000548</p>
4	Plug a clean pipe to the oil plug, draining, with the other end to the oil collecting vessel.	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

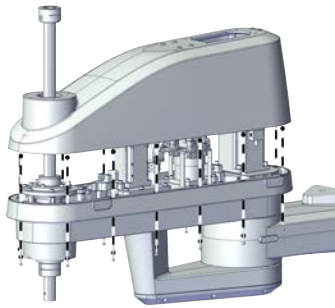
Continued

	Action	Note
5	Remove the oil plug, draining.	 xx2300000549
6	 WARNING Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.	
7	Drain the gearbox oil.	 Note Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.
8	Remove and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
9	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm


Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

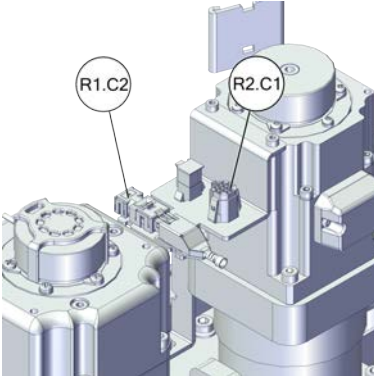



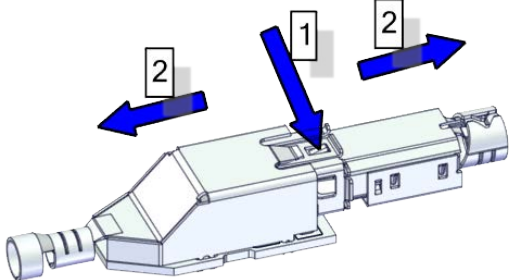

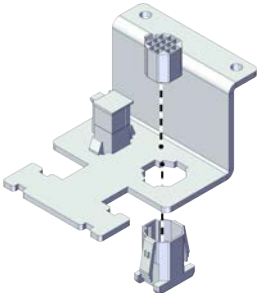
Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

5 Repair


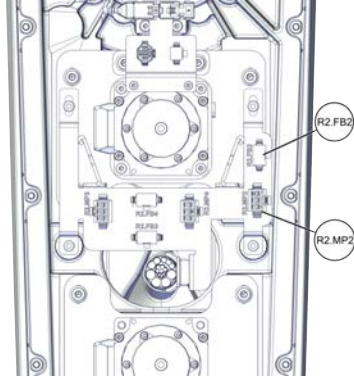

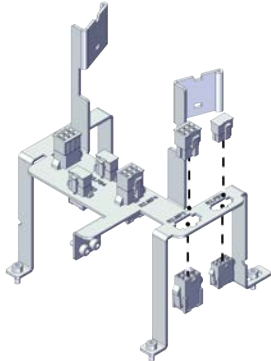
5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p> 	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

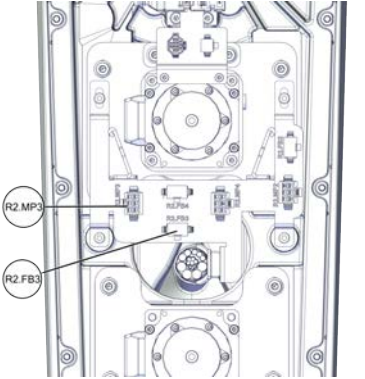

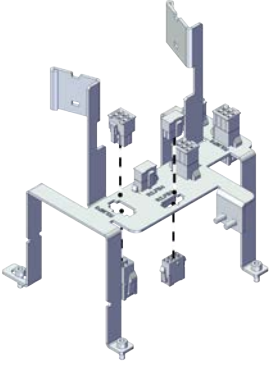
	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

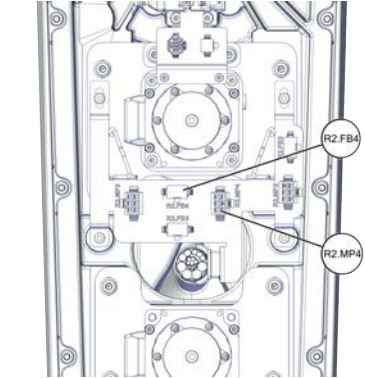
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


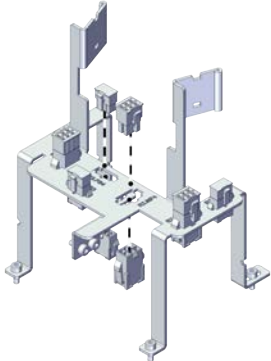
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>


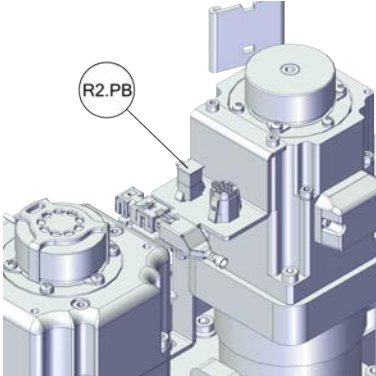

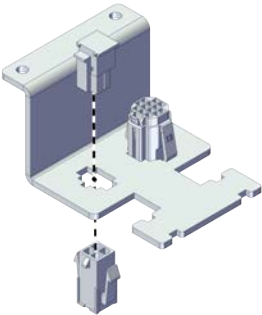
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>



Continues on next page

5 Repair



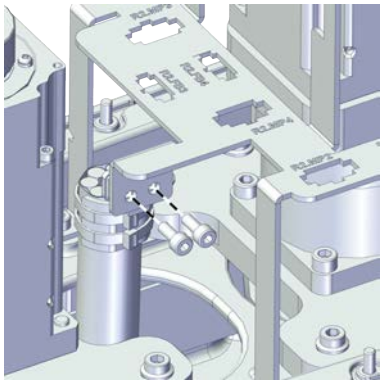

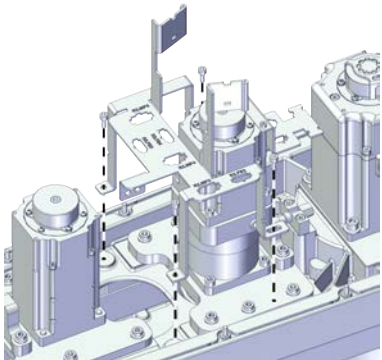
5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

Removing the process hub


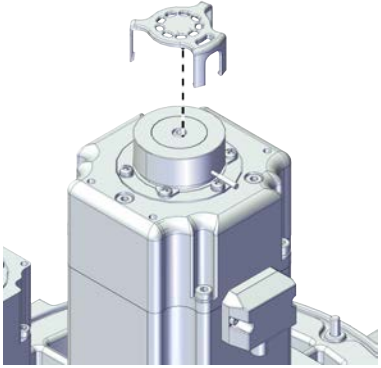
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket


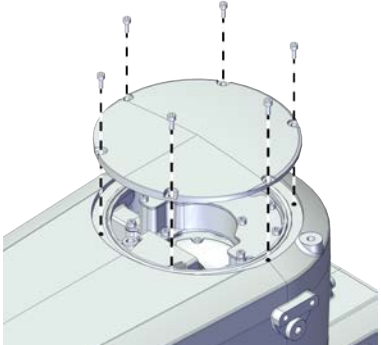
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the axis-2 motor protection cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the protection cover on the motor.	 xx2300000550

Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Remove the cover.	
		 xx2300000498


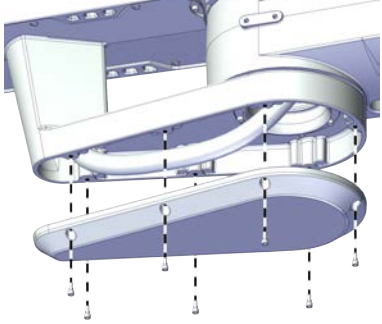
Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

Removing the cable arm cover

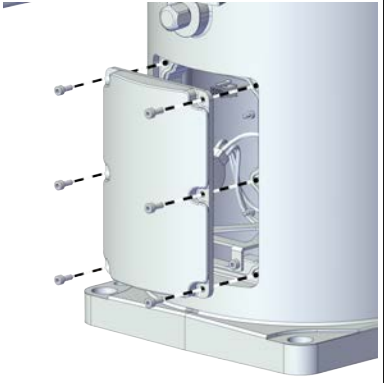
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000499</small>
3	Remove the cover.	

Removing the SMB cover




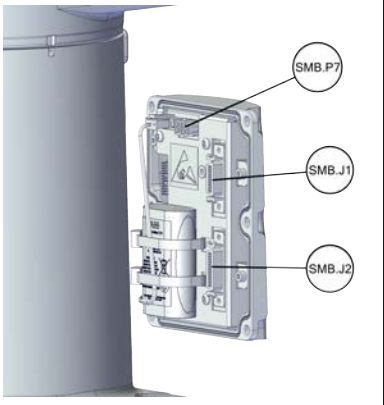
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	

Continues on next page

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>
4	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.	

Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	 <p>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	
3	Cut the strips.	
4	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>


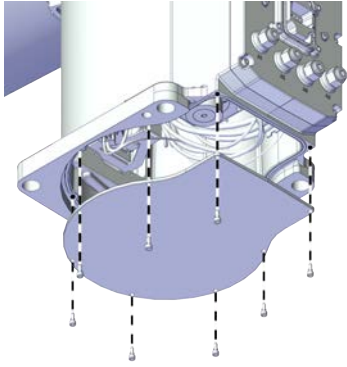
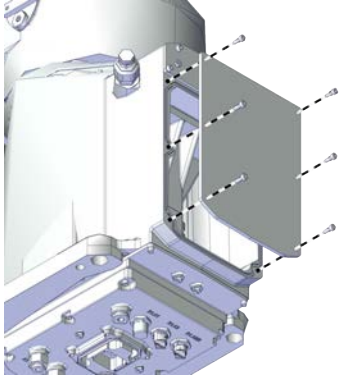
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


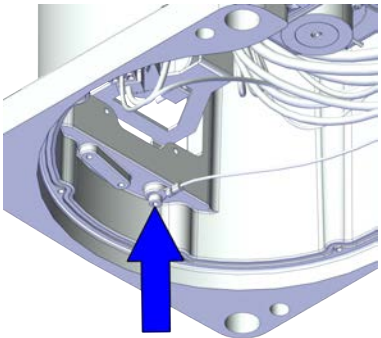
Continued

Removing the base plate/ rear plate


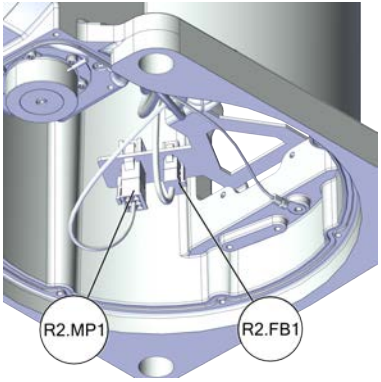
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
3	Lay down the robot.	
4	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version:
5	Remove the base plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000500
6	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version:
7	Remove the rear plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the grounding cable connector

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the grounding cable from the base by unscrew the screw.	 xx2300000502

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor


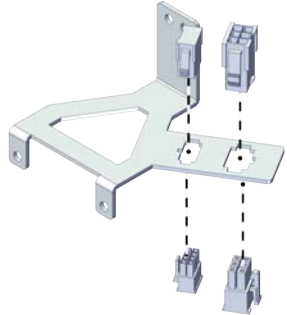
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 	 xx2300000504

Continues on next page





5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000505</p>


Removing the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base from the SMB side.</p>	 <p>xx2300000503</p>




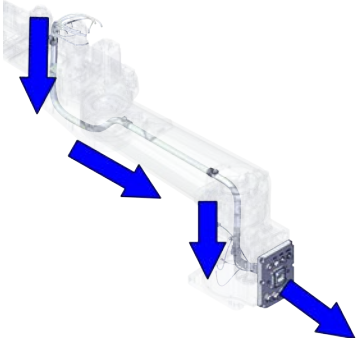
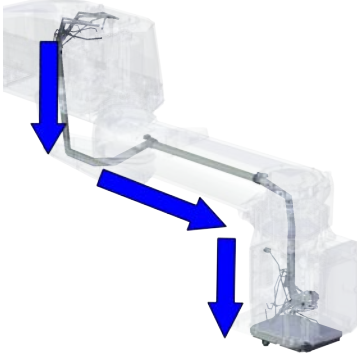
Removing the bracket of the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 <p>xx2300000506</p>

Removing the main harness from the cable arm position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	<p>Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>

Continues on next page


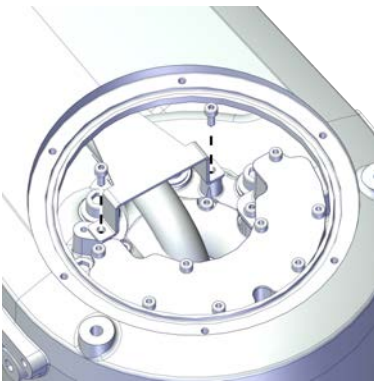
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


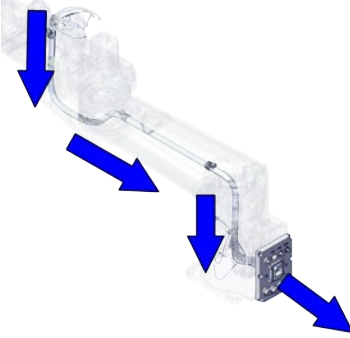

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.	


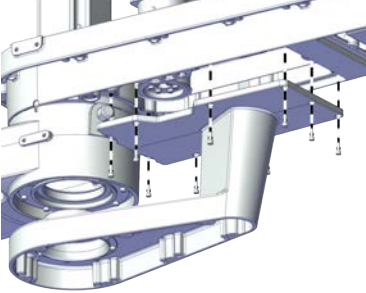
Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the inner arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000508
3	Remove the screws on the cable ferrule to the bracket and take the bracket out.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
4	<p>Pull the main harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>

Removing the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Remove the screws locking the cable arm to the outer arm.</p>	 <p>xx2300000516</p>
3	<p>Remove the cable arm by pulling out from the inner arm bearing.</p>	



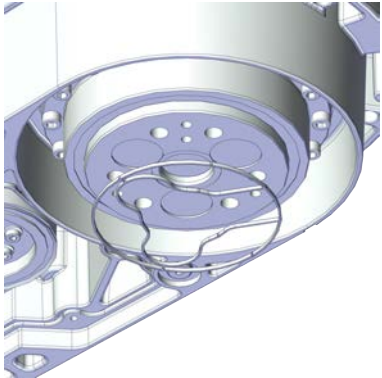
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued


Removing the outer arm assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the axis -2 gear inside the inner arm.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000517
3	Remove the outer arm assembly slightly.	
4	Remove the gear gasket on the axis-2 gear unit.	 xx2300000603


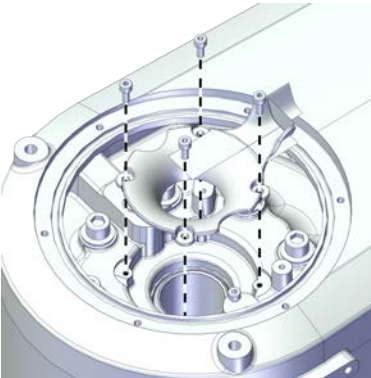
Removing the oil tank

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	 <p>xx2300000511</p>
3	Remove the oil tank.	

Removing the protection tube

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 <p>xx2300000513</p>
2	Remove the screws on the protection tube to the inner arm.	
3	Remove the protection tube.	

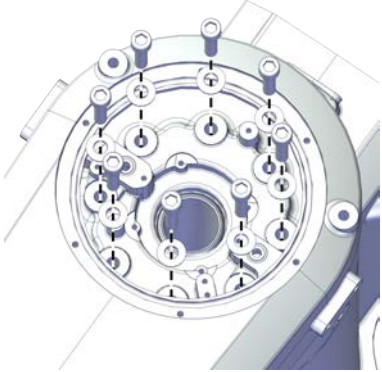
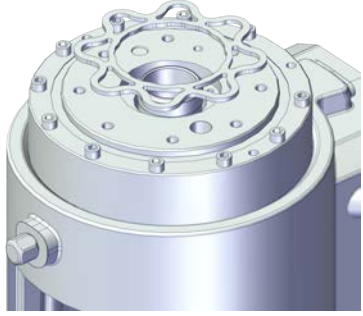
Removing the base from inner arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


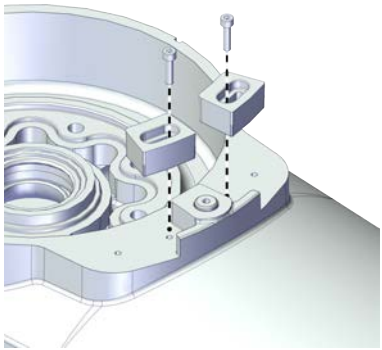
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued


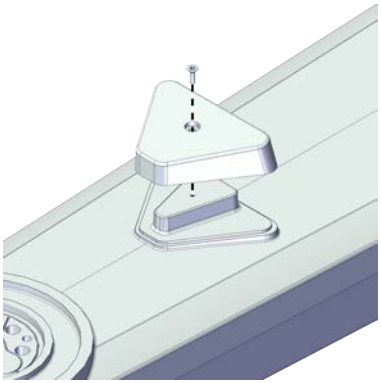
	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws and washers on the inner to the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000514</p>
3	Disconnect the axis-1 gear to the inner arm.	
4	Remove the BassSwing gasket on the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000602</p>

Removing the rubber stop from the inner arm


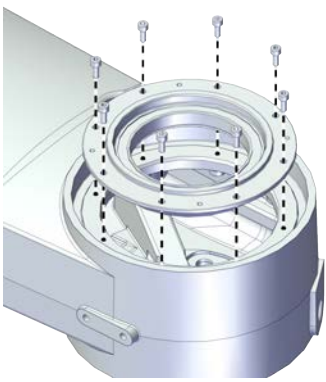
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000551</p>
3	Remove the rubber stop from the inner arm.	

Continues on next page

Removing the damper from the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000552</p>
3	Remove the rubber stop from the inner arm.	

Removing the A2 swing from the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000554</p>
3	Remove the A2 swing from the inner arm.	


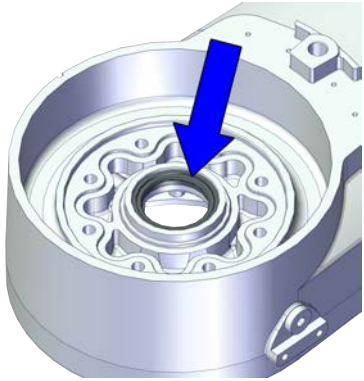
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

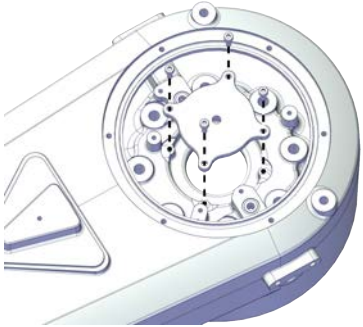
Removing the A1 sealing ring from the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the sealing from the inner arm.	 xx2300000553


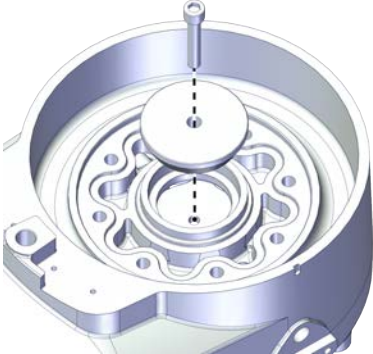
Refitting the inner arm

Use these procedures to refit the inner arm.

Refitting the A1 sealing ring to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	Install the holding part of the sealing press tool to the inner arm and locking with the screws.	Sealing press tool:3HAC087848-001 Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)  xx2300000585

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Insert the A1 sealing ring to the pressing part of the sealing press tool.	 <p>xx2300000586</p>
3	Press the A1 sealing ring to the inner arm by tightening the pressing part with the screw to the holding part.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M8x45 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (1 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000587</p>
4	Remove the pressing part by unscrewing the screw.	
5	Remove the holding part by unscrewing the screws.	

Continues on next page

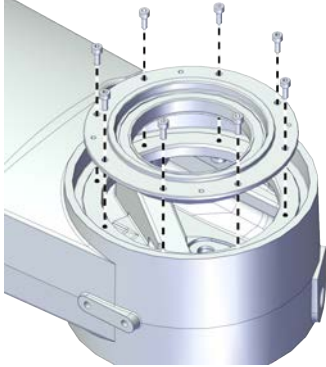
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

Refitting the A2 swing to the inner arm

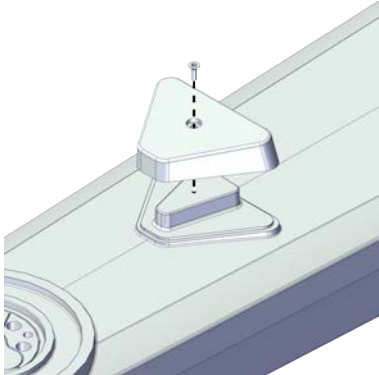
	Action	Note
1	Refit the A2 swing back to the inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm±3
2	Secure with the screws.	



xx2300000554

Refitting the damper to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the damper back to the inner arm.	Screws: Torx pan head screw 9ADA625-34 M4x10 8.8-A2F(1 pcs) Tightening torque: 1 Nm ±3%
2	Secure with the screws.	

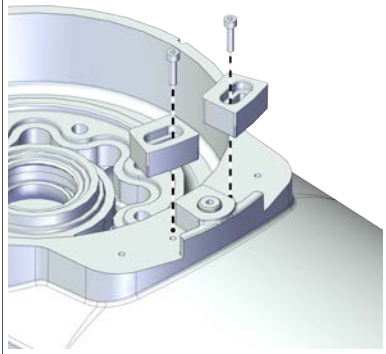


xx2300000552

Continues on next page

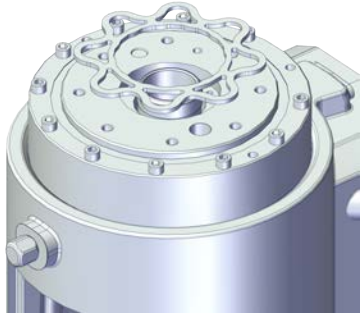
Refitting the rubber stop to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the rubber stop back to the inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1 Nm
2	Secure with the screws.	



xx2300000551

Refitting the base to the inner arm

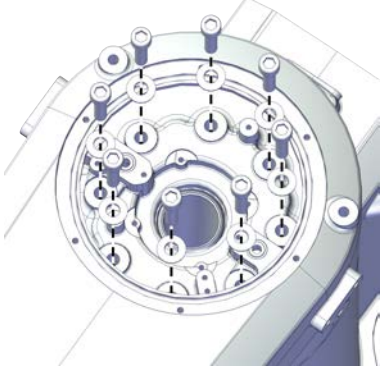
	Action	Note
1	Refit the BassSwing gasket to the axis-1 gearbox.	 <p>xx2300000602</p>

Continues on next page


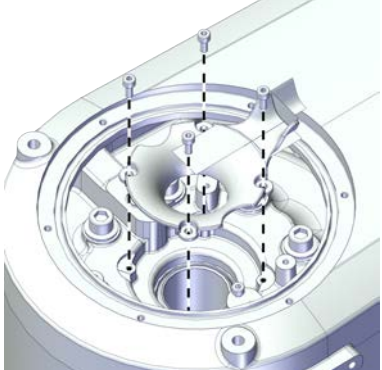
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued


	Action	Note
2	Refit the inner arm to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M8x40 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (8 pcs) Washers: Spring washer, conical 9ADA334-7 18x4x2 Steel (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 25 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000514</p>
3	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the protection tube


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the protection tube.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000513</p>
3	Secure the screws on the protection tube to the inner arm.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the oil tank

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the oil tank.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±3%
3	Secure the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	

Refitting the outer arm to the inner arm




	Action	Note
1	 CAUTION Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.	
2	Refit the gear gasket to the axis-2 gear unit.	

Continues on next page


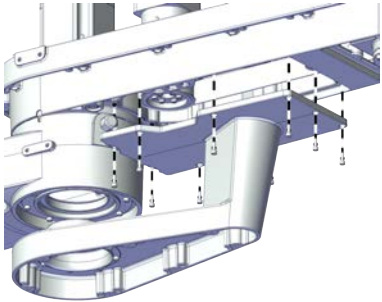
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

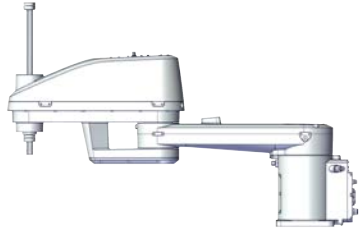



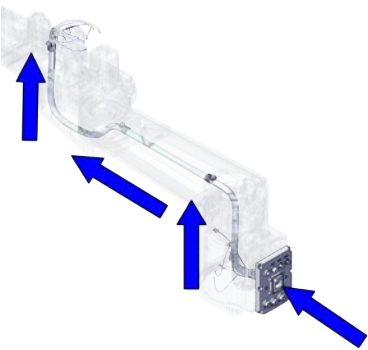
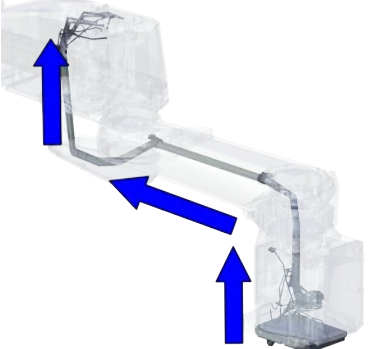
	Action	Note
3	<p>Refit the outer arm to the inner arm.</p>  <p>Tip</p> <p>When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M10x25 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (6 pcs) Tightening torque:55 Nm</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (3 pcs) Tightening torque:10 Nm</p>
4	<p>Refit the screws.</p>  <p>Note</p> <p>The two screw holes under the axis-2 belt location are left empty.</p>	 <p>xx2300000517</p>

Refitting the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Refit the cable arm to the inner arm and outer arm.	
3	Secure the cable arm to the outer arm with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque:3.3 Nm2.4 Nm ±3%</p>  <p>xx2300000516</p>

Continues on next page

Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	<p>Make sure that the robot is at zero position.</p>	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the inner arm through the protection tube of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>



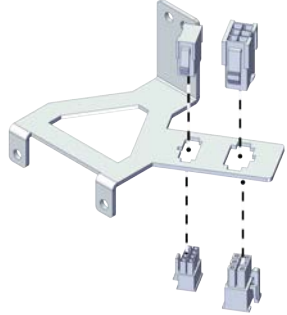

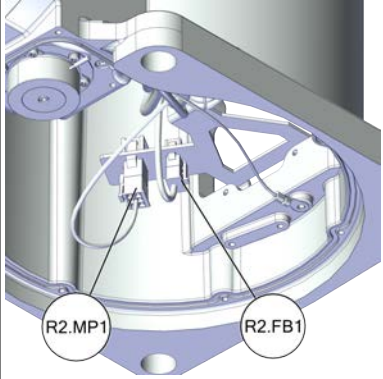

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued





Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000505</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000504</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

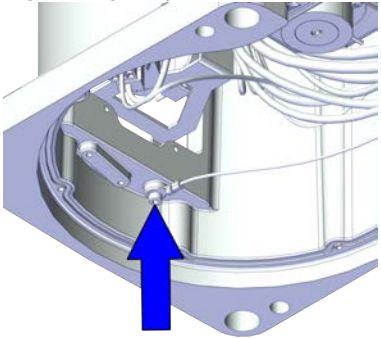

Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000503</p>
3	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	 <p>xx2300000503</p>

Reconnecting the grounding cable connector

	Action	Note
1	<p>Secure the grounding cable to the bracket with the screw.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000502</p>
2	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	


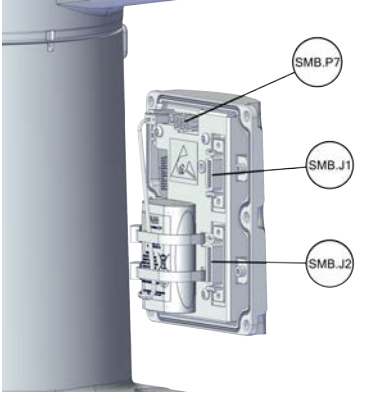
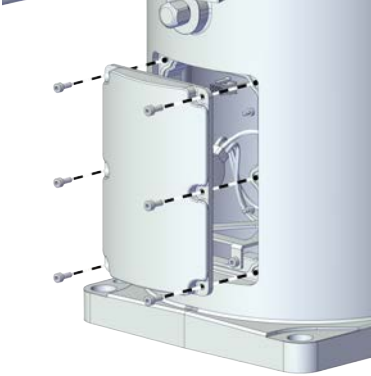
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

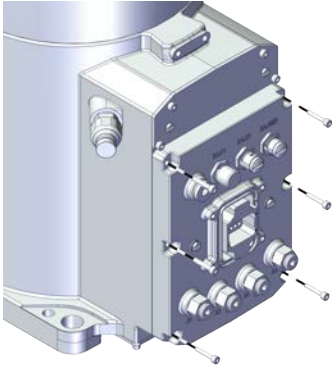

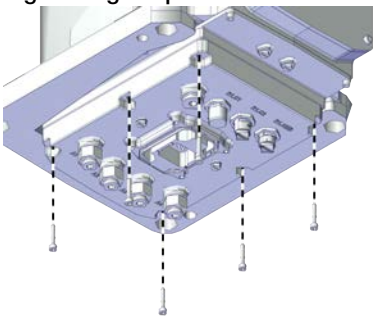
Continued

Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>
2	Refit the SMB cover assembly.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>

Continues on next page

Refitting the main harness

	Action	Note
1	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
2	Secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%  xx2300000509
3	For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.  Note Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.	For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%
4	Secure with the screws.	 xx2300000609

Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

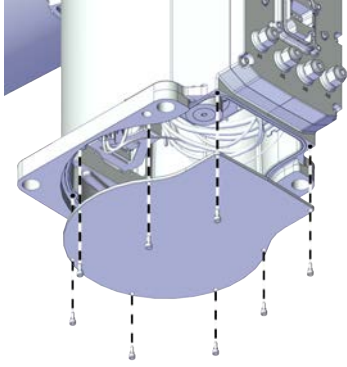
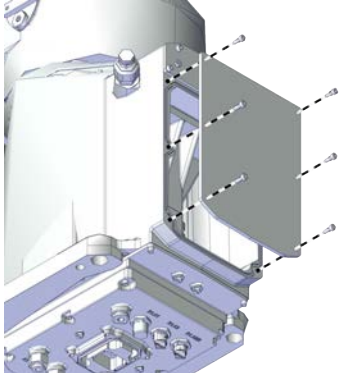
	Action	Note
1	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


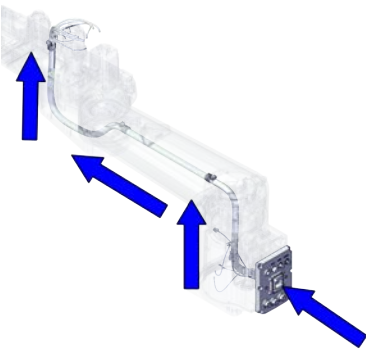

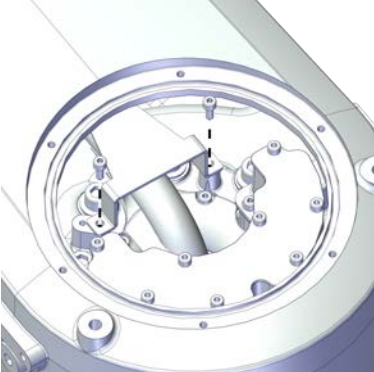
Continued

	Action	Note
2	For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base. For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm 10%
3	Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000500 For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608
4	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
5	Secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Steel Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 56 Nm \pm 10%

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position

	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2 Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10%

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
3	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>


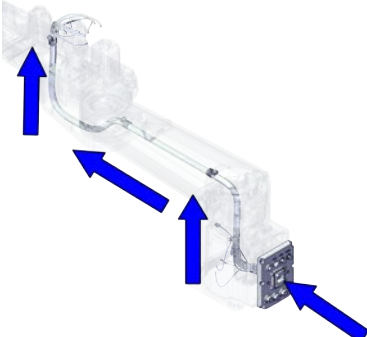
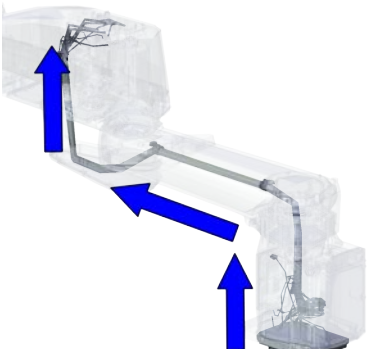

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm



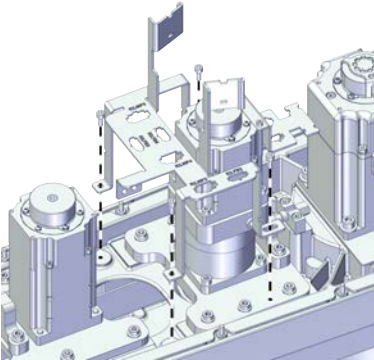





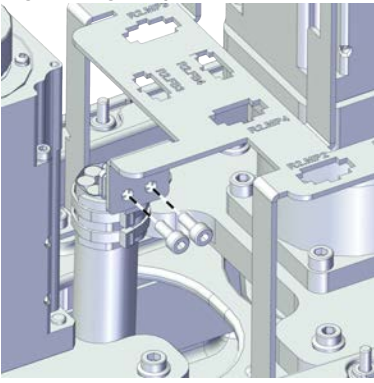
Continued

Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
2	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>

Continues on next page

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>



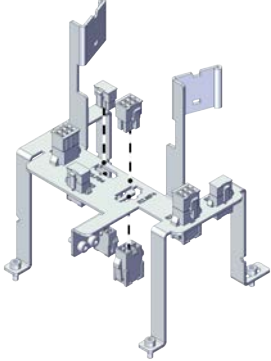


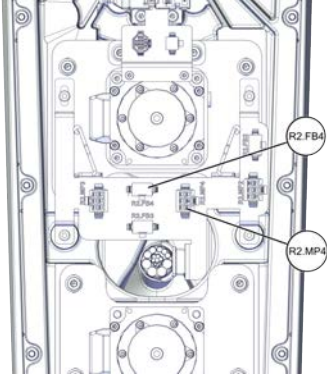

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm



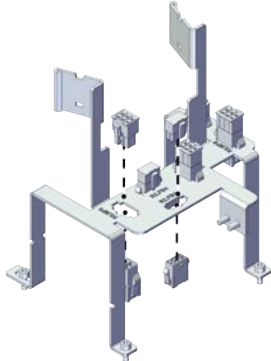

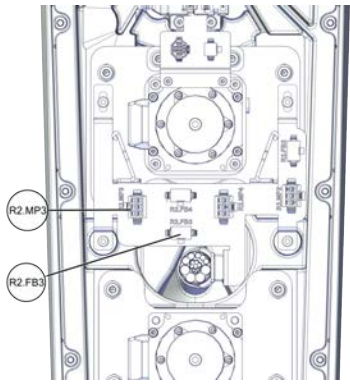

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



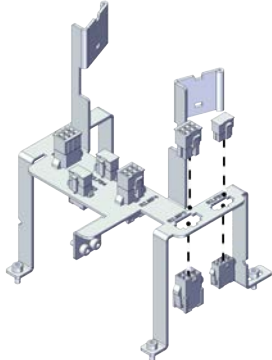

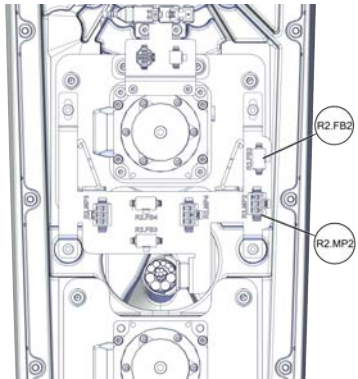

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm



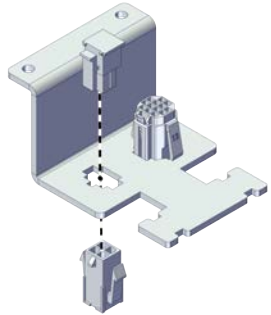

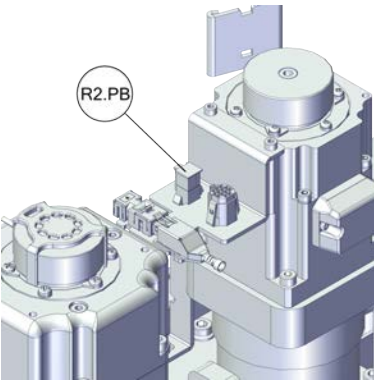

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)



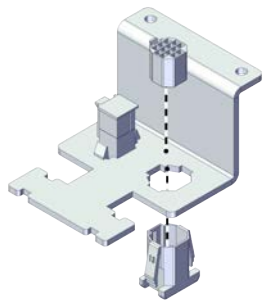

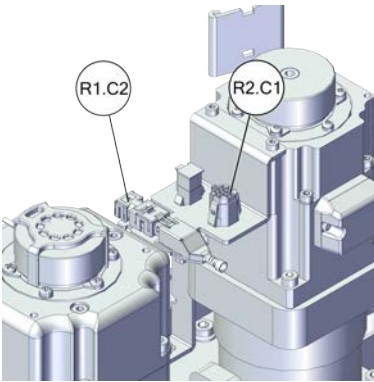


	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


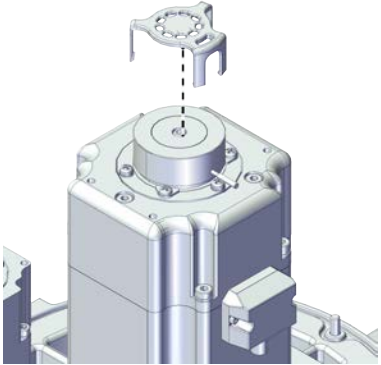
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

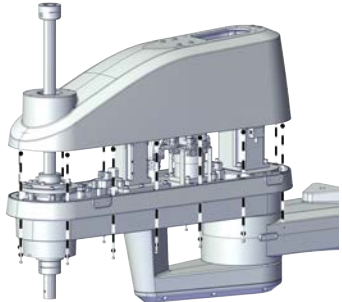
Continues on next page

	Action	Note
7	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the axis-2 motor pulley protection cover

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Refit the protection cover back to the motor.</p>	 <p>xx2300000550</p>

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the cover.</p>	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	


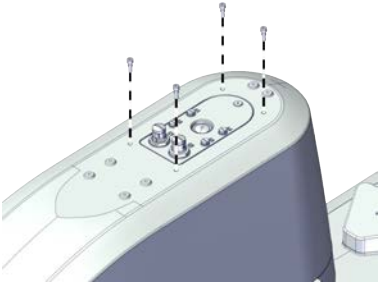
Continues on next page

5 Repair

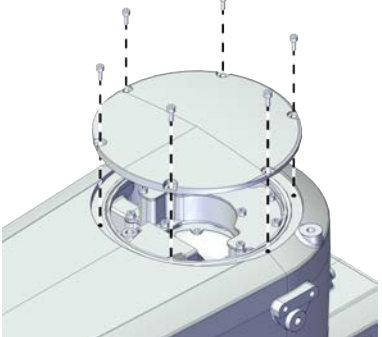
5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

Continued

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Tighten the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

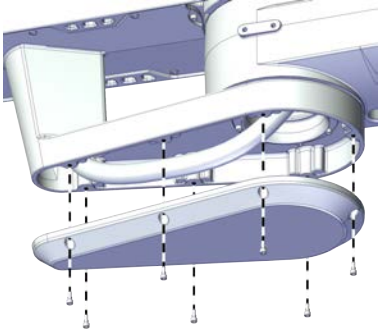
Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page



Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cover.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm ±3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Refit the screws.	



xx2300000499

Refilling oil to axis-1 gearbox

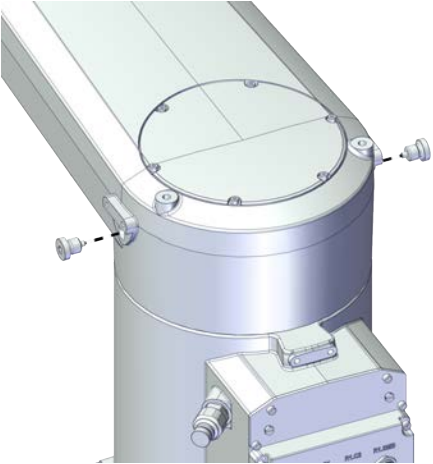


	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm


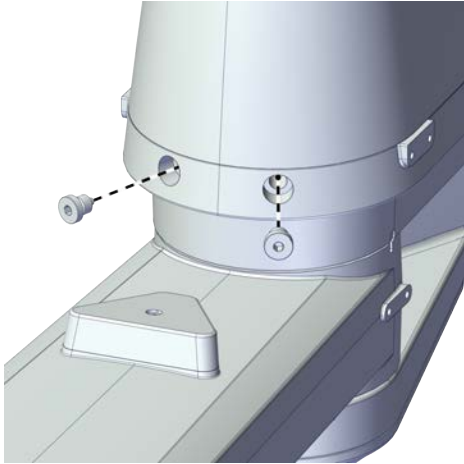




Continued

	Action	Note
3	Open the oil plugs, one for filling and the other for venting.	 <p>xx2300000547</p>
4	 <p>WARNING</p> <p>Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	<p>Refill the gearbox with oil.</p>  <p>Note</p> <p>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.</p>	<p>Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>.</p>
6	Refit the oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Refilling oil to axis-2 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	 <p>WARNING</p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30.</p>	
2	 <p>CAUTION</p> <p>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	<p>Open the upper oil plug.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The lower oil plug has to be closed; otherwise, the oil may leak before required oil amount is filled.</p>	 <p>xx2300000549</p>
4	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	<p>Refill the gearbox with oil.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Oil filling must be slow to make sure air venting is fluent.</p>	<p>Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>.</p>
6	<p>Refit the oil plug.</p>	<p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm</p>
7	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run.</p>	

Concluding procedure


	Action	Note
1	<p>Recalibrate the robot.</p>	<p>Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553.</p>

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the inner arm

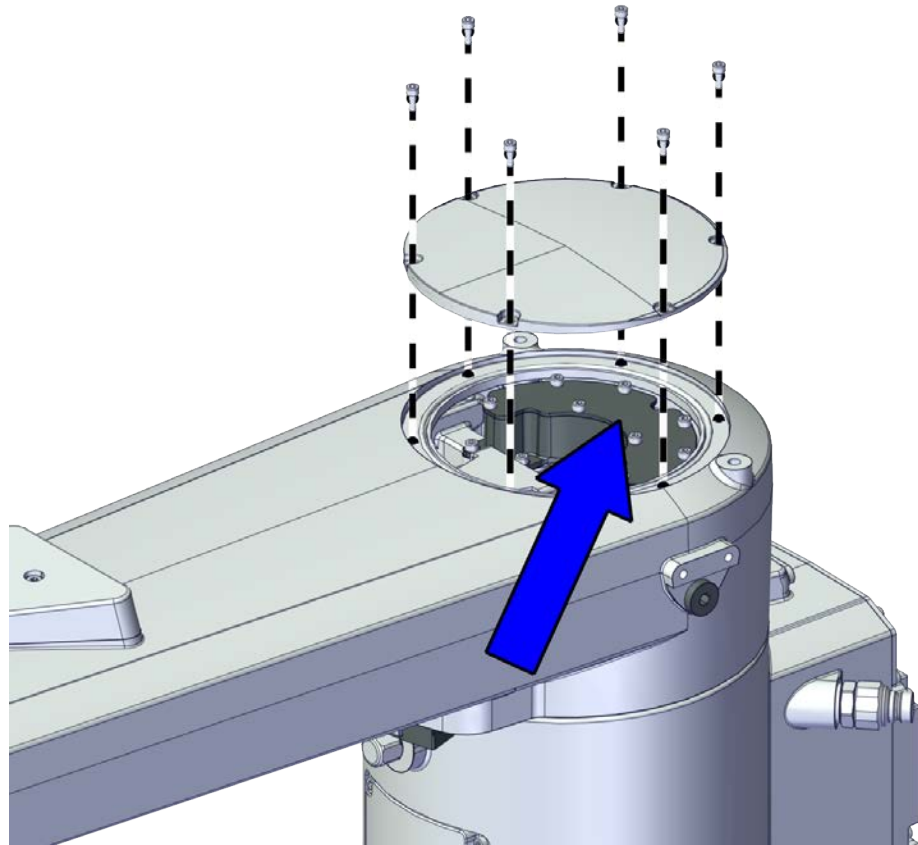
Continued

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55</i> .	

5.5.2 Replacing the axis-1 oil tank

Location of the axis-1 oil tank

The axis-1 oil tank is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000472

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Oil tank	3HAC081810-001	Replace if damaged.
Oil tank cover	3HAC081812-001	Replace if damaged.
Oil tank gasket	3HAC081814-001	Replace if damaged.
Oil tank O-ring	3HAB3772-138	Replace if damaged.

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.2 Replacing the axis-1 oil tank

Continued

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	




Removing the axis-1 oil tank

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 oil tank.



Preparations before removing the oil tank

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p>Jog all axes to zero position.</p>	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Draining oil of axis-1 gearbox

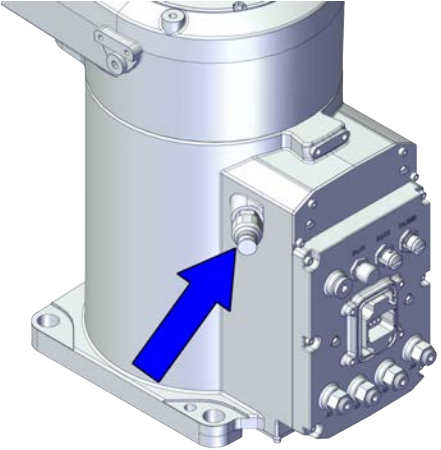
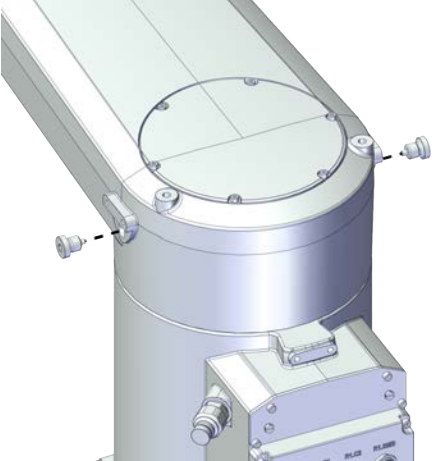


	Action	Note
1	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30.</p>	
2	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.</p>	
3	<p>Lay down the robot to let the quick coupling facing the ground if needed.</p>	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.5.2 Replacing the axis-1 oil tank


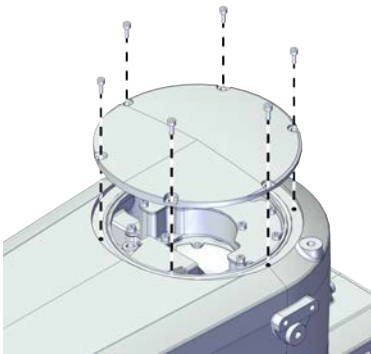
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the quick coupling.	 <p>xx2300000546</p>
5	Remove the oil plugs and keep them opened to speed up the drainage.	 <p>xx2300000547</p>
6	Plug a G3/8 quick coupling connector with pipe to the quick coupling on base.	
7	 <p>WARNING</p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.</p>	
8	Drain the gearbox oil.	 <p>Note</p> <p>Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.</p>


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
9	Remove the quick coupling connector and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
10	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000498
3	Remove the cover.	

Removing the oil tank


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.2 Replacing the axis-1 oil tank


Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	 <p>xx2300000511</p>
3	Remove the oil tank.	

Refitting the axis-1 oil tank

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 oil tank.

Refitting the oil tank



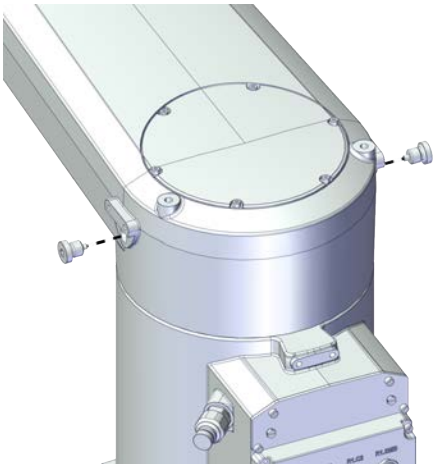
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the oil tank.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 3%
3	Secure the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
2	Refit the screws.	

Refilling oil to axis-1 gearbox



	Action	Note
1	 <p>WARNING</p> Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 <p>CAUTION</p> The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Open the oil plugs, one for filling and the other for venting.	 <p>xx2300000547</p>

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.5.2 Replacing the axis-1 oil tank

Continued

	Action	Note
4	 WARNING Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	Refill the gearbox with oil.  Note The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.	Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .
6	Refit the oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Concluding procedure

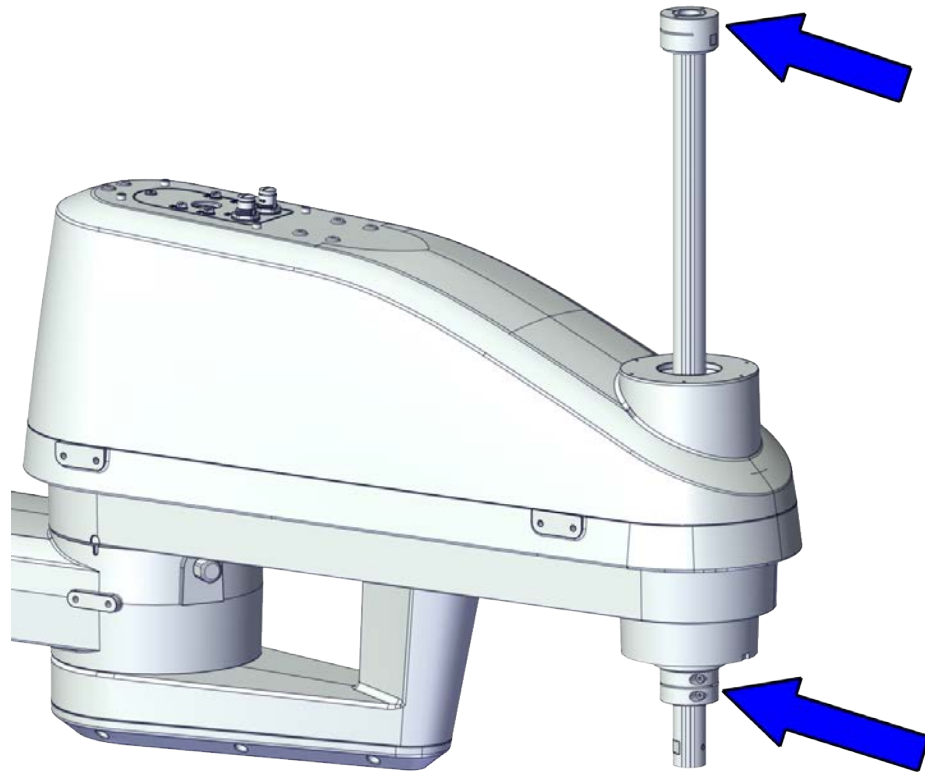
	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5.6 Outer arm

5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

Location of the mechanical stoppers

The mechanical stoppers are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000172

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Rubber bumper	3HAC081787-001	
Mechanical stopper	3HAC081786-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

Continued

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	


Removing the upper mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to remove the upper mechanical stopper.





Preparations before removing the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Removing the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000555</p>
3	Remove the mechanical stopper.  Tip Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair




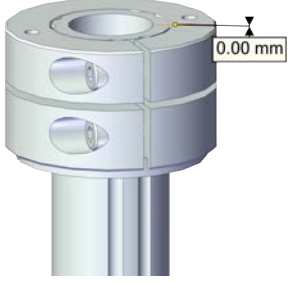
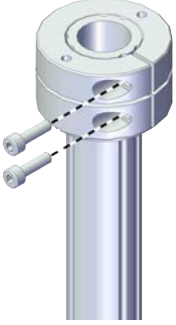
5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

Continued


Refitting the upper mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to refit the upper mechanical stopper.

Refitting the upper mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw with the upper surface on the same level with the upper of the ball screw.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000560</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x14 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000555</p>

Concluding procedure


	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55.</p>	

Continues on next page


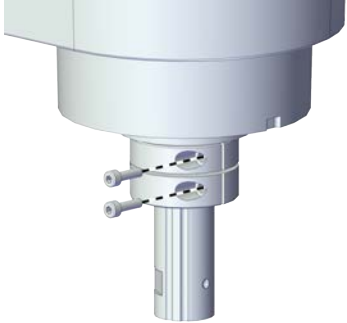

Removing the lower mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to remove the lower mechanical stopper.

Preparations before removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	Move the ball screw to lower position.	
3	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.	

Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000556
3	Remove the mechanical stopper.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair




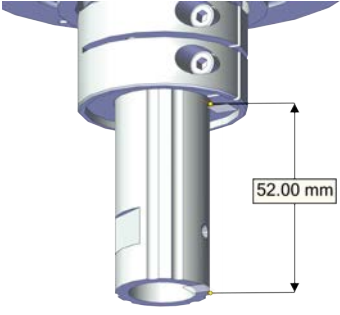
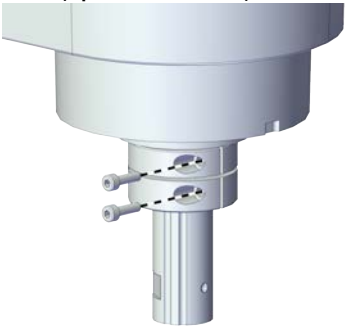
5.6.1 Replacing the mechanical stopper

Continued


Refitting the lower mechanical stopper

Use these procedures to refit the lower mechanical stopper.

Refitting the mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 52 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000561</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x14 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000556</p>

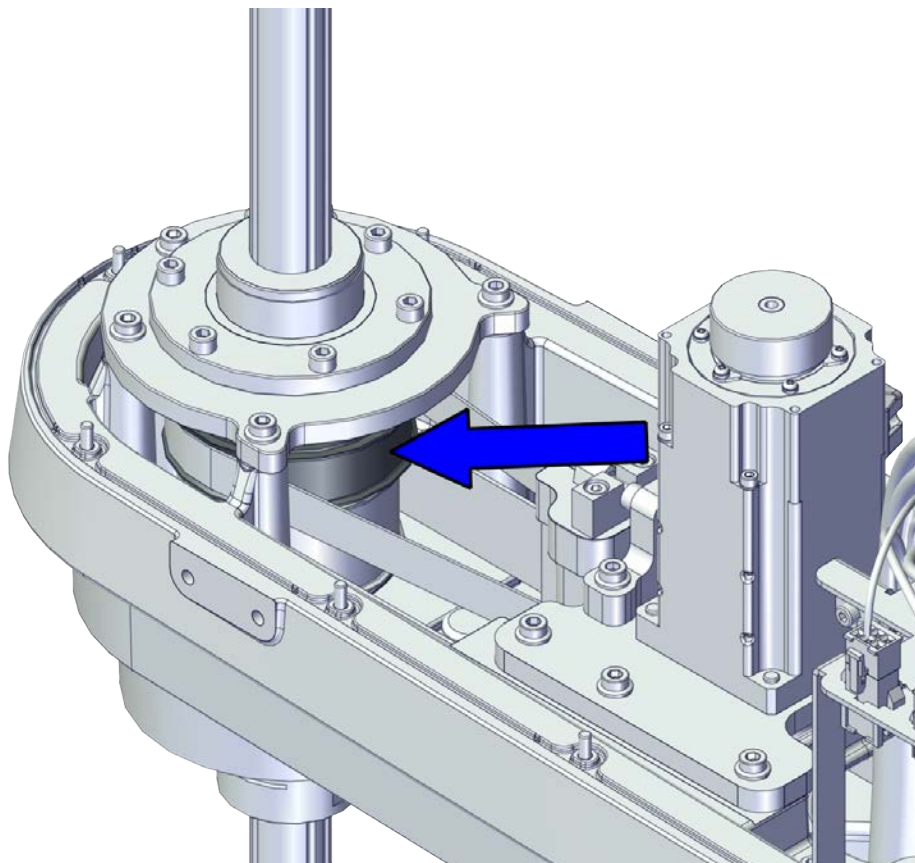
Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55.</p>	

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Location of the pulley

The pulley is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000473

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Pulley on the ball screw upper position	3HAC081703-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

Equipment	Article number	Note
IRB 930 auxiliary shaft	3HAC087847-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.



	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565.</p>
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Continues on next page


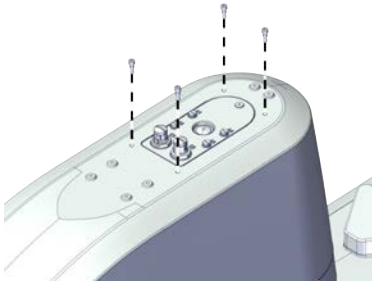
Removing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Use these procedures to remove the pulley.

Preparations before removing the pulley

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	


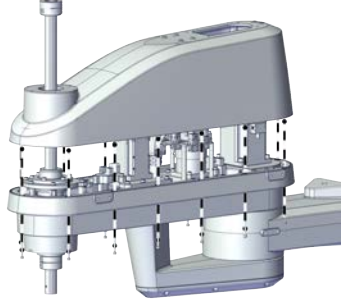
Continues on next page

5 Repair



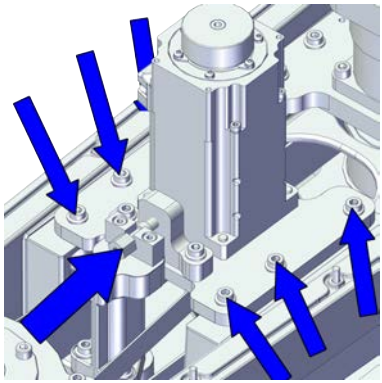
5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  <small>xx2300000488</small>

Releasing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 DANGER Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
3	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 <small>xx2300000557</small>


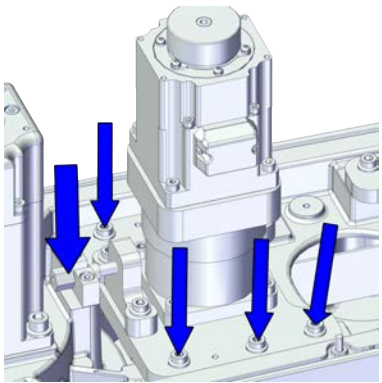
Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position


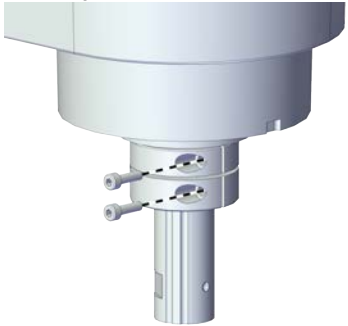
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Release the timing belt.	

Releasing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Loosen the six screws of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-4 timing belt be free.	 xx2300000558
3	Release the timing belt.	

Removing the lower mechanical stopper


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000556

Continues on next page



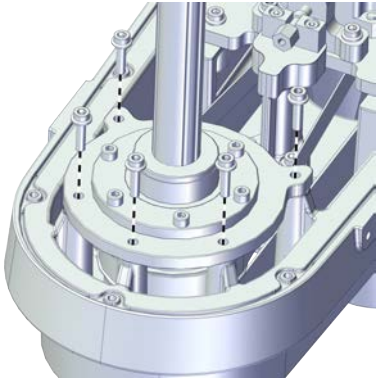
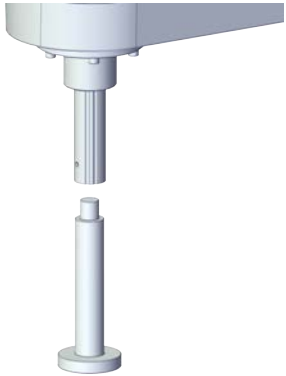
5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued



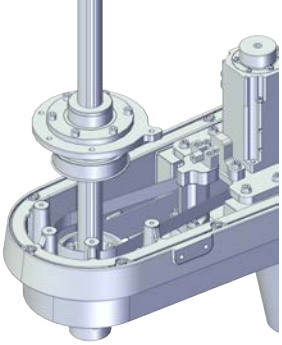

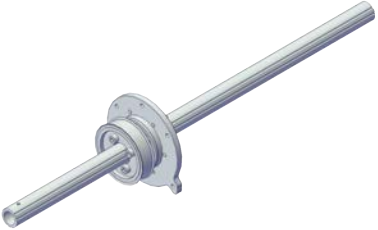
	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	

Removing the ball screw with the flange


	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.</p>	 <p>xx2300000559</p>
4	<p>Insert the special tool auxiliary shaft into the ball screw shaft.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000562</p>

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position
Continued

	Action	Note
5	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 xx2300000563
6	Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.  CAUTION Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status. When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing. Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.	 xx2300000564
7	Lay down the ball screw assembly.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 xx2300000565

Removing the pulley on the ball screw upper position


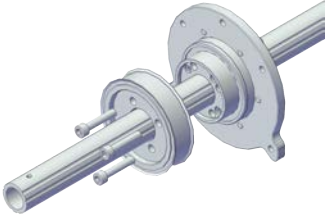


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position


Continued

	Action	Note
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws.	 <small>xx2300000566</small>
4	Remove the pulley carefully.  Tip Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Refitting the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Use these procedures to refit the pulley.



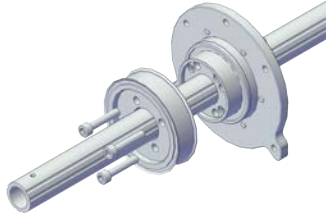

Refitting the pulley on the ball screw upper position

	Action	Note
1	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	



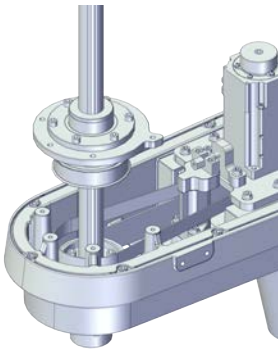

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 8.8 Nm</p> 
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.</p>	<p>xx2300000566</p>

Refitting the ball screw with the flange


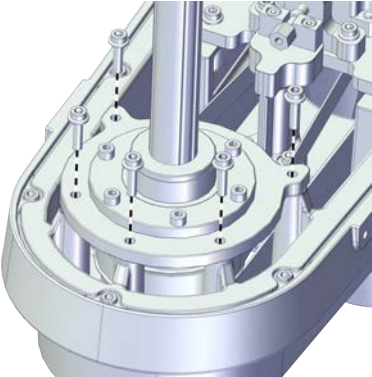
	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool auxiliary shaft along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000564</p>  <p>xx2300000563</p>

Continues on next page




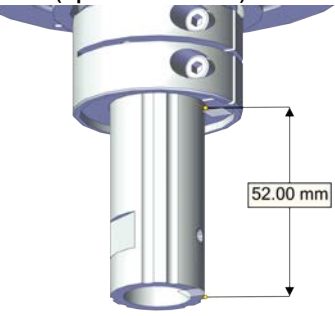
5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers to secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 6 Nm \pm3% to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000559</p>

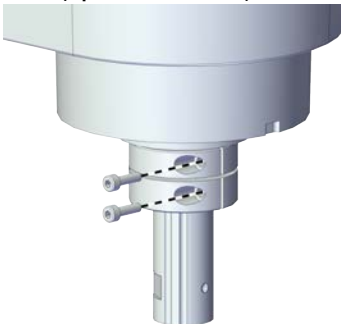
Refitting the mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 52 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000561</p>

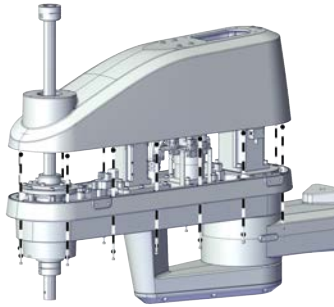
Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x14 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000556</p>

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover


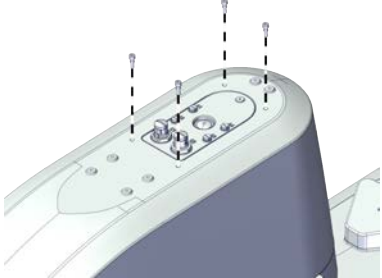
	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

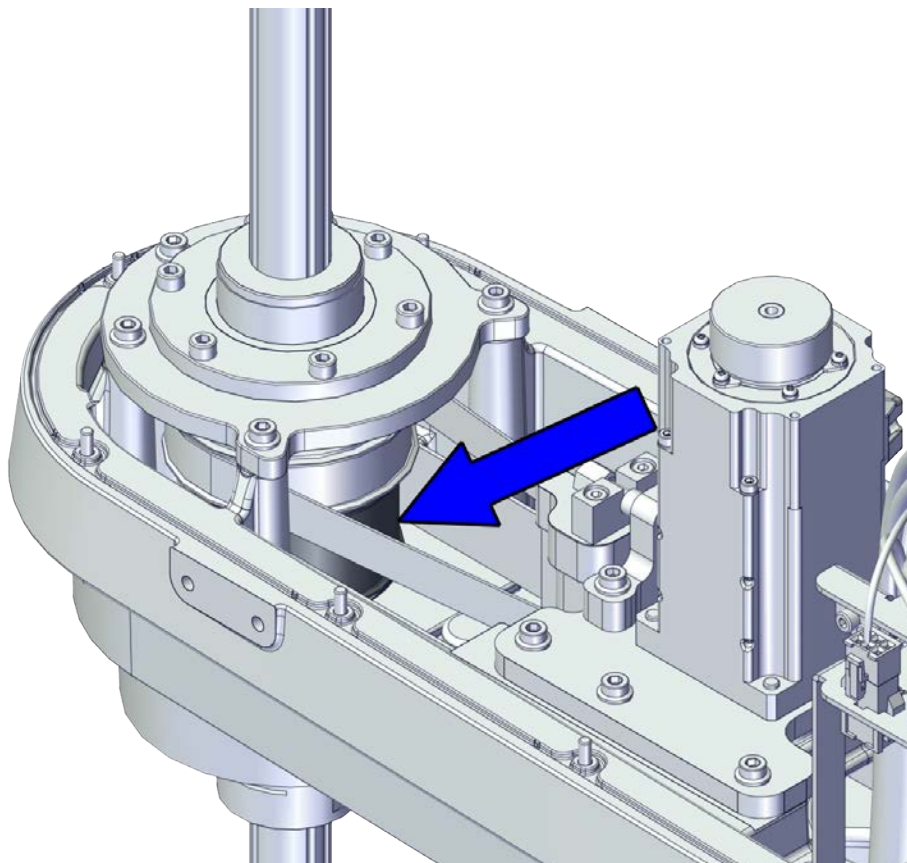
Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55.</p>	

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Location of the pulley

The pulley is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000474

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Pulley on the ball screw lower position	3HAC081704-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

Equipment	Article number	Note
IRB 930 auxiliary shaft	3HAC087847-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	-	THK AFA
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	


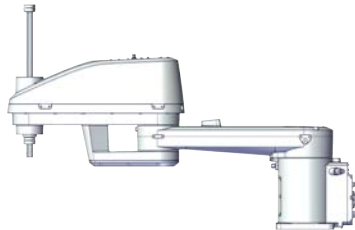

Continues on next page

Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position


Use these procedures to remove the pulley.

Preparations before removing the pulley

Remove the robot from the wall.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight.</p> <p>If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws

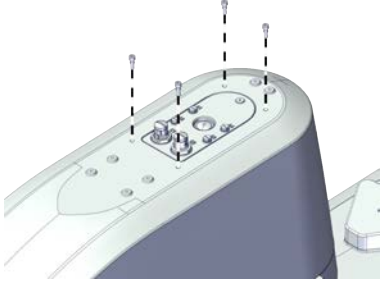
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page


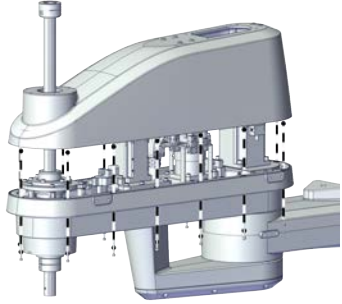
5 Repair

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position


Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488


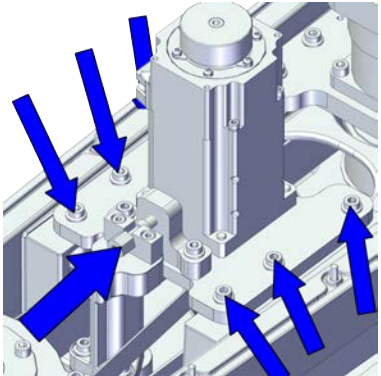
Releasing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


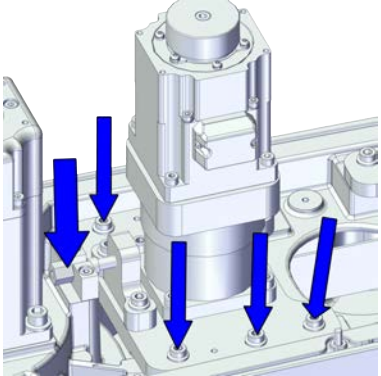
Continues on next page

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	
3	<p>Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.</p>	 <p>xx2300000557</p>
4	<p>Release the timing belt.</p>	

Releasing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Loosen the six screws of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-4 timing belt be free.</p>	 <p>xx2300000558</p>
3	<p>Release the timing belt.</p>	


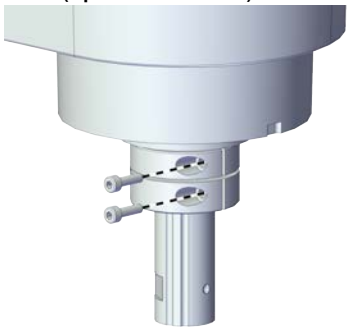

Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000556</small>
3	 CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

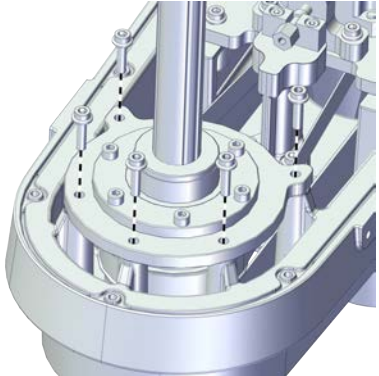


Removing the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	

Continues on next page

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued


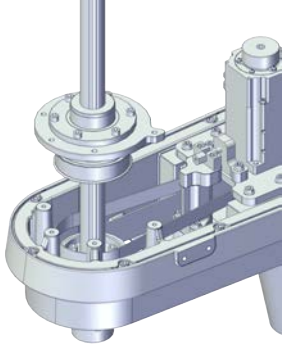

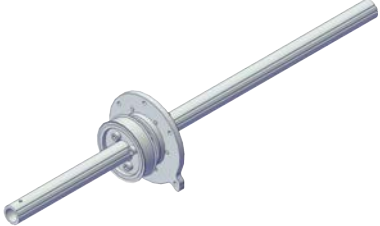
	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.	 <p>xx2300000559</p>
4	Insert the special tool auxiliary shaft into the ball screw shaft.	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000562</p>
5	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 <p>xx2300000563</p>

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
6	<p>Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status.</p> <p>When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing.</p> <p>Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.</p>	 <p>xx2300000564</p>
7	<p>Lay down the ball screw assembly.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed.</p> <p>Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	 <p>xx2300000565</p>

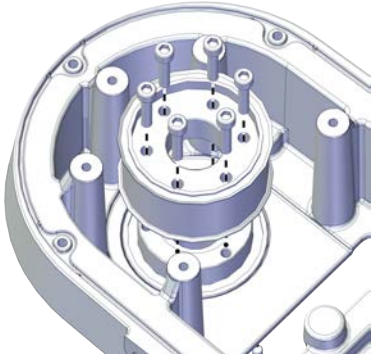

Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position




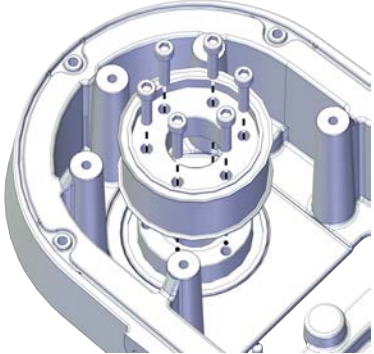
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 <p>xx2300000567</p>
4	Remove the pulley carefully.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Use these procedures to refit the pulley.

Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
2	Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x25 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm ±3%
3	Refit the screws.  Tip Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.	 <p>xx2300000567</p>



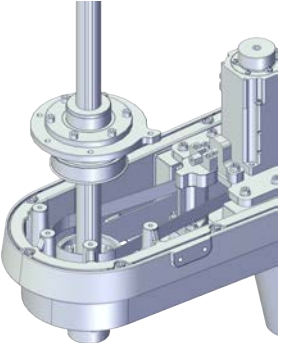


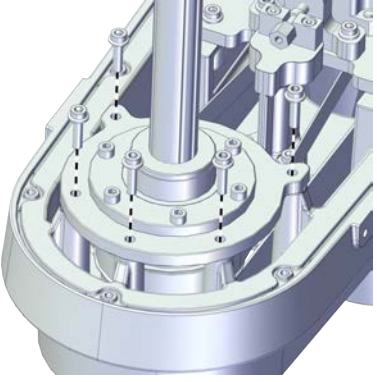
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued




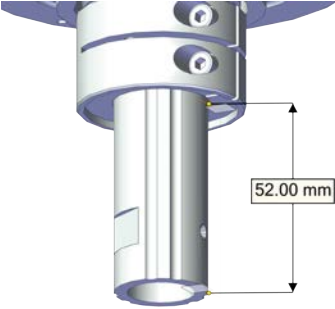
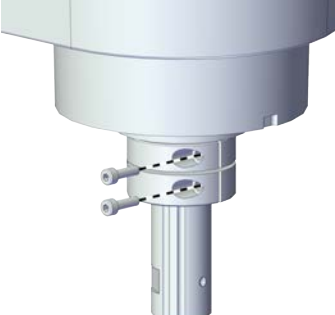
Refitting the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool auxiliary shaft along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000564</p>  <p>xx2300000563</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers to secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 6 Nm \pm3% to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000559</p>

Continues on next page

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position
Continued

Refitting the mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 52 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000561</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x14 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000556</p>

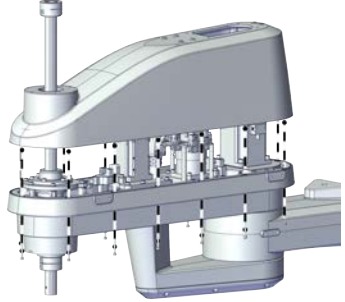
Continues on next page

5 Repair


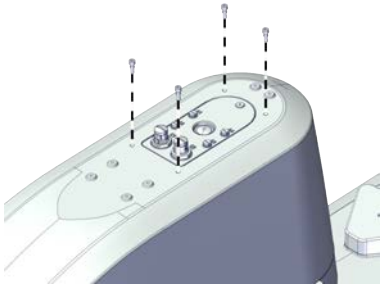
5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	


Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .

Continues on next page

5.6.3 Replacing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

Continued

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

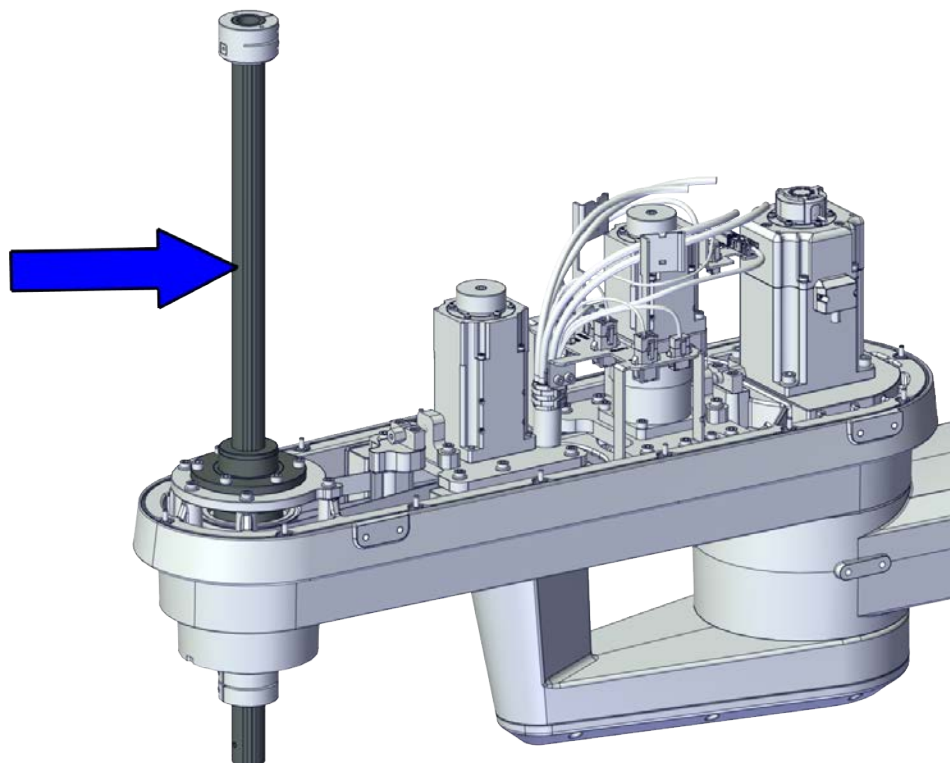
5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw

Location of the ball screw

The ball screw is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000475

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Ball screw	3HAC081796-001	
Ball screw, long stroke	3HAC081797-001	
Ball screw flange	3HAC081785-001	
Rubber bumper	3HAC081787-001	
Mechanical stopper	3HAC081786-001	
Pulley on the ball screw upper position	3HAC081703-001	

Continues on next page

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
IRB 930 auxiliary shaft	3HAC087847-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC077740-001	Gastrol Spheerol EPL 1

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw

Continued


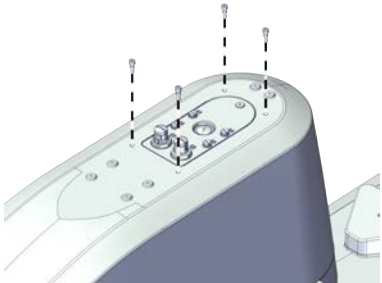
Removing the ball screw

Use these procedures to remove the ball screw.

Preparations before removing the ball screw


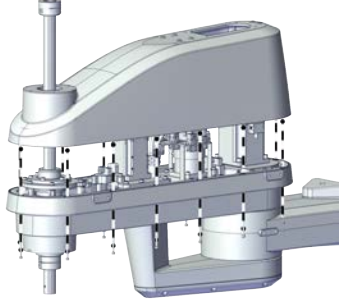
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws



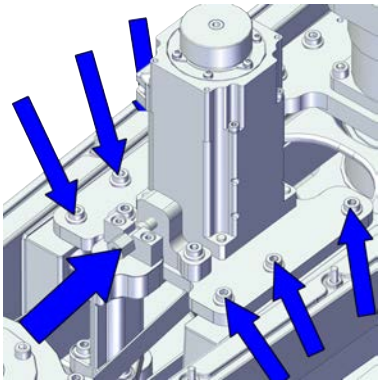
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Continues on next page

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Releasing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 DANGER Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
3	Loosen the screws of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-3 timing belt free.	 xx2300000557

Continues on next page


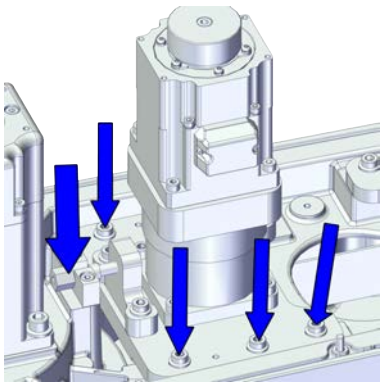
5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw


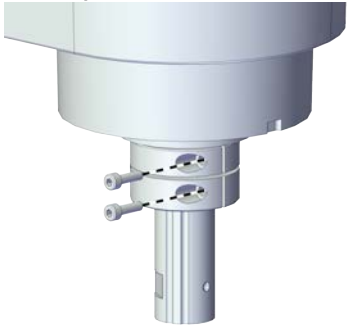
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Release the timing belt.	


Releasing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Loosen the six screws of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-4 timing belt be free.	 xx2300000558
3	Release the timing belt.	



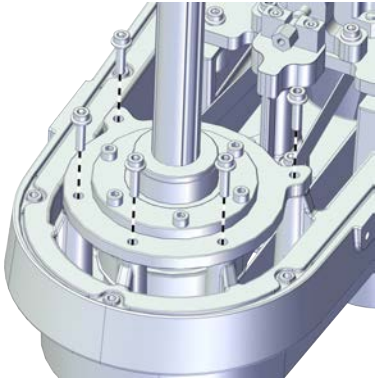

Removing the lower mechanical stopper

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000556

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	

Removing the ball screw with the flange



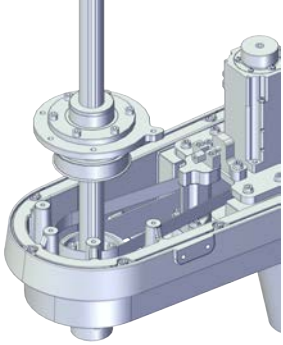

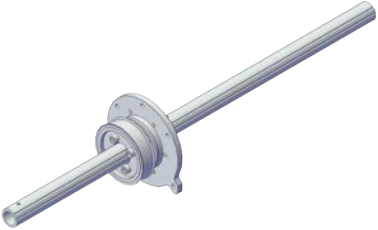
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.</p>	 <p>xx2300000559</p>
4	<p>Insert the special tool auxiliary shaft into the ball screw shaft.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000562</p>

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw


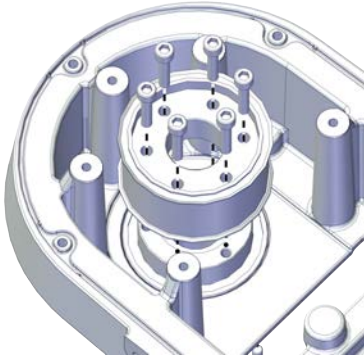

Continued

	Action	Note
5	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 <p>xx2300000563</p>
6	Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.  CAUTION Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status. When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing. Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.	 <p>xx2300000564</p>
7	Lay down the ball screw assembly.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 <p>xx2300000565</p>



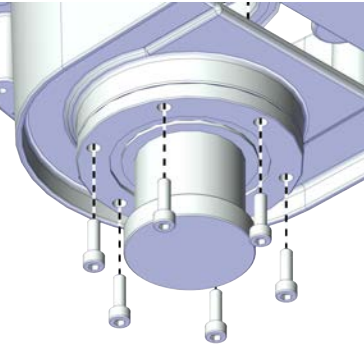


Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2300000567
4	Remove the pulley carefully.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Removing the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.  Tip Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.	IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001  xx2300000568
3	Hold the ball screw lower nut with the special tool to take them out of the outer arm carefully.  Tip Hold the lower part of the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	



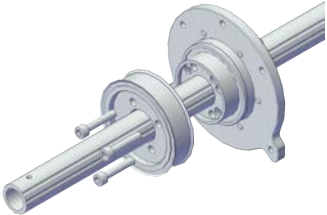


Continues on next page

5 Repair


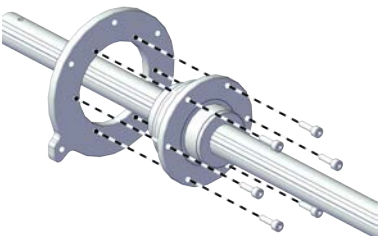

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw

Continued

Removing the pulley on the ball screw upper position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws.	 xx2300000566
4	Remove the pulley carefully.  Tip Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Removing the ball screw flange




	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	 xx2300000590
3	Remove the ball screw flange from the ball screw shaft.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the ball screw

Use these procedures to refit the ball screw.

Preparing the new ball screw

	Action	Note
1	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 <p>xx2300000591</p>
2	Insert the special tool into the ball screw shaft.	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000592</p>
3	Move the ball screw nut from the ball screw shaft to the special tool.	 <p>xx2300000593</p>



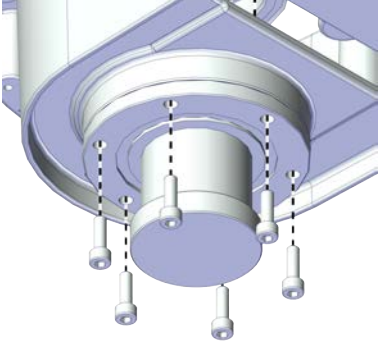
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw


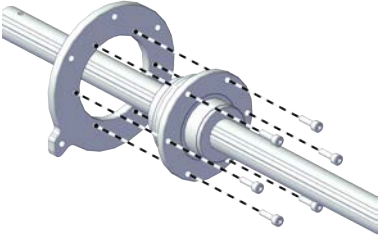
Continued

Refitting the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Put the ball screw lower nut to the outer arm carefully.  CAUTION Make sure the ball screw nut works fluently.	 <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p>
3	Secure the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.	

xx2300000568




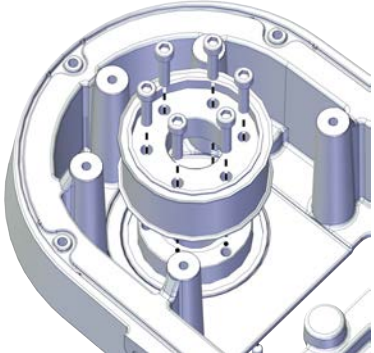
Refitting the flange to the ball screw shaft

	Action	Note
1	Refit the ball screw flange to the ball screw shaft.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p>
2	Refit the screws.	


xx2300000590

Continues on next page

Refitting the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</i>	
2	Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x25 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm ±3%
3	Refit the screws.  Tip Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.	 xx2300000567

Refitting the pulley on the ball screw upper position



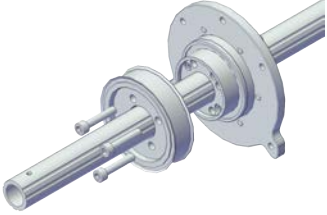

	Action	Note
1	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</i>	

Continues on next page



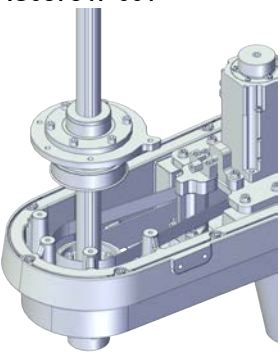

5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw

Continued


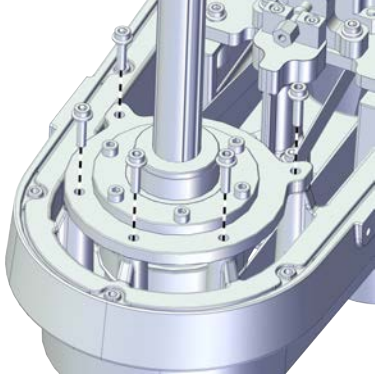
	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the pulley to the ball screw carefully.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 8.8 Nm</p> 
3	<p>Refit the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Secure with the stopping tool to prevent the pulley from rotating.</p>	<p>xx2300000566</p>

Refitting the ball screw with the flange




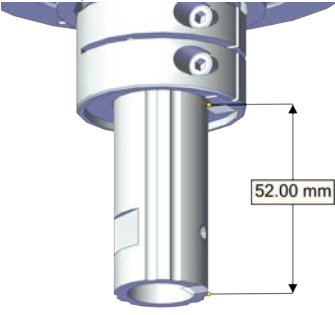
	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool auxiliary shaft along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000564</p>  <p>xx2300000563</p>

Continues on next page

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers to secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 6 Nm \pm3% to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000559</p>

Refitting the mechanical stopper

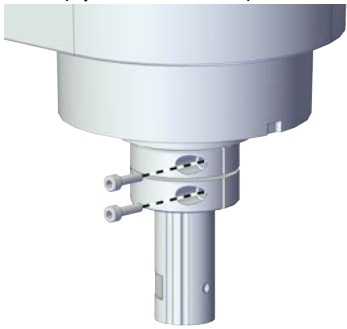
	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 52 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000561</p>

Continues on next page

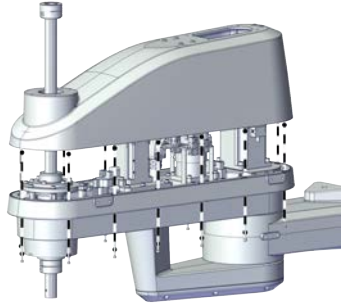
5 Repair

5.6.4 Replacing the ball screw

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x14 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000556</p>


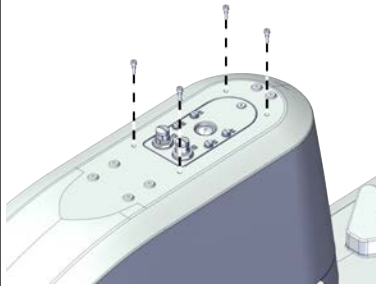
Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	


Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55.</p>	

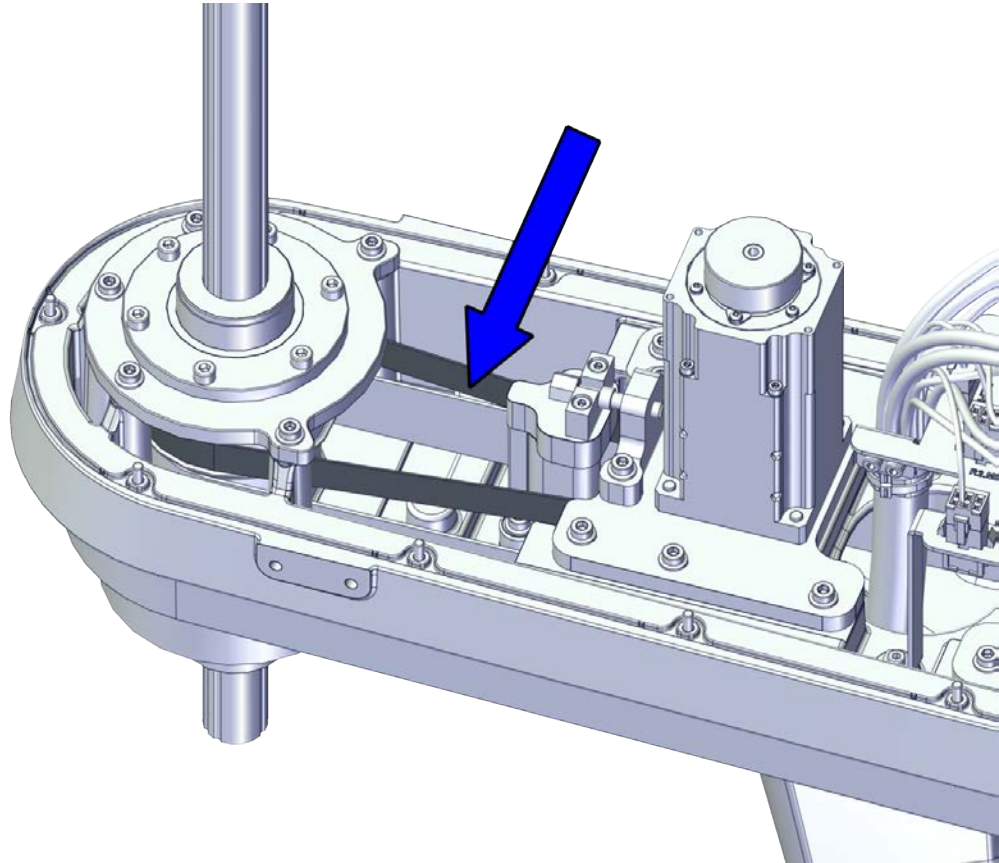
5 Repair

5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Location of the axis-3 timing belt

The axis-3 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000476

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt, A3	3HAC081705-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

Action	Note
1 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565.</p>
<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Continued


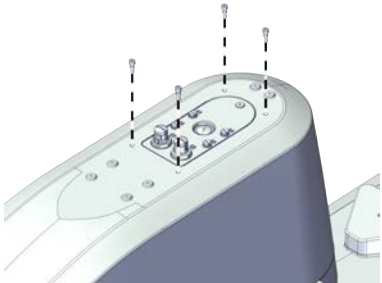
Removing the axis-3 timing belt

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 timing belt.

Preparations before removing the axis-3 timing belt


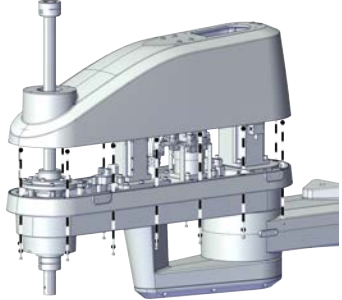
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws


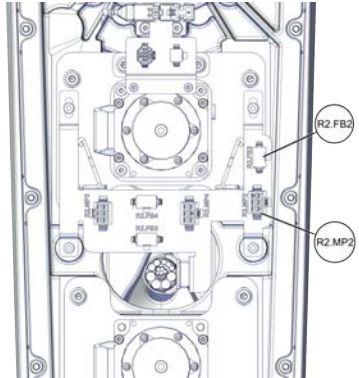
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Continues on next page

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


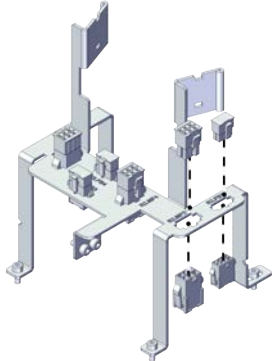
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 xx2300000490

Continues on next page


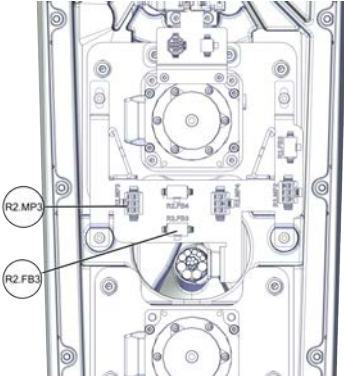

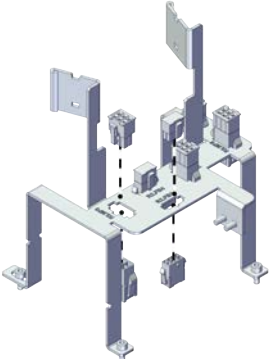
5 Repair

5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Continued

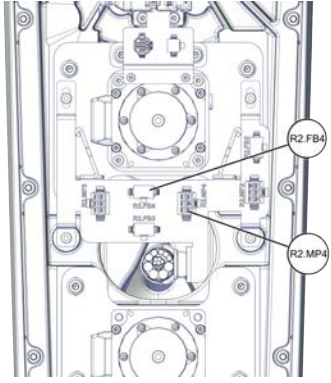

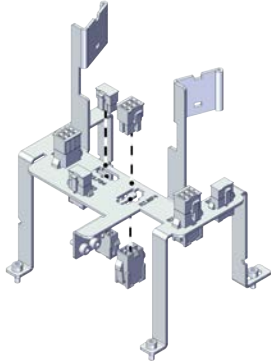
	Action	Note
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor



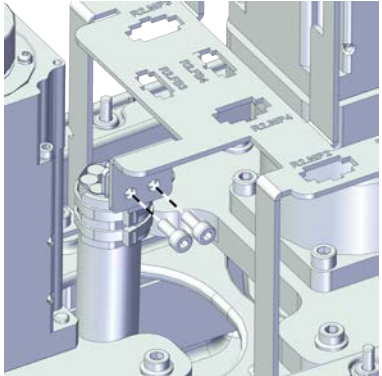
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket


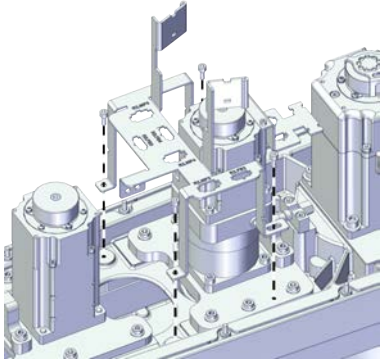
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page



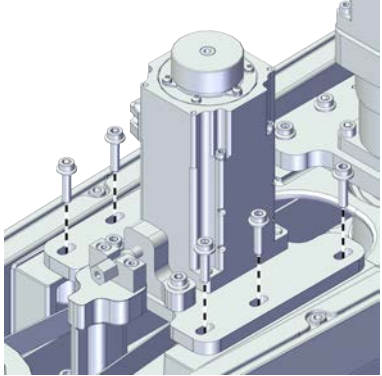
5 Repair

5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt


Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000497</p>


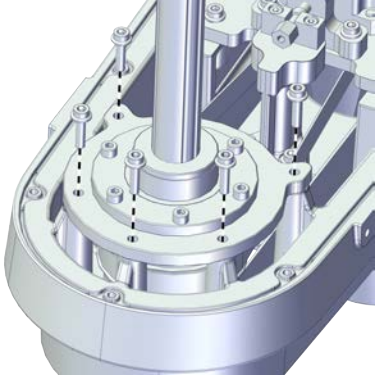

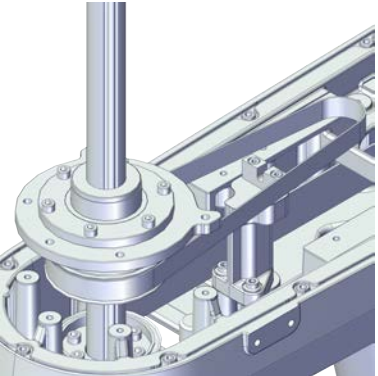
Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.</p> <p>The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	
3	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000594</p>
4	Remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.	



Releasing the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 <p>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.</p>	 <p>xx2300000559</p>
4	<p>Take the ball screw with the flange assembly a little bit to let the timing belts can go out.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status.</p> <p>When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing.</p> <p>Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.</p>	 <p>xx2300000595</p>

Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.</p> <p>The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the axis-3 timing belt.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

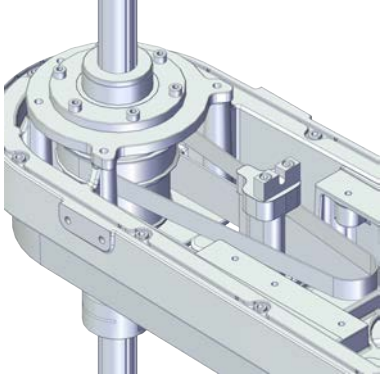

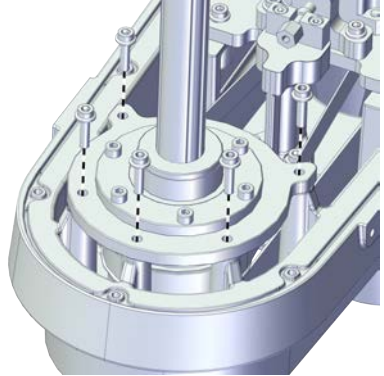
5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Continued

Refitting the axis-3 timing belt


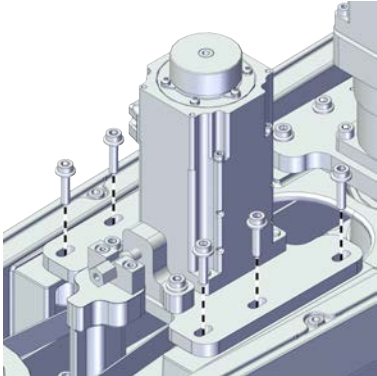
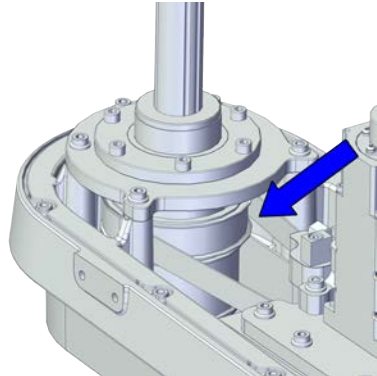
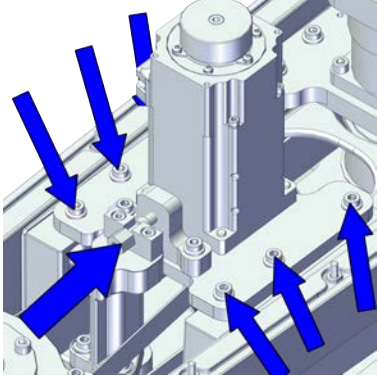
Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 timing belt.

Inserting the axis-3 timing belt through the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	Hold the ball screw with the flange assembly a little bit to let the timing belts can go in.	
2	Insert the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw.	Timing belt, A3: 3HAC081705-001  xx2300000596
3	Refit the screws and washers to secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.  Tip Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 6 Nm \pm 3% to secure it.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 3%  xx2300000559

Continues on next page

Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	 <p>xx2300000594</p>
1	<p>Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Timing belt, A3: 3HAC081705-001</p>  <p>xx2300000589</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (6 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000557</p>
3	<p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p>	<p>Used belt: 139-149 Hz New belt: 109-119 Hz</p>
4	<p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.</p>	

Continues on next page



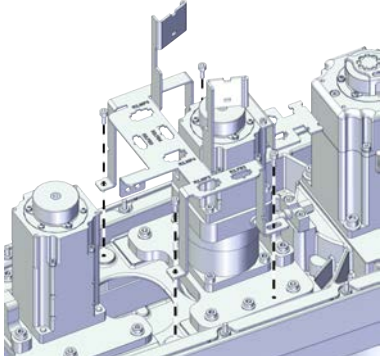





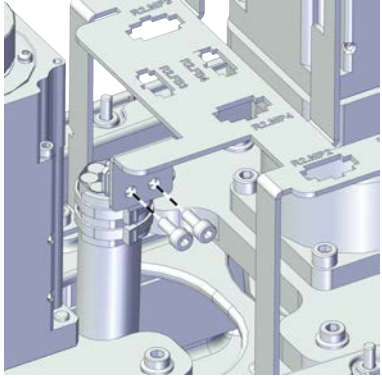
5 Repair

5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Continued



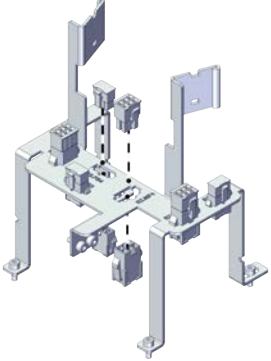


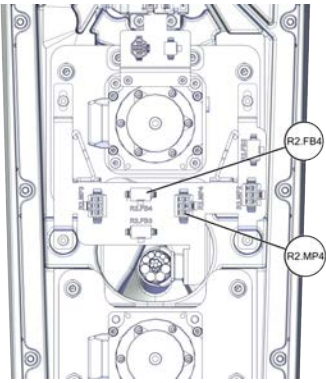

	Action	Note
5	Tighten the motor flange screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 10%

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



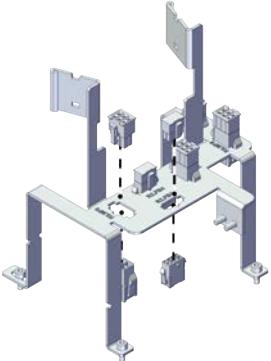

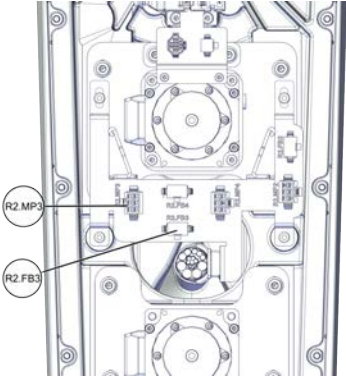

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt



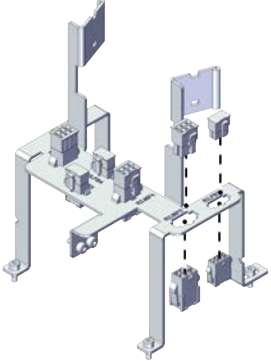

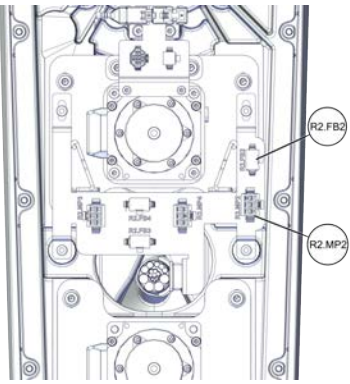

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

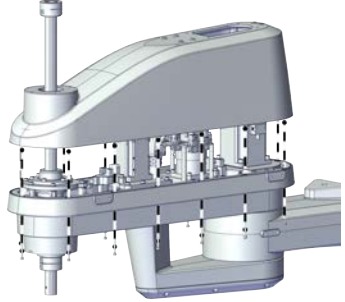
Continues on next page

5 Repair


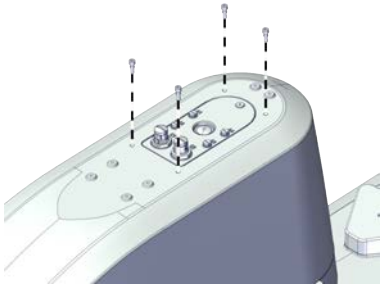
5.6.5 Replacing the axis-3 timing belt

Continued

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	


Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

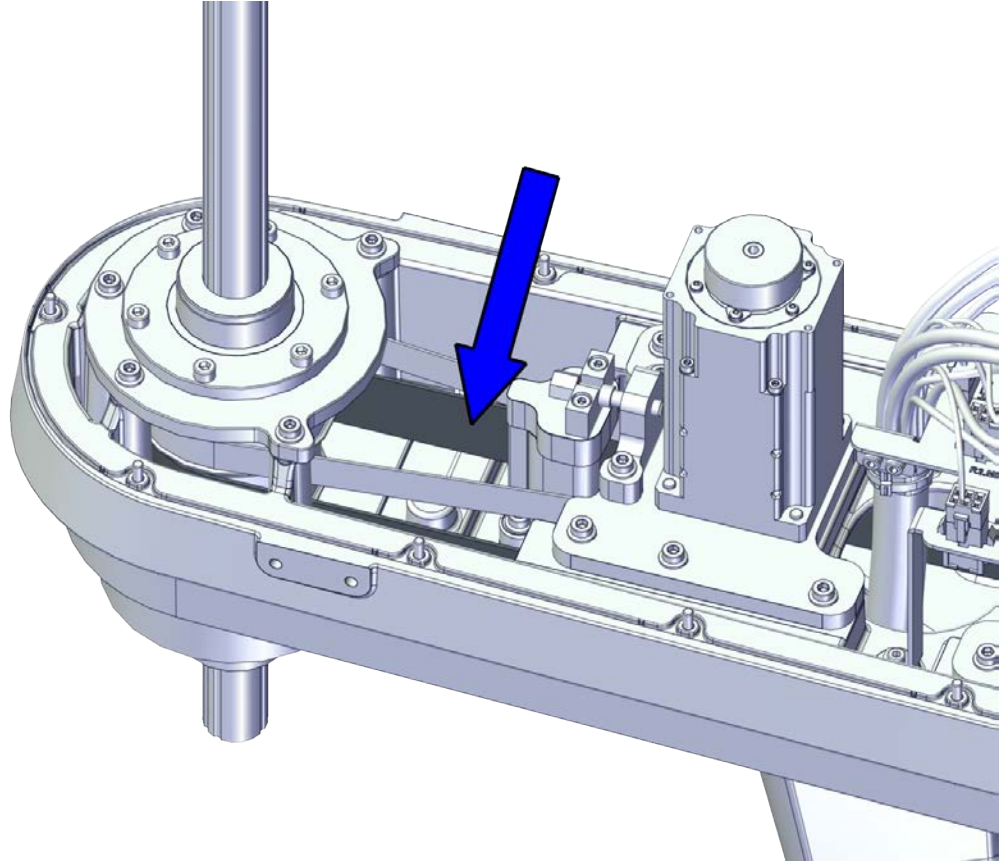
5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

Location of the axis-4 timing belt

The axis-4 timing belt is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000477

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Timing belt, A4	3HAC081706-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565.</p>
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


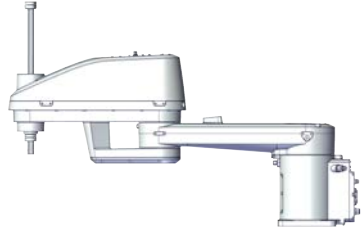

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

Continued


Removing the axis-4 timing belt

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 timing belt.

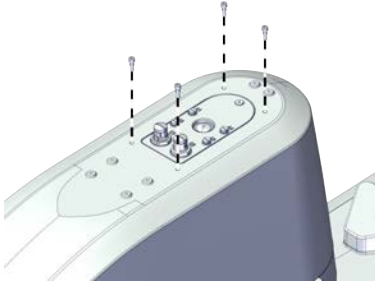
Preparations before removing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	


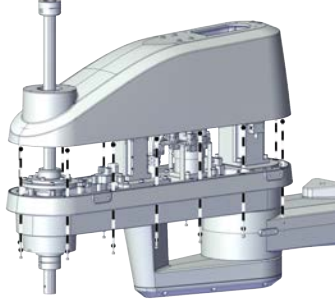
Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

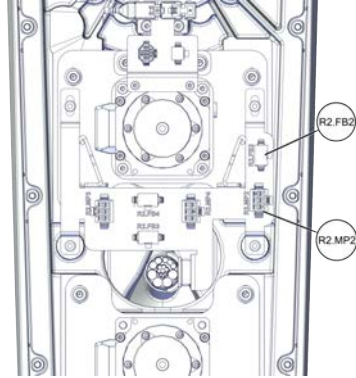

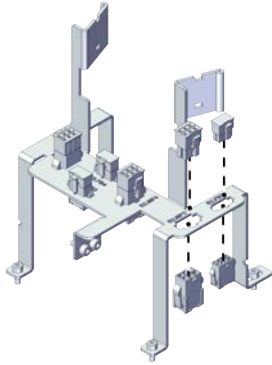
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


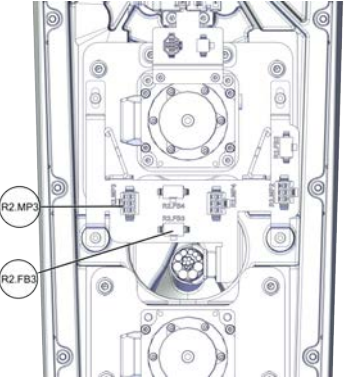
5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt


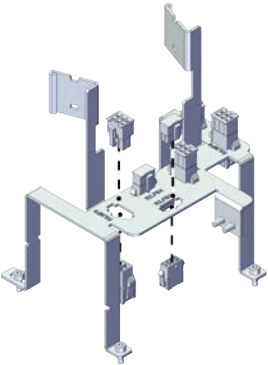
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

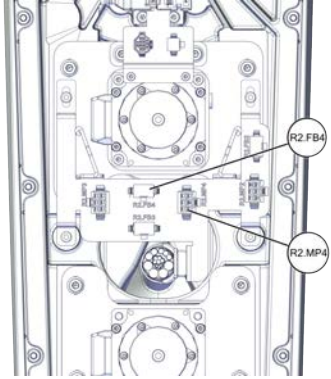

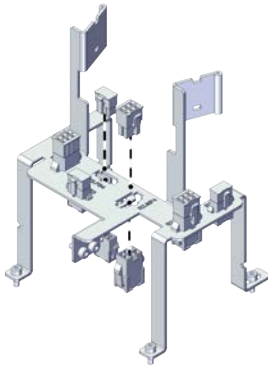
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Removing the base bracket



	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page



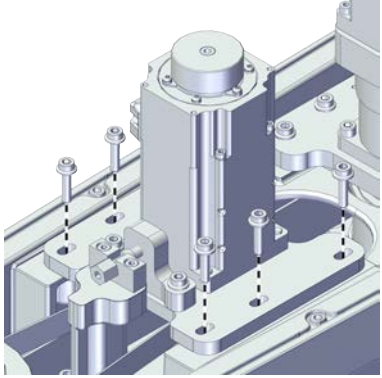
5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt


Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000503</p>
3	<p>Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base from the SMB side.</p>	


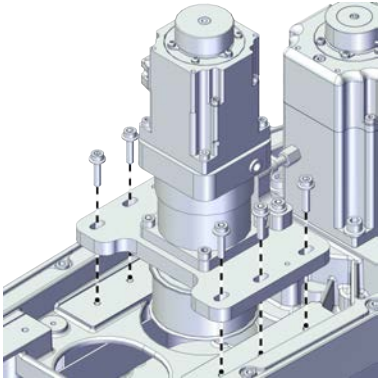
Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.</p> <p>The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws.</p>	 <p>xx2300000594</p>
4	<p>Remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.</p>	



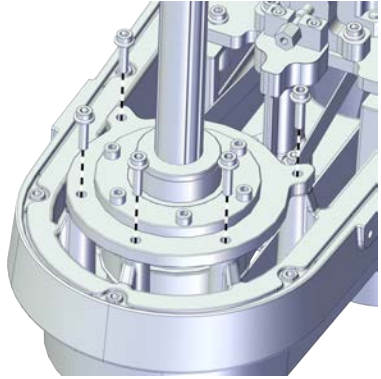
Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
3	Remove the screws.	 xx2300000597
4	Remove the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.	

Releasing the ball screw with the flange


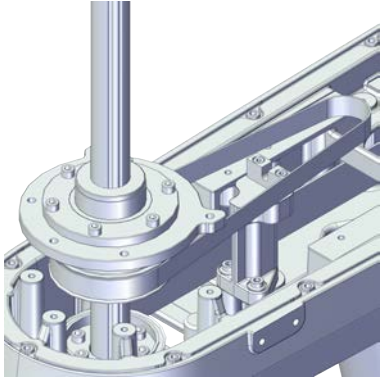
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.	 xx2300000559

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt


Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Take the ball screw with the flange assembly a little bit to let the timing belts can go out.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status.</p> <p>When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing.</p> <p>Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.</p>	 <p>xx2300000595</p>

Removing the axis-3 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.</p> <p>The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	
3	Remove the axis-3 timing belt.	

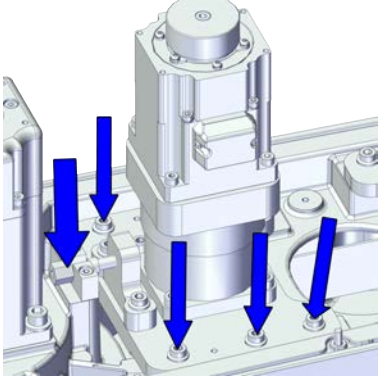
Removing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

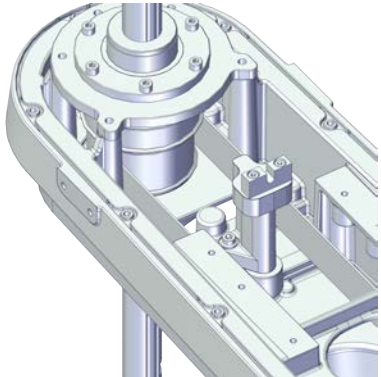
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Loosen the screws of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-4 timing belt be free.	 <p>xx2300000558</p>
3	Remove the timing belt.	

Refitting the axis-4 timing belt

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 timing belt.

Inserting the axis-4 timing belt through the ball screw flange

	Action	Note
1	Hold the ball screw with the flange assembly a little bit to let the timing belts can go in.	
2	Insert the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw.	<p>Timing belt, A4: 3HAC081706-001</p>  <p>xx2300000604</p>

Inserting the axis-3 timing belt through the ball screw flange

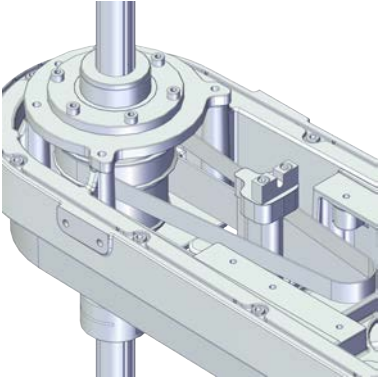

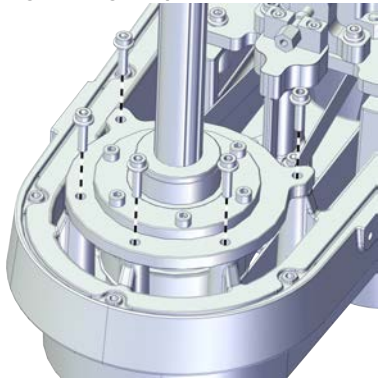
	Action	Note
1	Hold the ball screw with the flange assembly a little bit to let the timing belts can go in.	

Continues on next page


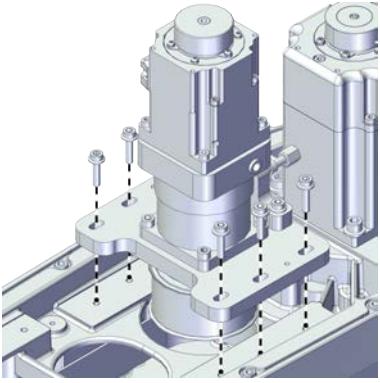
5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

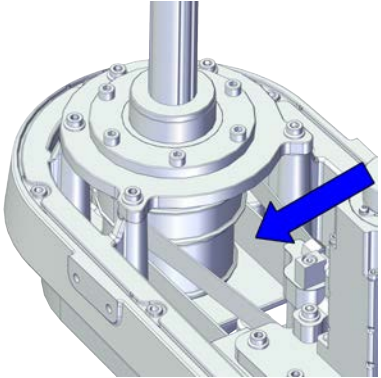
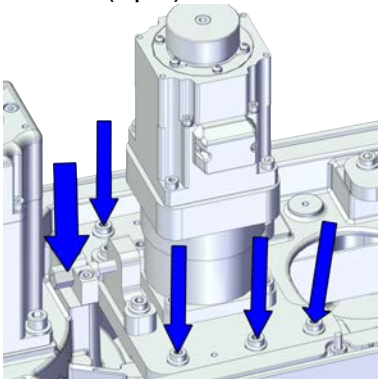
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Insert the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw.	Timing belt, A3: 3HAC081705-001  xx2300000596
3	Refit the screws and washers to secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.  Tip Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 6 Nm \pm 3%.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 3%  xx2300000559

Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.  Tip Move the internal harness out of the way.	 xx2300000597

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt, A4: 3HAC081706-001</p>  <p>xx2300000588</p>
3	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (6 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000558</p>
4	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 312-333 Hz New belt:88.4-92.7 Hz</p>
5	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.	
6	Tighten the motor screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm ±10%


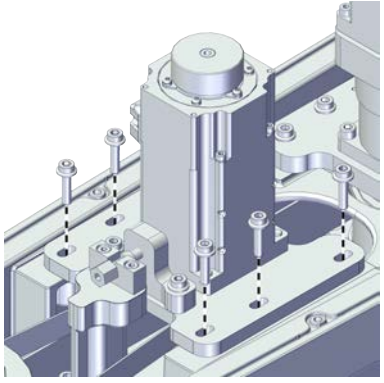
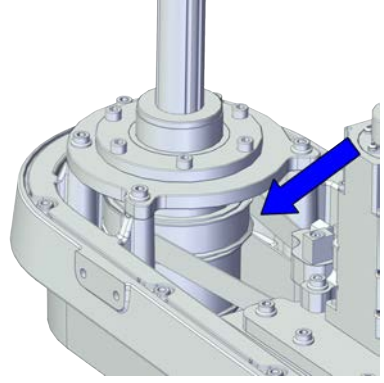
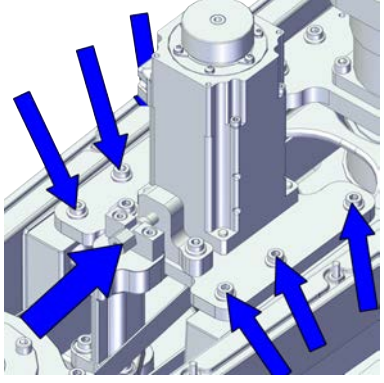
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

Continued





Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	 <p>xx2300000594</p>
1	<p>Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Timing belt, A3: 3HAC081705-001</p>  <p>xx2300000589</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (6 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000557</p>
3	<p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p>	<p>Used belt: 139-149 Hz New belt: 109-119 Hz</p>
4	<p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.</p>	



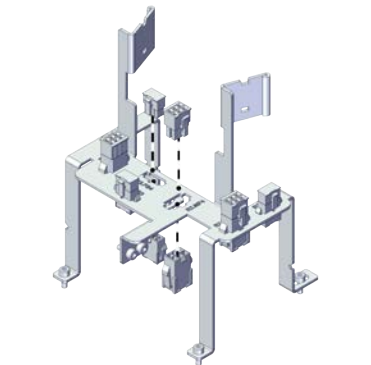
Continues on next page

	Action	Note
5	Tighten the motor flange screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 10%

Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.	
	Refit the cable ferrule to the bracket.  Tip Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10%  xx2300000503
3	Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor



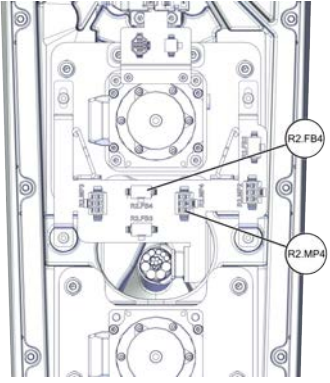

	Action	Note
	Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.  Tip The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000495

Continues on next page



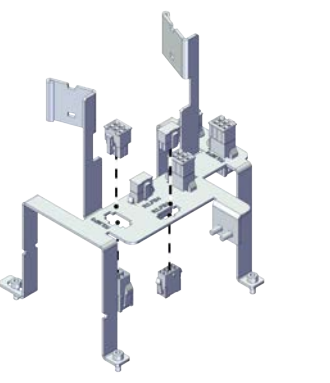

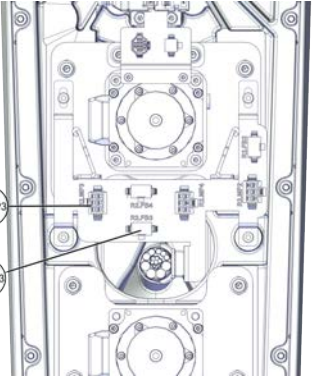
5 Repair

5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt


Continued

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



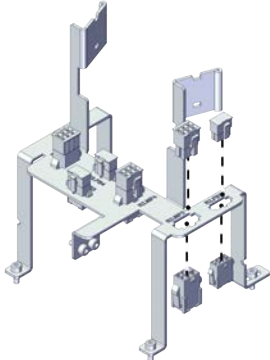

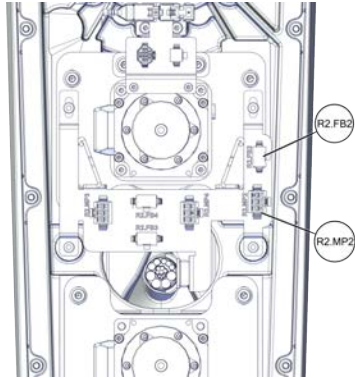

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

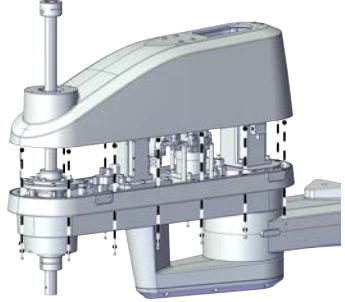
Continues on next page

5 Repair


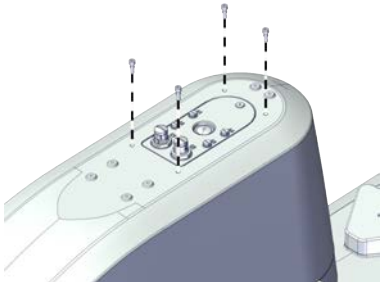
5.6.6 Replacing the axis-4 timing belt

Continued

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	


Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

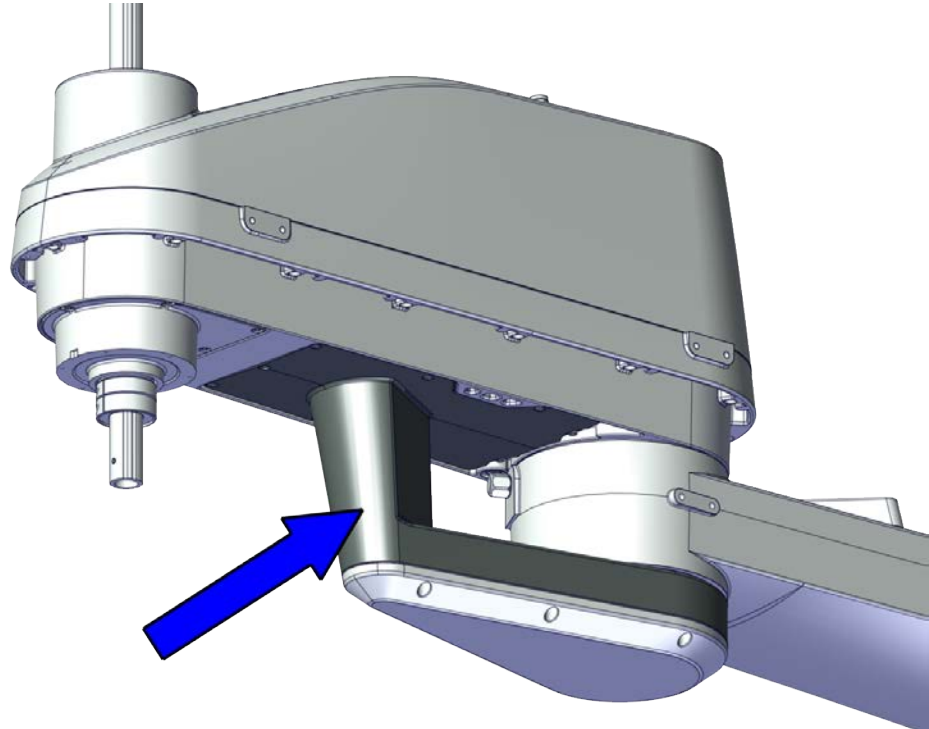
5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Location of the cable arm

The cable arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000478

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Cable arm	3HAC087307-001	
A2 sealing ring	3HAC081802-001	
Cable arm cover	3HAC087317-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565.</p>
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm



Continued

Removing the cable arm


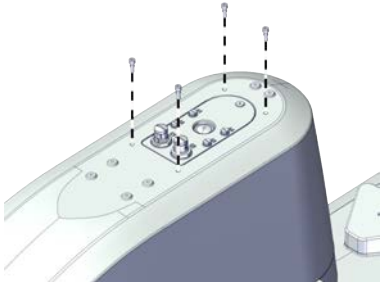
Use these procedures to remove the cable arm.

Preparations before removing the cable arm

Remove the robot from the wall or enough space.


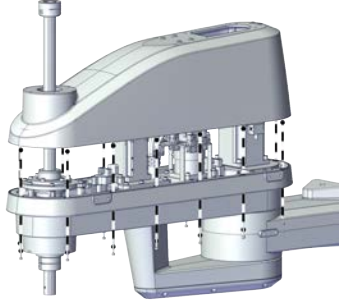
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight.</p> <p>If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws


	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Continues on next page

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

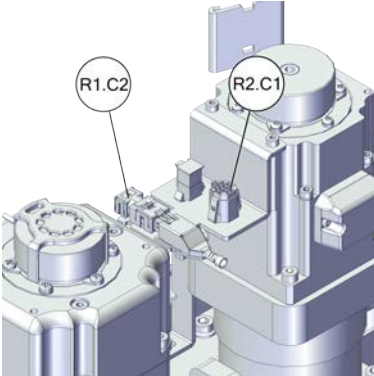



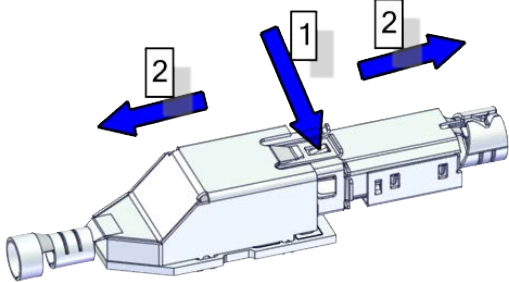

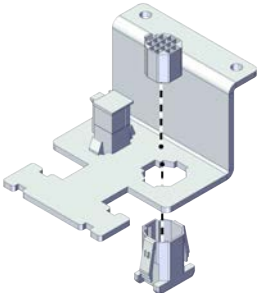
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


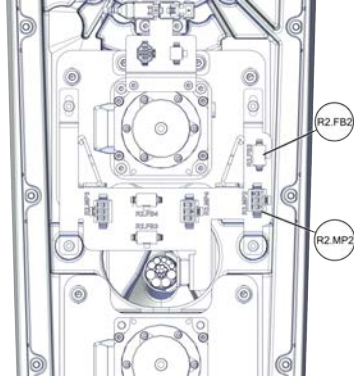

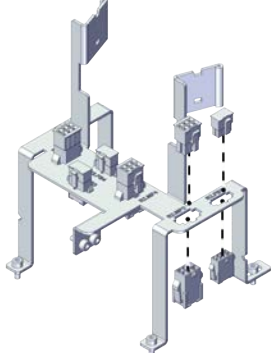
5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued


	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p> 	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

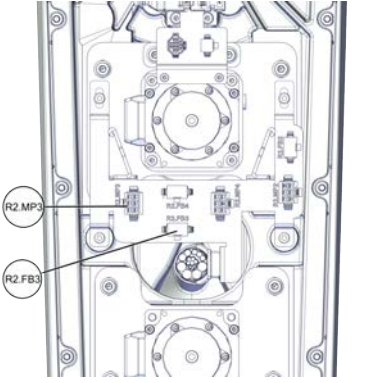

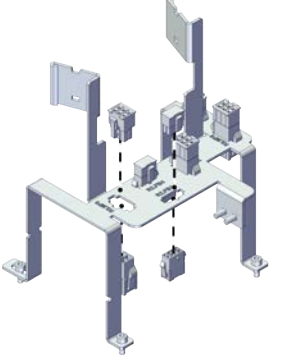
	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

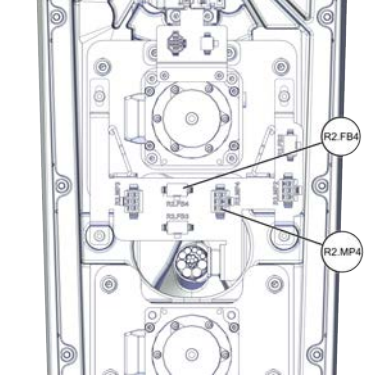
5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm


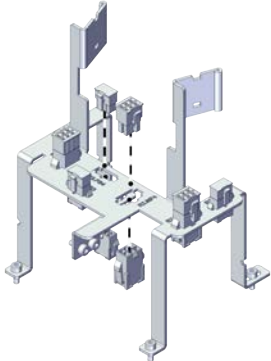
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>


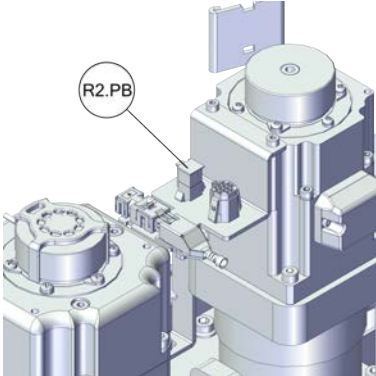

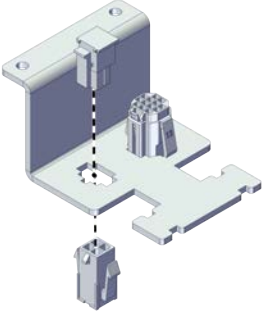
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>



Continues on next page

5 Repair



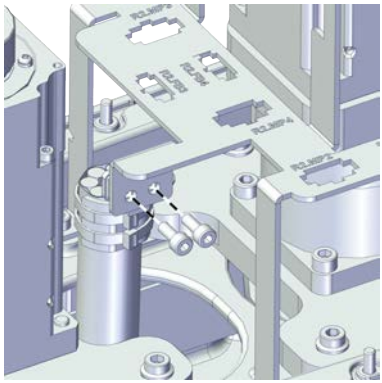

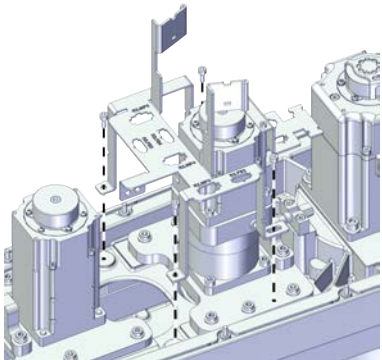
5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued

Removing the process hub


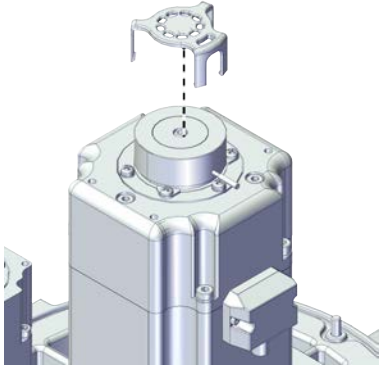
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket


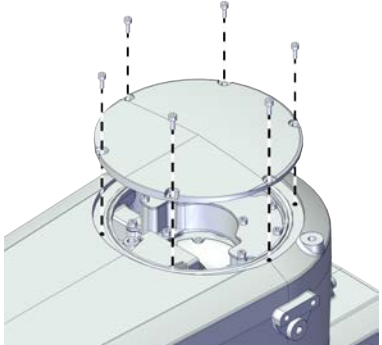
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the axis-2 motor protection cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the protection cover on the motor.	 xx2300000550

Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Remove the cover.	
		 xx2300000498


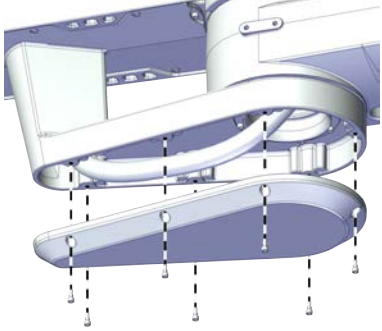
Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued

Removing the cable arm cover




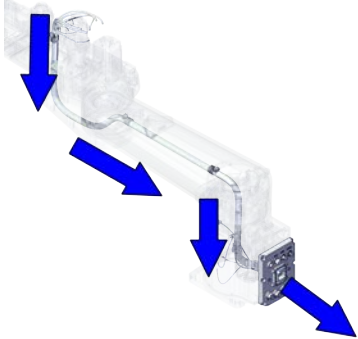
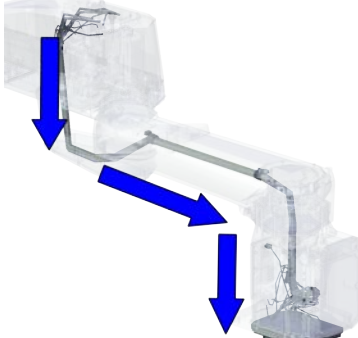
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000499
3	Remove the cover.	

Removing the bracket of the cable arm


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000506

Continues on next page

Removing the main harness from the cable arm position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.  Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	For rear outlet cable version:  xx2300000507 For underneath outlet cable version:  xx2300000612
3	Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.	

Removing the cable arm

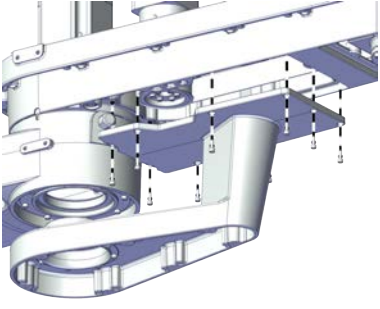
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


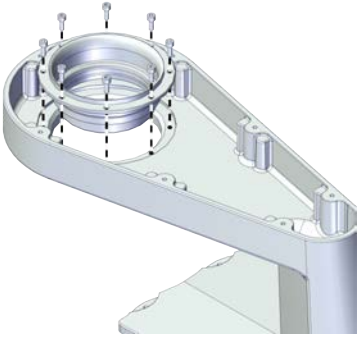
5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the cable arm to the outer arm.	 xx2300000516
3	Remove the cable arm by pulling out from the inner arm bearing.	


Removing the sealing ring

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 xx2300000601
2	Remove the screws locking the sealing ring to the cable arm.	
3	Remove the sealing ring.	

Refitting the cable arm

Use these procedures to refit the cable arm.

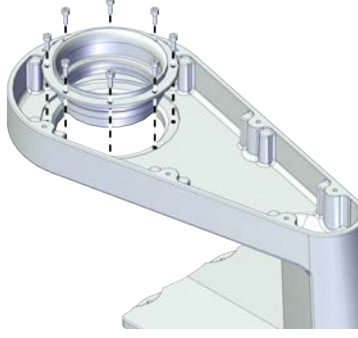
Refitting the sealing ring

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


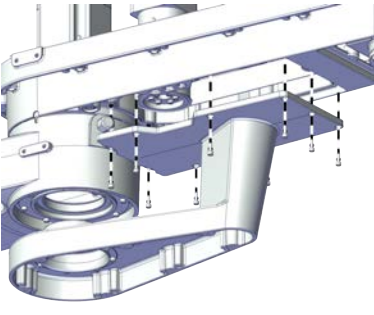
Continues on next page

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the sealing ring to the cable arm. Refit the sealing ring to the cable arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)
3	Secure with the screws.	Tightening torque:3.3 Nm3.3 Nm ±3%  xx2300000601

Refitting the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cable arm to the inner arm and outer arm.	
3	Secure the cable arm to the outer arm with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs) Tightening torque:3.3 Nm2.4 Nm ±3%  xx2300000516

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position


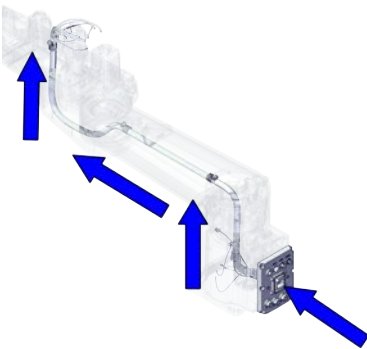

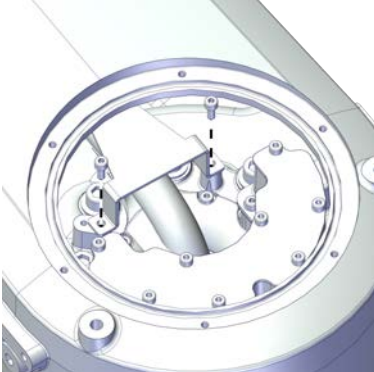
	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2 Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%

Continues on next page

5 Repair


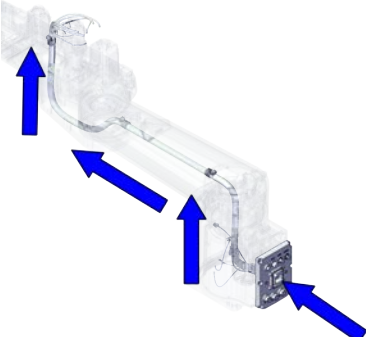
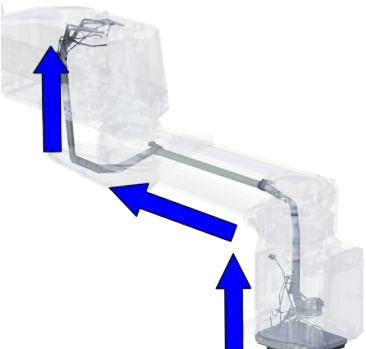

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
3	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>

Continues on next page

Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
2	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>



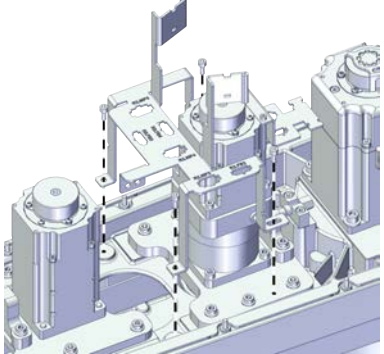





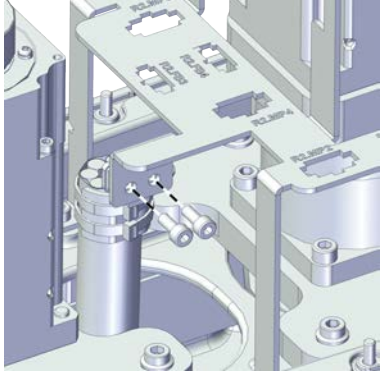
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm



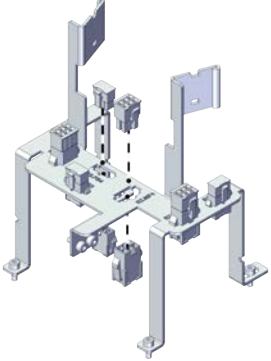


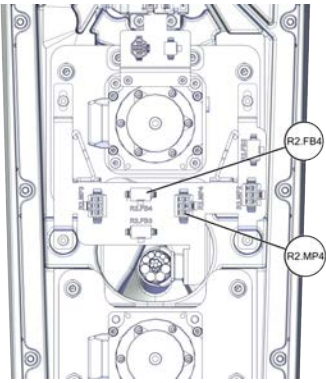

Continued

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



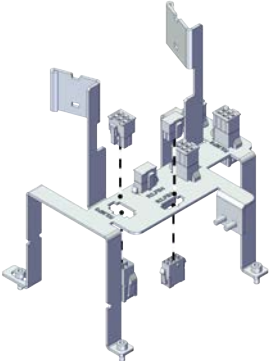

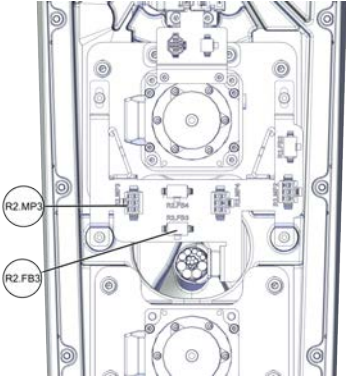

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm



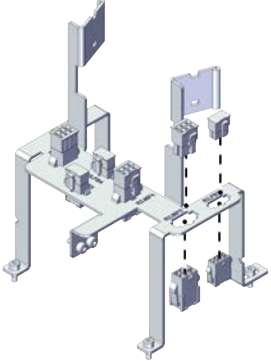

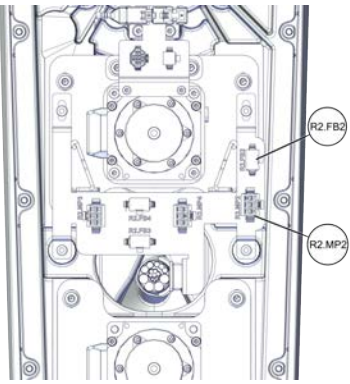

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



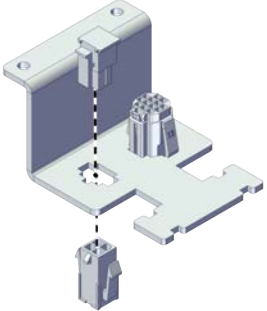

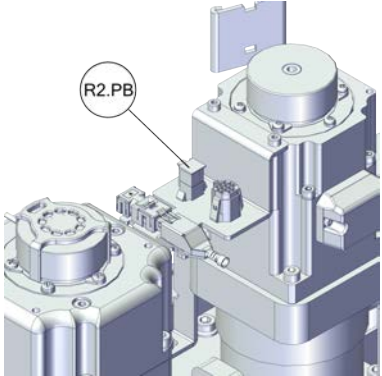

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued



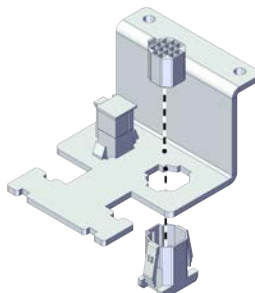

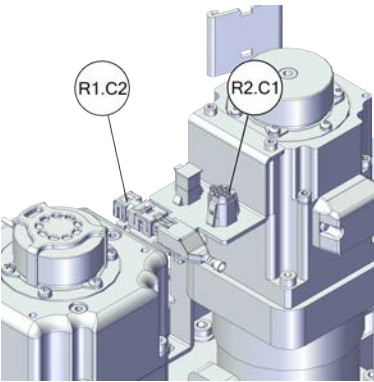


Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page


	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

Continues on next page

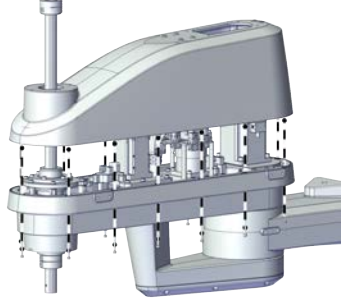
5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm


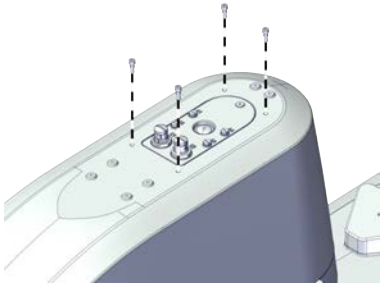
Continued

	Action	Note
7	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

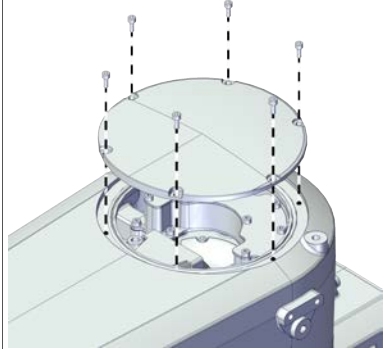
	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>

Continues on next page


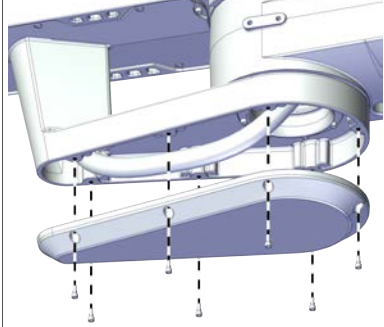
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cover.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000499</p>
3	Refit the screws.	


Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.7 Replacing the cable arm

Continued

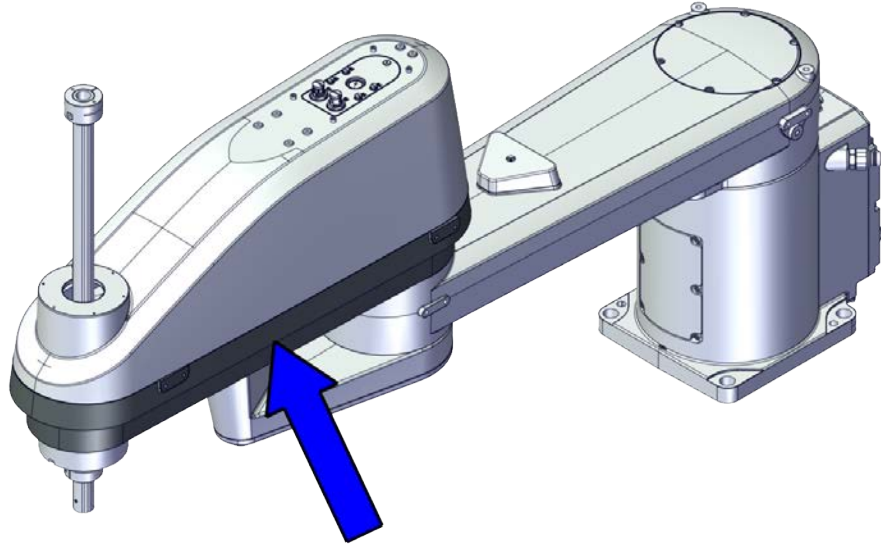
Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Location of the outer arm

The outer arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000479

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Outer arm	3HAC087309-001	
Outer arm cover	3HAC087313-001	
Outer arm bottom cover	3HAC087314-001	
Outer arm bracket	3HAC081794-001	
Pulley on the ball screw lower position	3HAC081704-001	
Timing belt, A3	3HAC081705-001	
Timing belt, A4	3HAC081706-001	
Hex socket head cap flange	3HAB3412-520	Used for axis-3/axis-4 motor flange and adjusting block/screw nut adaptor.

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
IRB 930 auxiliary shaft	3HAC087847-001	Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

Action	Note
1 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	



Continues on next page

Removing the outer arm



Use these procedures to remove the outer arm.

Preparations before removing the outer arm

Remove the robot from the wall or enough space.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight.</p> <p>If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Draining oil of axis-2 gearbox

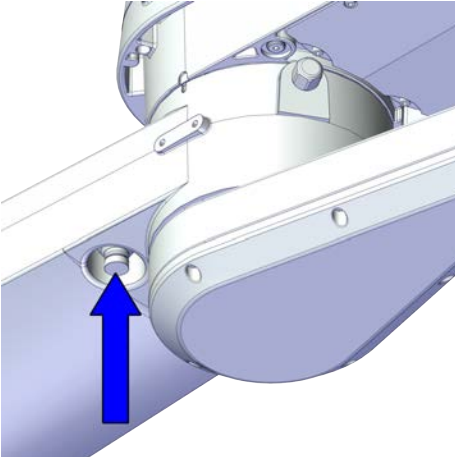
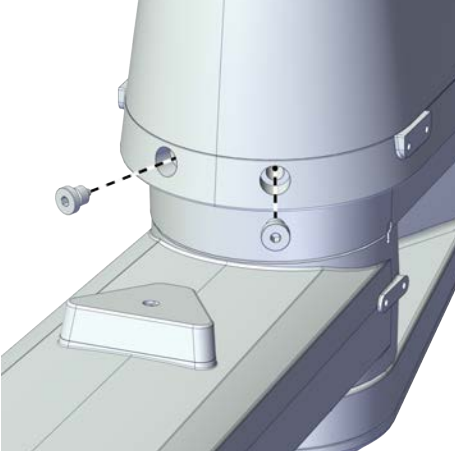


	Action	Note
1	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30.</p>	
2	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.</p>	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm


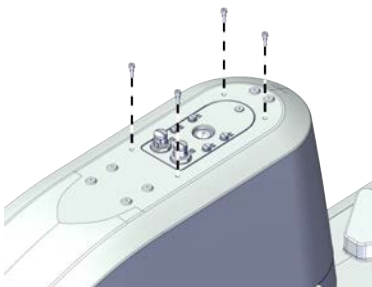
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the oil plug, draining.	 xx2300000548
4	Plug a clean pipe to the oil plug, draining, with the other end to the oil collecting vessel.	
5	Remove the oil plug, draining.	 xx2300000549
6	 WARNING Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.	
7	Drain the gearbox oil.	 Note Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.


Continues on next page

	Action	Note
8	Remove and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
9	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm

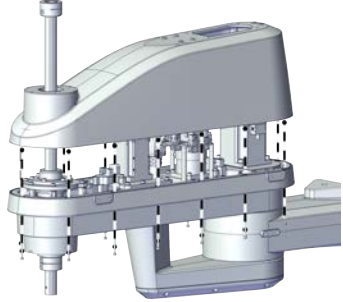
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

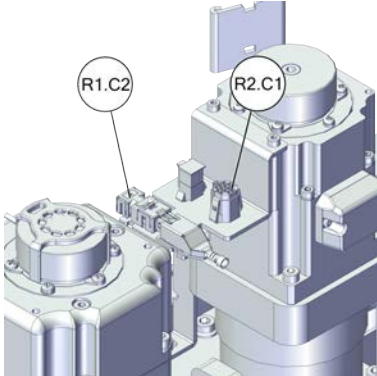



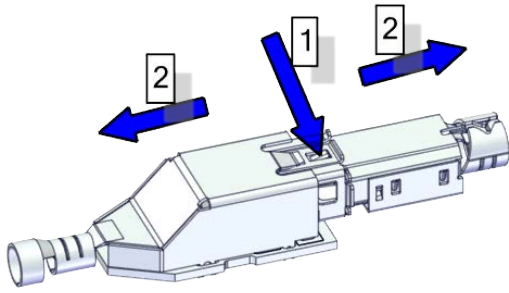

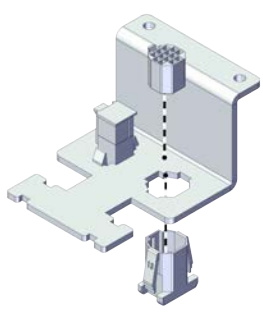
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

Continues on next page


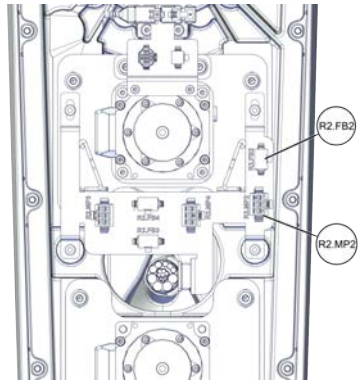

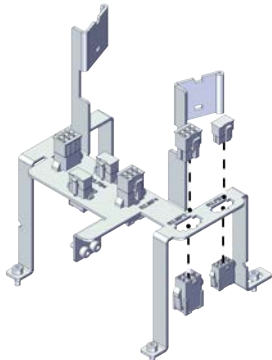
	Action	Note	
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	 <p>xx2300000542</p>	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p>  <p>xx1800002943</p>		
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>		 <p>xx2300000544</p>

5 Repair


5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 xx2300000490
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000493

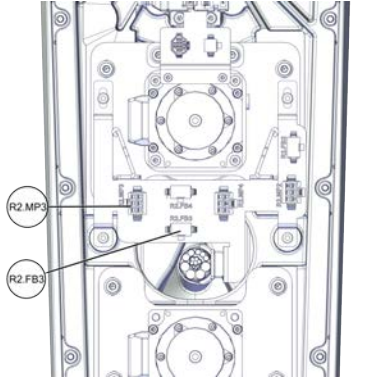

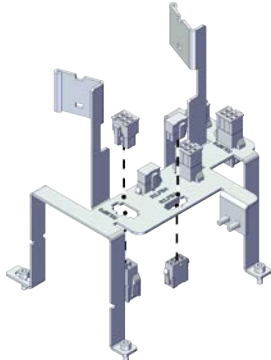
Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

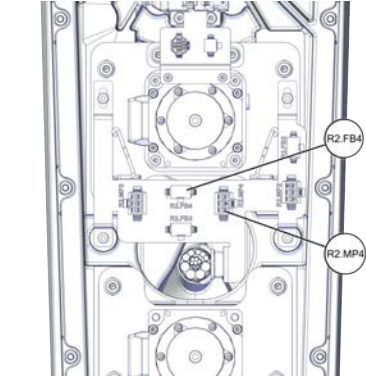
Continues on next page

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor


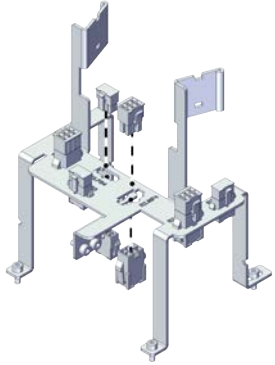
	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page


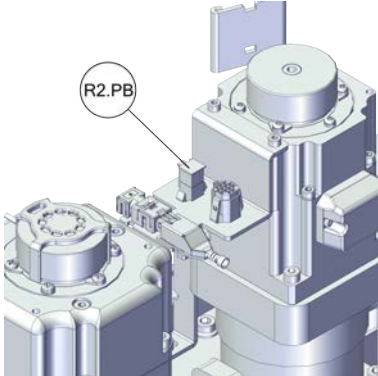

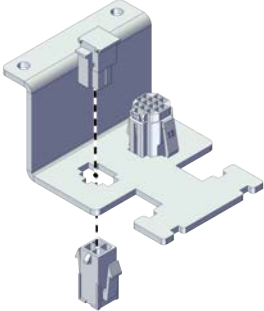
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued



	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB



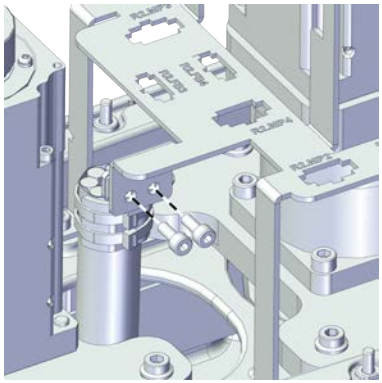

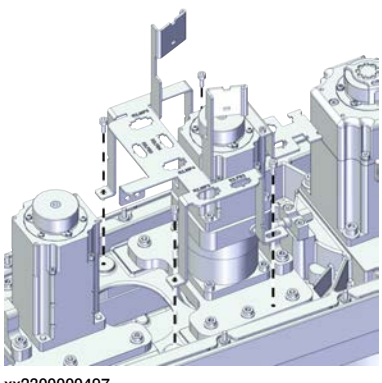
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>

Continues on next page

Removing the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>


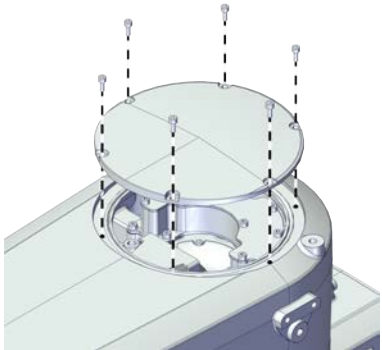
Continues on next page

5 Repair


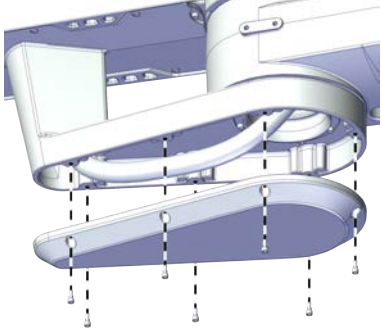
5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

Removing the axis-1 cover



	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000498</small>
3	Remove the cover.	

Removing the cable arm cover


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000499</small>
3	Remove the cover.	

Continues on next page

Removing the bracket of the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000506

Removing the main harness from the cable arm position



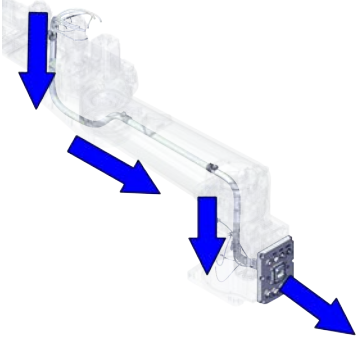
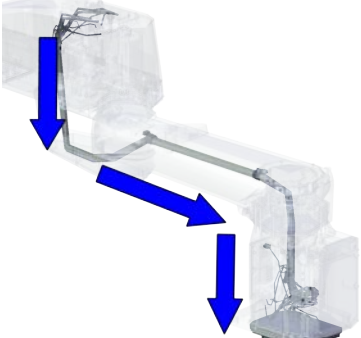
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


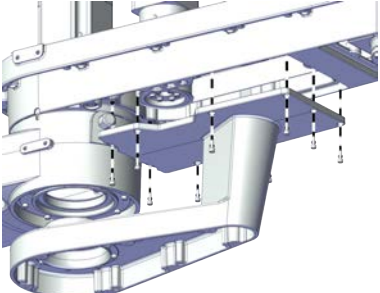
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued



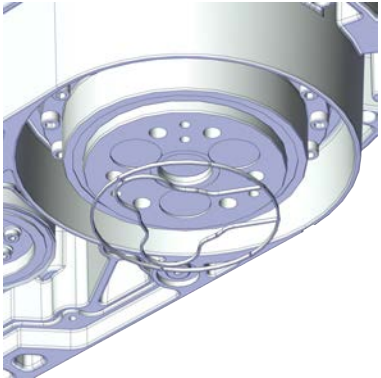
	Action	Note
2	<p>Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>
3	<p>Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.</p>	

Removing the cable arm


	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Remove the screws locking the cable arm to the outer arm.</p>	 <p>xx2300000516</p>
3	<p>Remove the cable arm by pulling out from the inner arm bearing.</p>	

Continues on next page

Removing the outer arm assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the axis -2 gear inside the inner arm.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Remove the outer arm assembly slightly.	 xx2300000517
4	Remove the gear gasket on the axis-2 gear unit.	 xx2300000603

Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

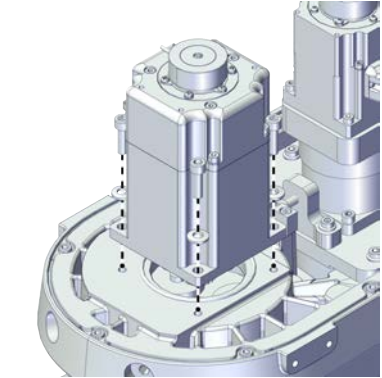

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page



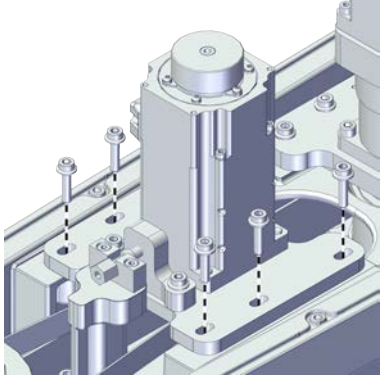
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm


Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws and washers.	 <p>xx230000605</p>
3	Remove the motor.  Tip Move the internal harness out of the way.	


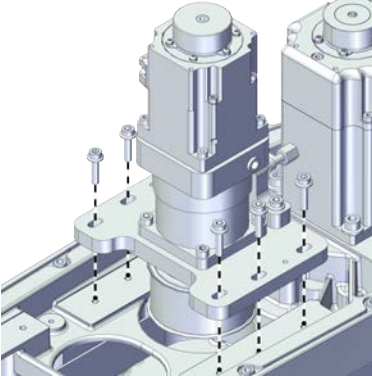
Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 DANGER Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
3	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx230000594</p>
4	Remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.	


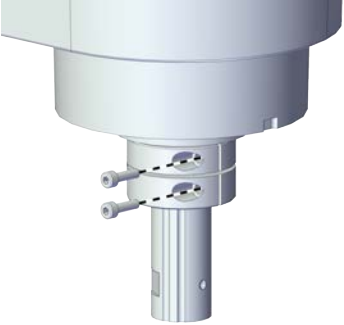
Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
3	Remove the screws.	 xx2300000597
4	Remove the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.	

Removing the lower mechanical stopper


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000556

Continues on next page



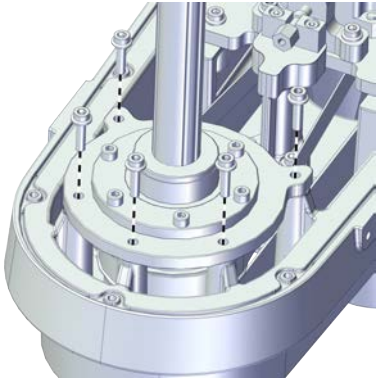
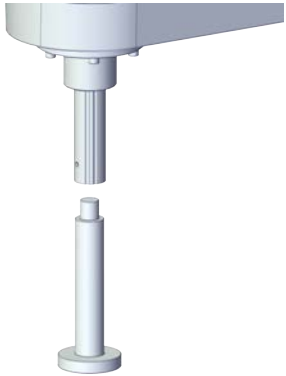
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm



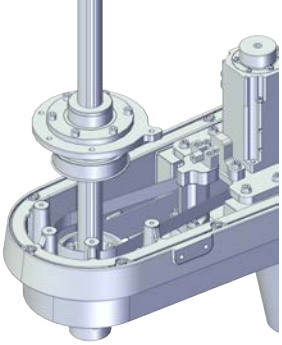

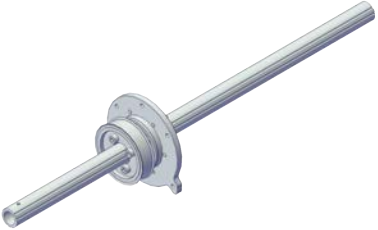
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the mechanical stopper.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p>	


Removing the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws and washers on the ball screw flange.</p>	 <p>xx2300000559</p>
4	<p>Insert the special tool auxiliary shaft into the ball screw shaft.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000562</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
5	Mark the location of the ball screw shaft grooves on the ball screw lower nut.	 xx2300000563
6	Take out the ball screw with the flange assembly carefully.  CAUTION Move the special tool along with the ball screw shaft until it is totally inserted into the lower nut of the ball screw and keep the status. When the special tool is totally inserted to the lower nut of the ball screw, support the special tool with some thing. Or the ball screw lower nut will be destroyed.	 xx2300000564
7	Lay down the ball screw assembly.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 xx2300000565

Removing the axis-3 timing belt


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


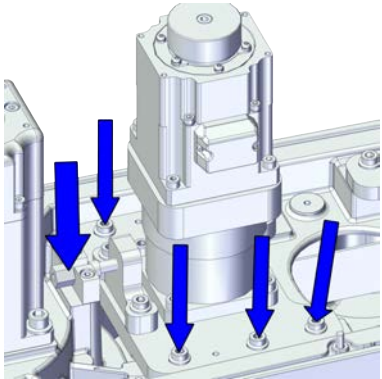
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm



Continued

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something. The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.	
3	Remove the axis-3 timing belt.	

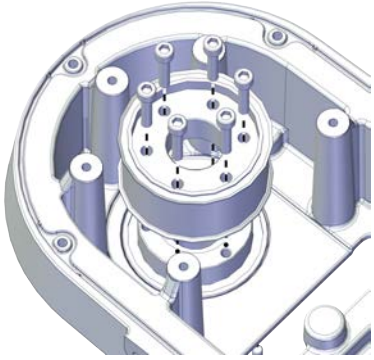

Removing the axis-4 timing belt

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Loosen the screws of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly to let the axis-4 timing belt be free.	 xx2300000558
3	Remove the timing belt.	



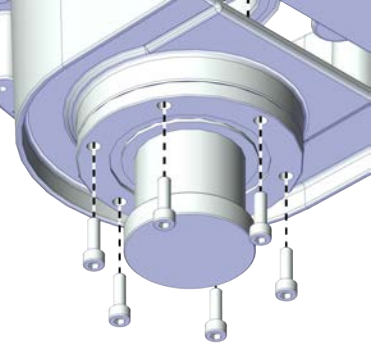



Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 <p>xx2300000567</p>
4	Remove the pulley carefully.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Removing the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.  Tip Hold the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.	IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001 
3	Hold the ball screw lower nut with the special tool to take them out of the outer arm carefully.  Tip Hold the lower part of the ball screw to prevent it from dropping. Or the ball screw may be destroyed.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	 <p>xx2300000568</p>


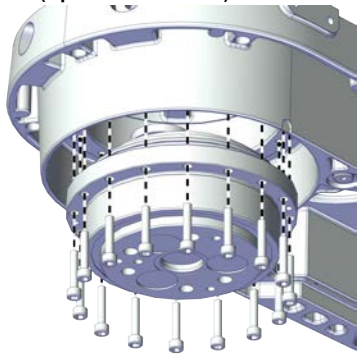
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued


Removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly from the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the gear to the outer arm.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  <small>xx2300000606</small>
3	Remove the gear unit.	


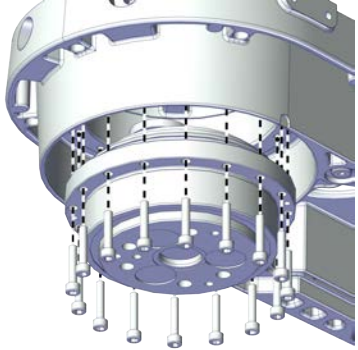
Refitting the outer arm

Use these procedures to refit the outer arm.



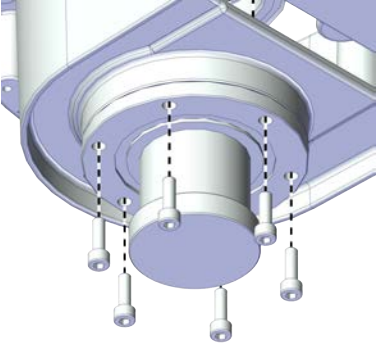
Refitting the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly to the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 CAUTION Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Refit the gear unit according to the location screws.  Tip When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x25 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 7 Nm ±3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Refit the screws.	 xx2300000606

Refitting the ball screw lower nut

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Put the ball screw lower nut to the outer arm carefully.  CAUTION Make sure the ball screw nut works fluently.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm ±3%
3	Secure the screws on the lower nut to the outer arm.	 xx2300000568



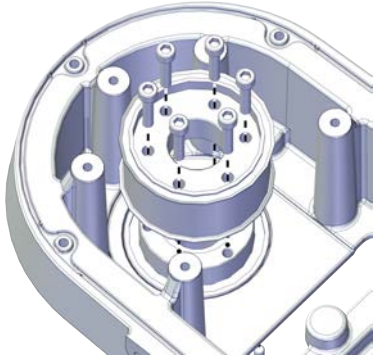

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

Removing the pulley on the ball screw lower position



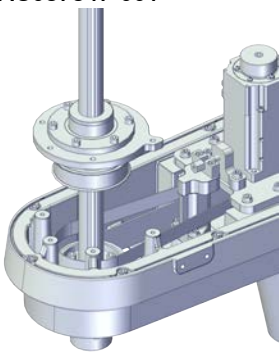


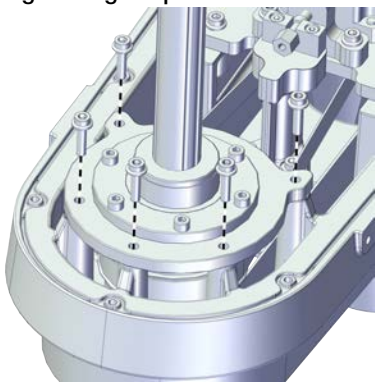
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws and washers.	 <small>xx2300000567</small>
4	Remove the pulley carefully.  CAUTION If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.	

Placing the axis-3 and axis-4 timing belts into the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Place the axis-3 and axis-4 timing belts into the outer arm.	

Continues on next page

Refitting the ball screw with the flange

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the ball screw assembly to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure the marked location is aligned with the ball screw shaft grooves.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>With the inserting of the ball screw shaft, remove the special tool auxiliary shaft along with the ball screw shaft carefully.</p>	<p>IRB 930 auxiliary shaft:3HAC087847-001</p>  <p>xx2300000564</p>  <p>xx2300000563</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers to secure the ball screw flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Pre-tighten the screws at 0.5Nm and slide the ball screw up and down for five times. Then tighten the screws at 6 Nm \pm3% to secure it.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (5 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000559</p>




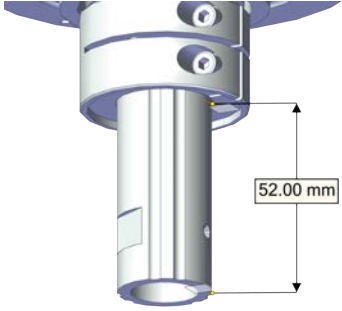
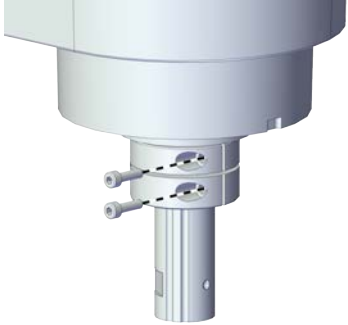
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

Refitting the mechanical stopper

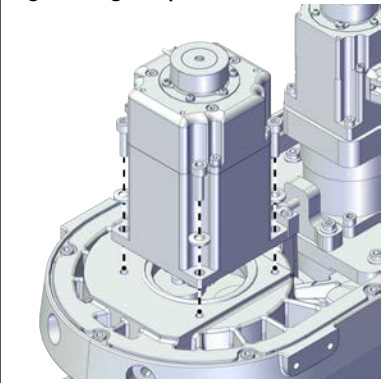
	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the mechanical stopper to the ball screw at 52 mm position to the lower of the ball screw.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Make sure that the limit block opening gap is aligned with the ball screw origin point.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>If the ball screw nut or ball screw spline nut go out of the screw shaft, the ball screw is destroyed. Be careful when you do any work that may cause this.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Be careful with the orientation of the mechanical stopper. The flat side is on the upper side.</p>	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000561</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x14 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000556</p>

Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>Replace the o-ring if needed.</p>	


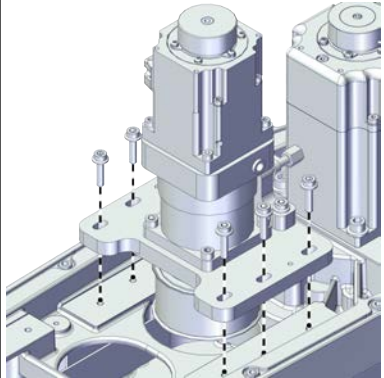
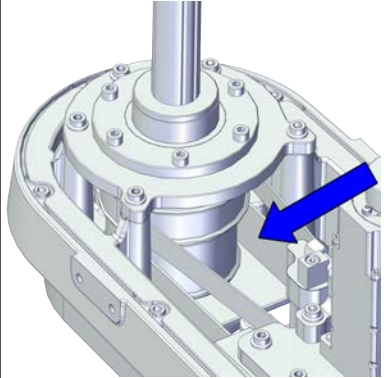
Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Refit the motor.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Washers: Spring washer, conical 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm ±10%
3	Refit the screws and washers.	



xx2300000605

Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

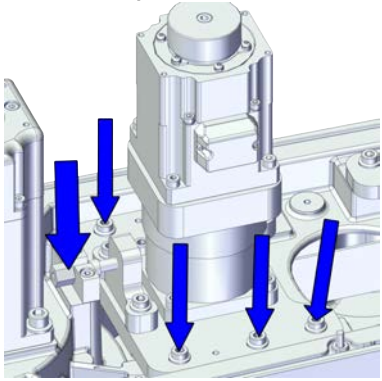
	Action	Note
1	Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.  Tip Move the internal harness out of the way.	 <p>xx2300000597</p>
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt, A4: 3HAC081706-001  <p>xx2300000588</p>

Continues on next page


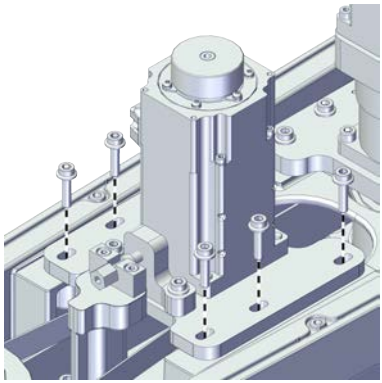
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

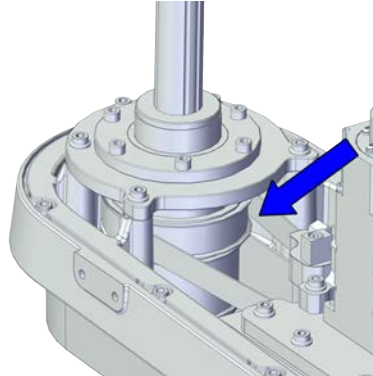
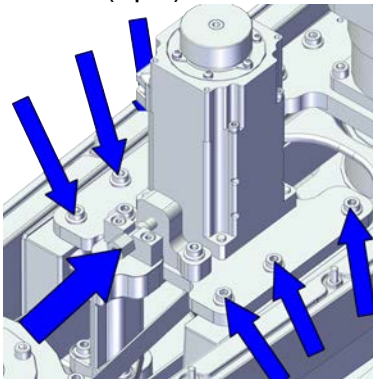
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (6 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000558</p>
4	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 312-333 Hz New belt: 88.4-92.7 Hz</p>
5	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.	
6	Tighten the motor screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 10%


Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	 <p>xx2300000594</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
1	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Timing belt, A3: 3HAC081705-001</p>  <p>xx2300000589</p>
2	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+Pro-COat111 (6 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000557</p>
3	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	<p>Used belt: 139-149 Hz New belt: 109-119 Hz</p>
4	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.	
5	Tighten the motor flange screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 10%

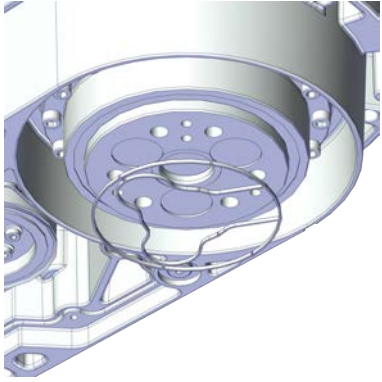



Refitting the outer arm to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	 CAUTION Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.	


5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the gear gasket to the axis-2 gear unit.	 xx230000603
3	Refit the outer arm to the inner arm.  Tip When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M10x25 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (6 pcs) Tightening torque:55 Nm Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (3 pcs) Tightening torque:10 Nm
4	Refit the screws.  Note The two screw holes under the axis-2 belt location are left empty.	 xx230000517

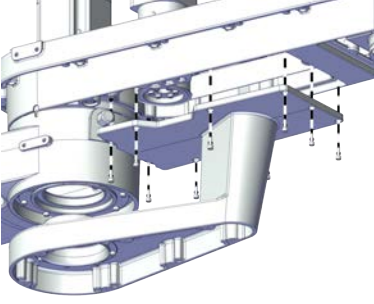
Refitting the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cable arm to the inner arm and outer arm.	


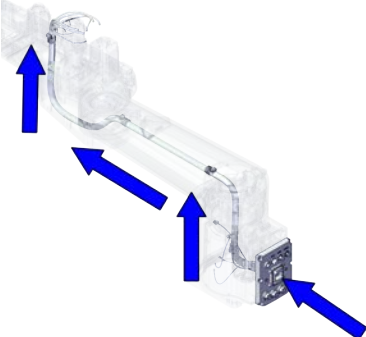
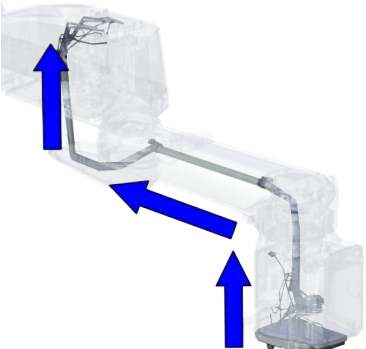
Continues on next page

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Secure the cable arm to the outer arm with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.3 Nm ± 3%</p>  <p>xx2300000516</p>

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position

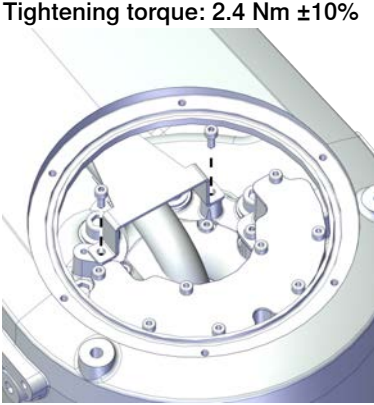
	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ± 10%</p>
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>

Continues on next page


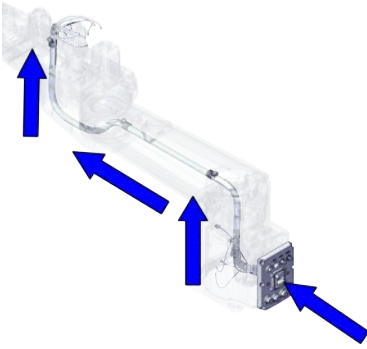

5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Secure the bracket to the inner arm.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>



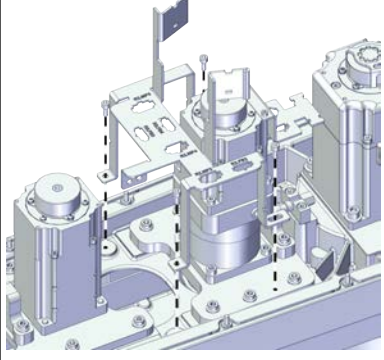
Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	Secure the bracket to the inner arm.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>






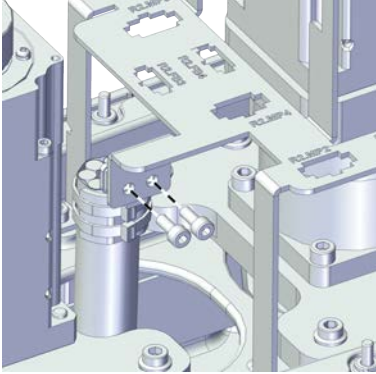
Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>



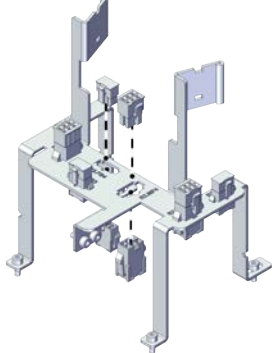
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued



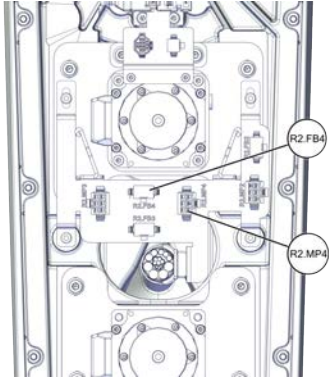

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor



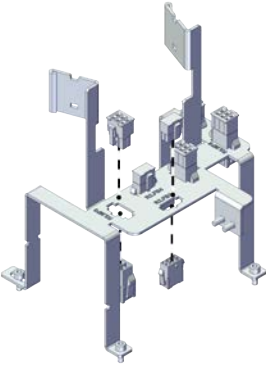

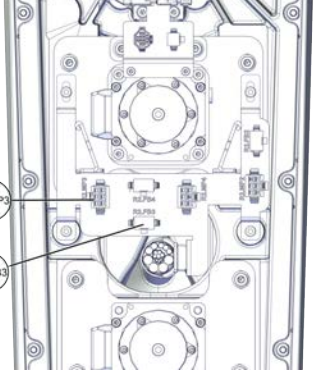
	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Continues on next page

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm
Continued

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>

Continues on next page



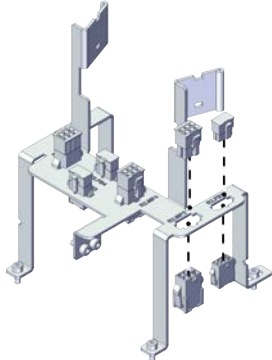

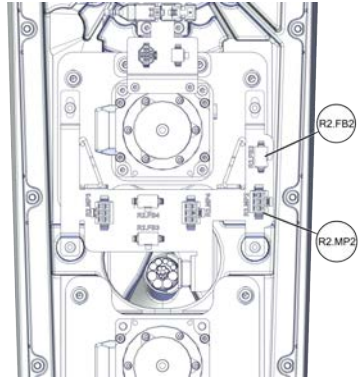

5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued



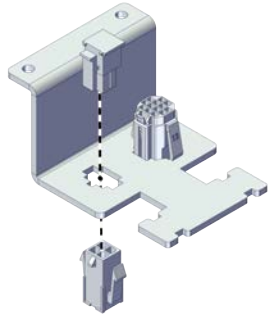

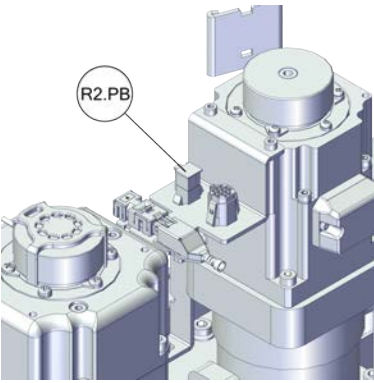

	Action	Note
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)



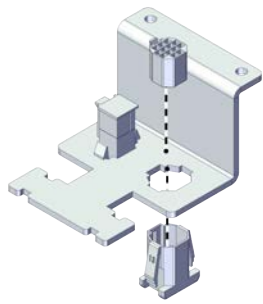

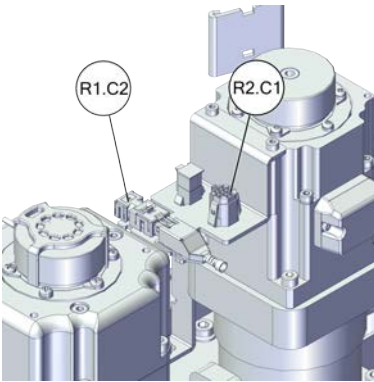


	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>R1.C2</p> <p>R2.C1</p> <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

Continues on next page


	Action	Note
7	Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
2	Refit the screws.	

xx2300000488

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)

xx2300000487

Continues on next page

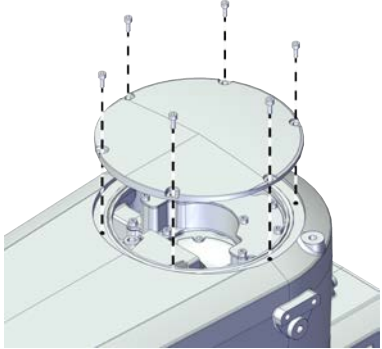
5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm


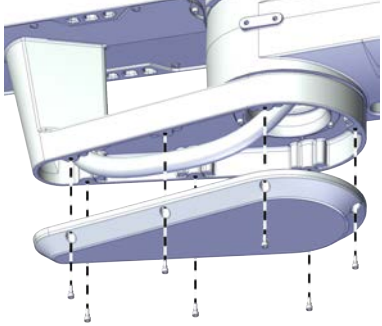
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

Refitting the axis-1 cover




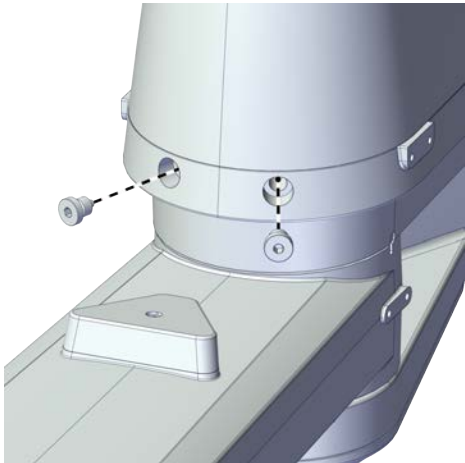



	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cover.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000499</p>
3	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page

Refilling oil to axis-2 gearbox


	Action	Note
1	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30.</p>	
2	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.</p>	
3	<p>Open the upper oil plug.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The lower oil plug has to be closed; otherwise, the oil may leak before required oil amount is filled.</p>	 <p>xx2300000549</p>
4	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	<p>Refill the gearbox with oil.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Oil filling must be slow to make sure air venting is fluent.</p>	<p>Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>.</p>

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.8 Replacing the outer arm

Continued

	Action	Note
6	Refit the oil plug.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm
7	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run.	

Concluding procedure

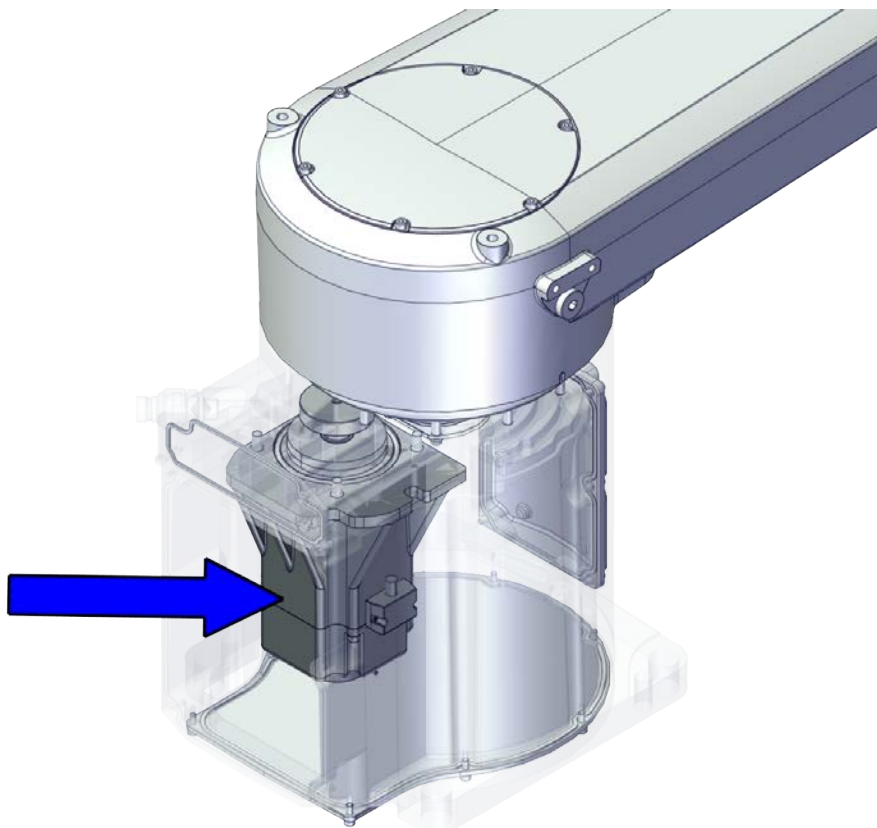
	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5.7 Motors

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Location of the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

The axis-1 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000480

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-1 motor	3HAC087303-001	Includes o-ring 3HAC061327-037.

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.


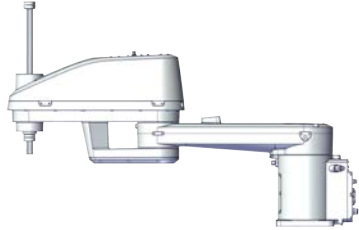

Action	Note
1 Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page


Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 motor sub-assembly.

Preparations before removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the SMB cover


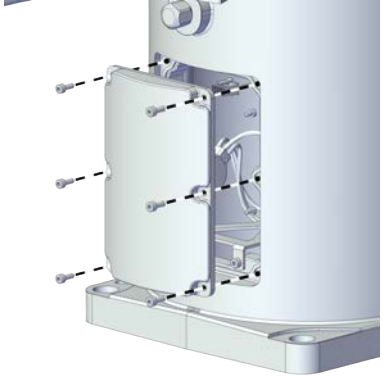
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page




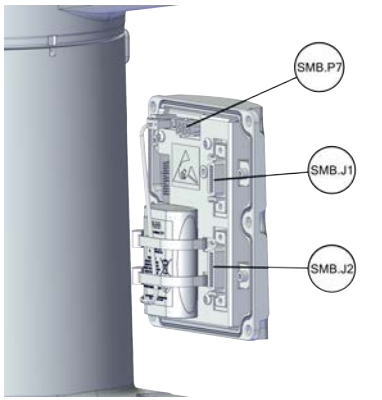
5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued


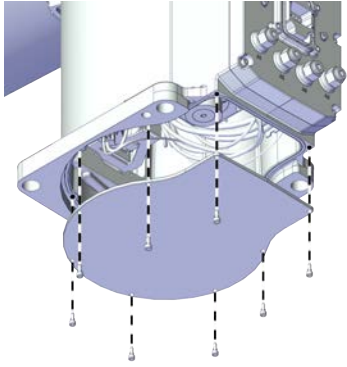
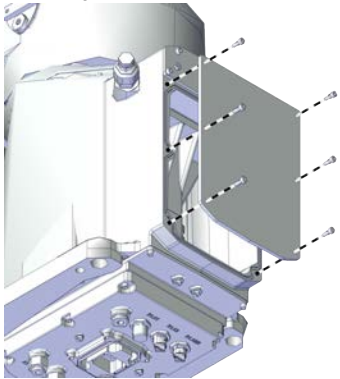
	Action	Note
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.	 xx2300000489

Disconnecting the SMB cabling

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Cut the strips.	
4	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.	 xx2100000945

Continues on next page

Removing the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
3	Lay down the robot.	
4	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version:
5	Remove the base plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000500
6	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version:
7	Remove the rear plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608


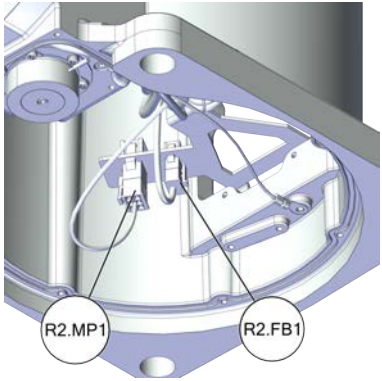

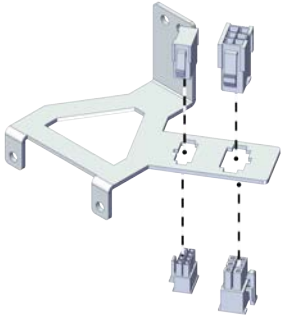
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor



	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 	 xx2300000504
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000505

Removing the base bracket


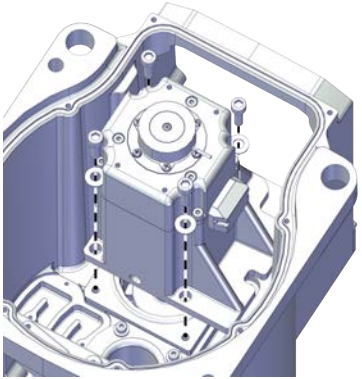
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000503
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base from the SMB side.	

Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 xx2300000512
2	Remove the screws and washers.	
3	Remove the motor.	

Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 motor sub-assembly.

Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

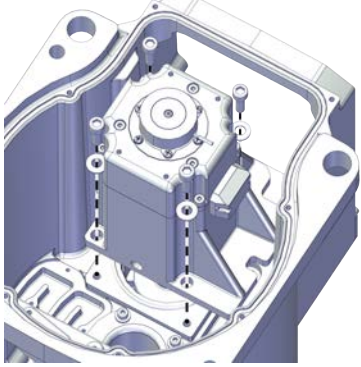
	Action	Note
1	Replace the o-ring if needed.	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	

Continues on next page



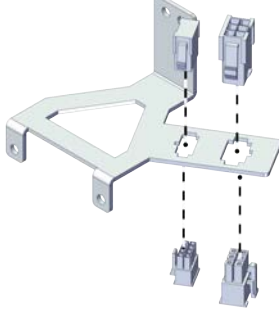

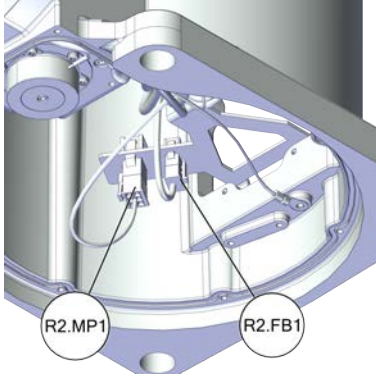
5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued


	Action	Note
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Spring washer, conical 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000512</p>
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor





	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000505</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000504</p>

Continues on next page

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p>	
	<p>Refit the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p> 
3	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	<p>xx2300000503</p>

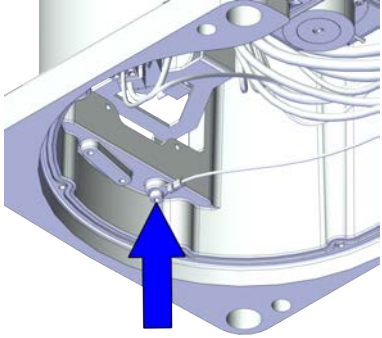

Continues on next page

5 Repair


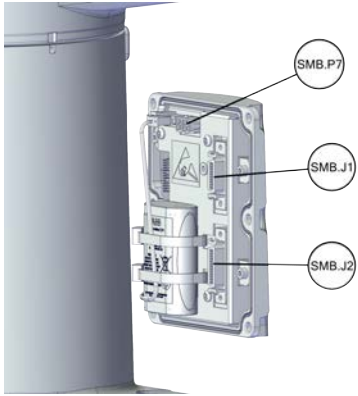
5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Reconnecting the grounding cable connector

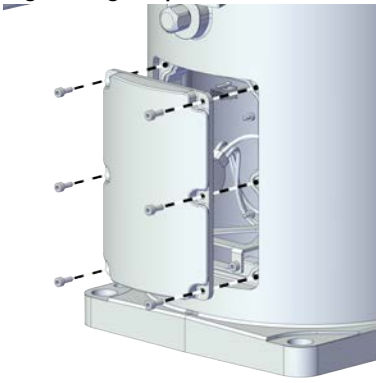
	Action	Note
1	Secure the grounding cable to the bracket with the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000502</p>
2	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the SMB cover

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

Continues on next page

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the SMB cover assembly.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>

Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

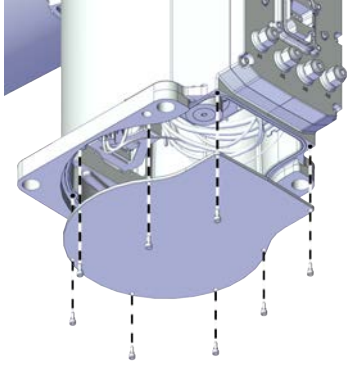
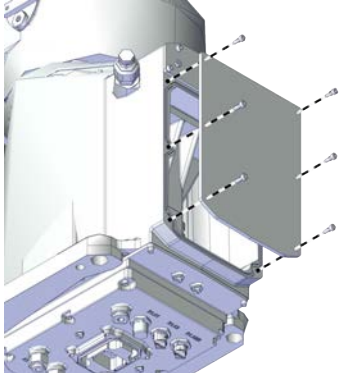
	Action	Note
1	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
2	For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base. For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm 10%
3	Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000500 For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608
4	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
5	Secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Steel Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 56 Nm \pm 10%

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

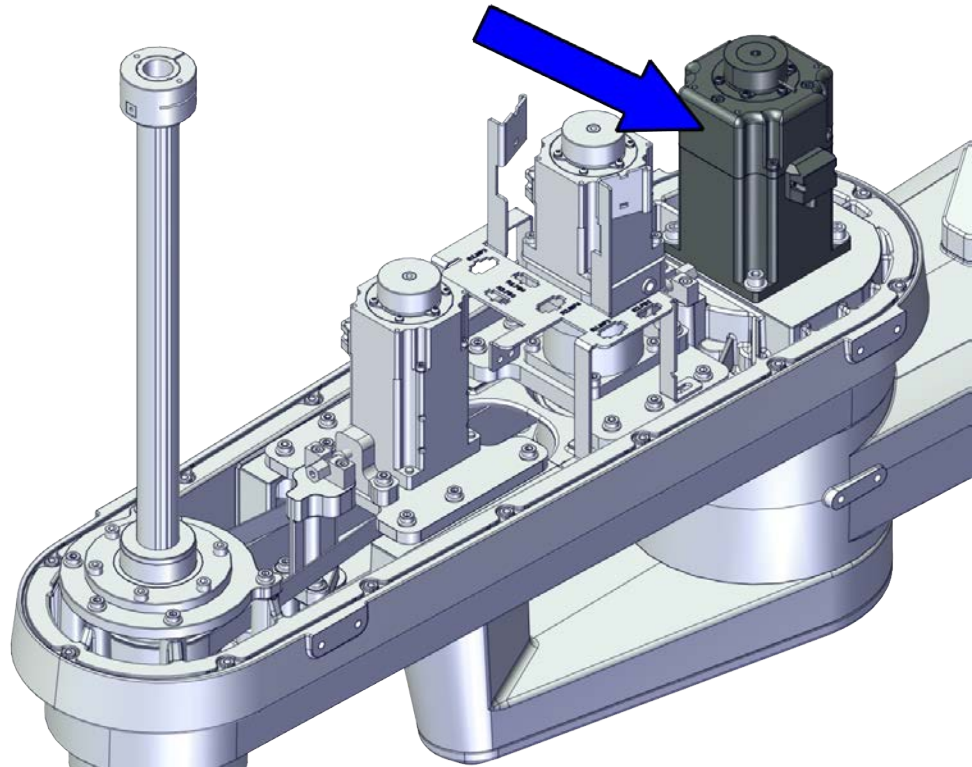
5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Location of the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

The axis-2 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000481

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-2 motor	3HAC087311-001	
Resolver cover	3HAC060261-001	

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565.</p>
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


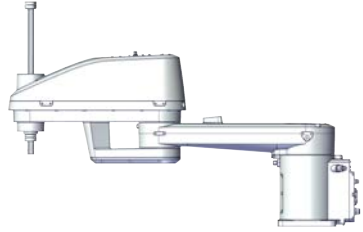

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued


Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 motor sub-assembly.

Preparations before removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

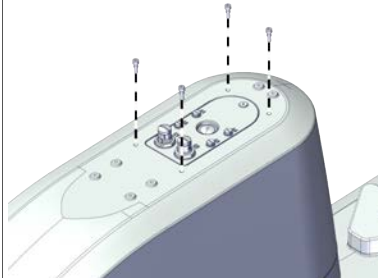
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws


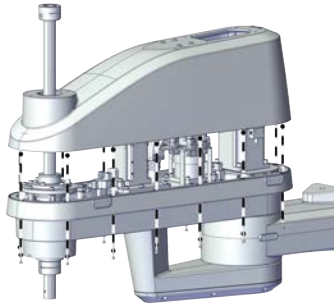
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page


5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

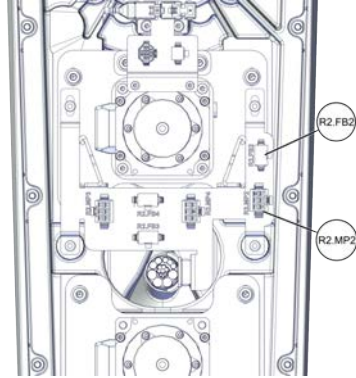

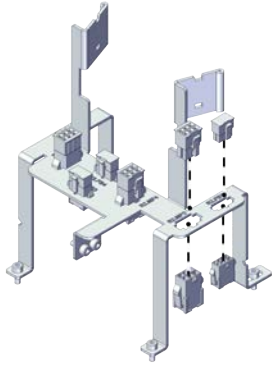
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


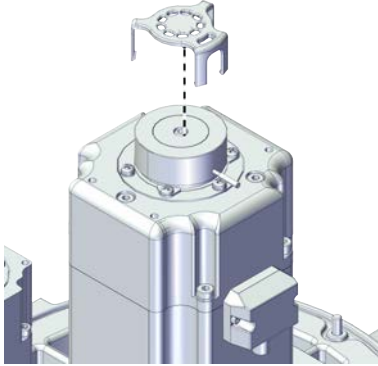
5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued


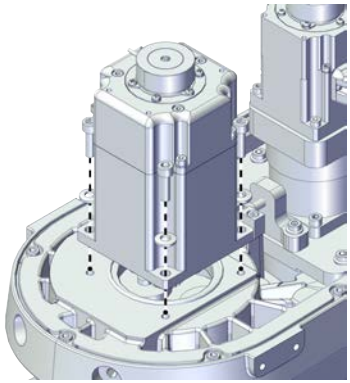

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Removing the axis-2 motor protection cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the protection cover on the motor.	 <p>xx2300000550</p>

Continues on next page

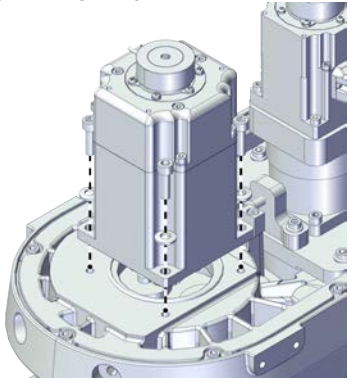
Removing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws and washers.	 xx2300000605
3	Remove the motor.  Tip Move the internal harness out of the way.	

Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 motor sub-assembly.

Refitting the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Replace the o-ring if needed.	
2	Refit the motor.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Washers: Spring washer, conical 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm \pm 10%  xx2300000605
3	Refit the screws and washers.	


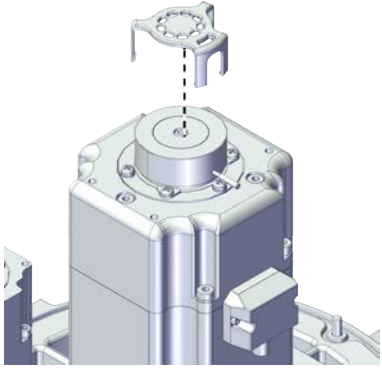
Continues on next page

5 Repair



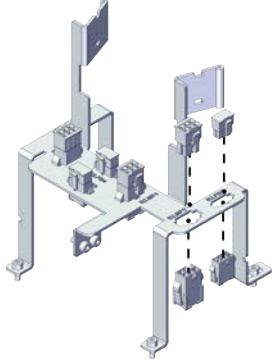

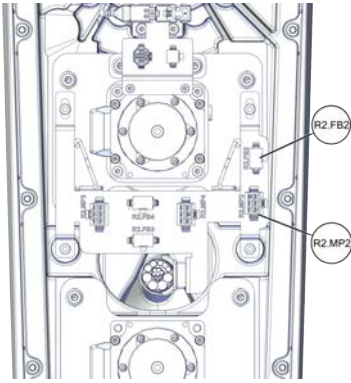
5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Refitting the axis-2 motor pulley protection cover


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the protection cover back to the motor.	 xx2300000550

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

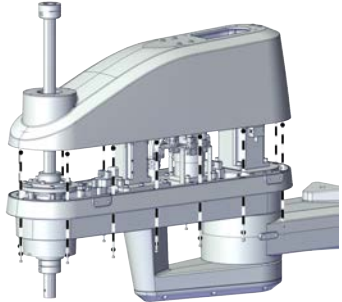
	Action	Note
1	Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.  Tip The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 xx2300000493
2	Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.  DANGER Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.	 xx2300000490

Continues on next page


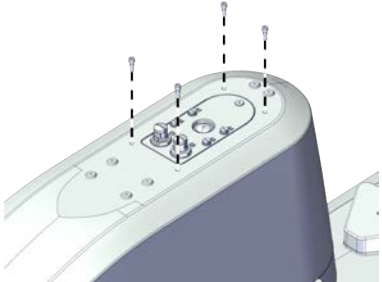
5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

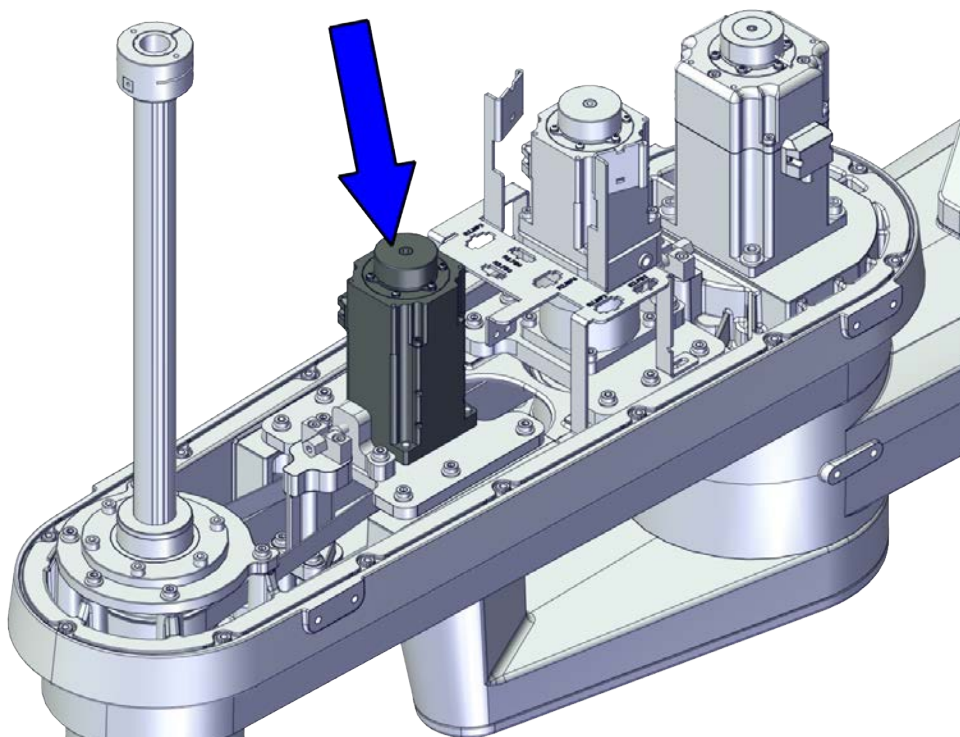
Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Location of the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

The axis-3 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000482

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-3 motor with pulley A3	3HAC087312-001	
Timing belt, A3	3HAC081705-001	
Hex socket head cap flange	3HAB3412-520	Used for axis-3/axis-4 motor flange and adjusting block/screw nut adaptor.

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.



	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page


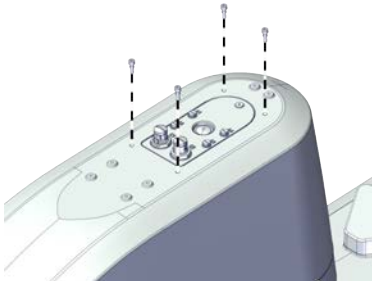
Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.

Preparations before removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	


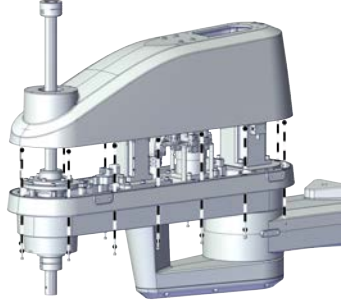
Continues on next page

5 Repair


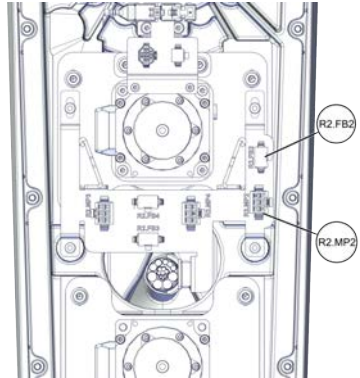
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the cover of the outer arm


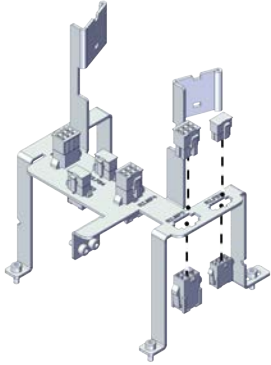
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


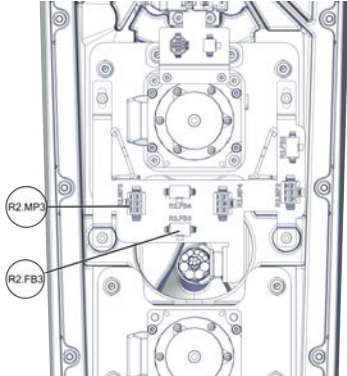

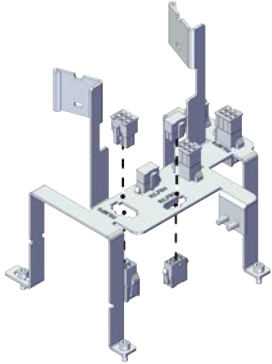
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 xx2300000490

Continues on next page

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

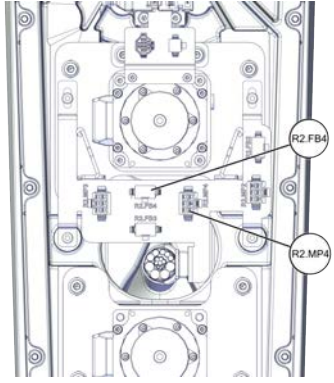

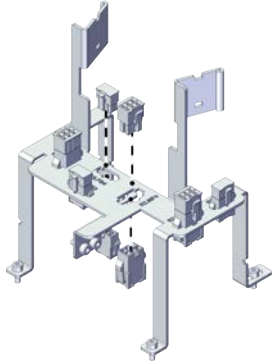
Continues on next page

5 Repair



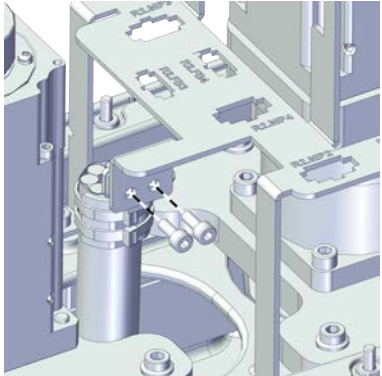
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor


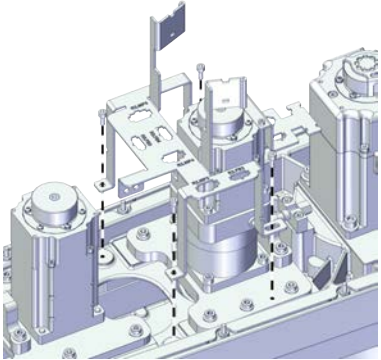
	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket



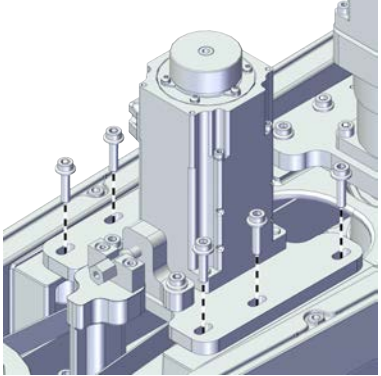
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page


5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Removing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.</p> <p>The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the screws.</p>	 <p>xx2300000594</p>
4	<p>Remove the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.</p>	

Separating the flange from axis-3 motor sub-assembly

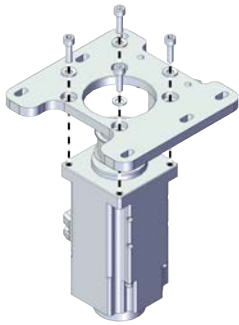
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

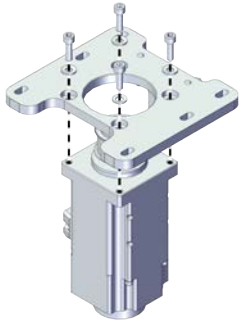
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws and washers.	 <p>xx2300000607</p>
3	Remove the motor.	

Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 motor sub-assembly.


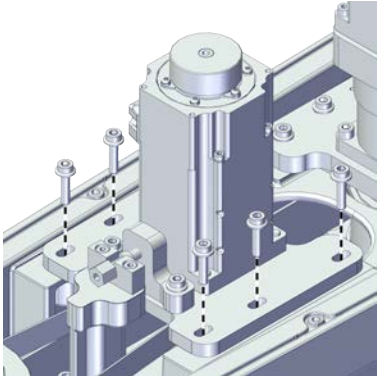
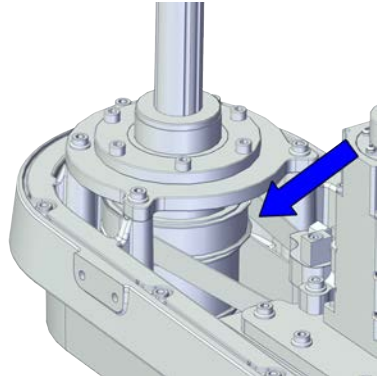
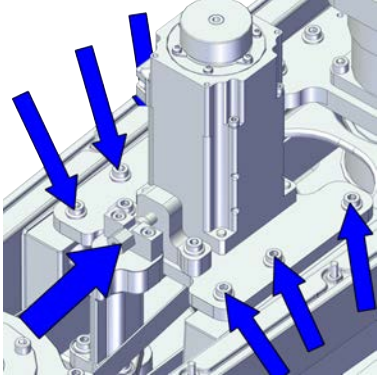
Refitting the flange to the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Install the flange to the motor and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Plain washer 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.3 Nm \pm10% 3HAB3409-212</p>  <p>xx2300000607</p>

Continues on next page

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly
Continued

Refitting the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
	<p>Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Move the internal harness out of the way.</p>	 <p>xx2300000594</p>
1	<p>Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.</p>	<p>Timing belt, A3: 3HAC081705-001</p>  <p>xx2300000589</p>
2	<p>Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (6 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000557</p>
3	<p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p>	<p>Used belt: 139-149 Hz New belt: 109-119 Hz</p>
4	<p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.</p>	

Continues on next page



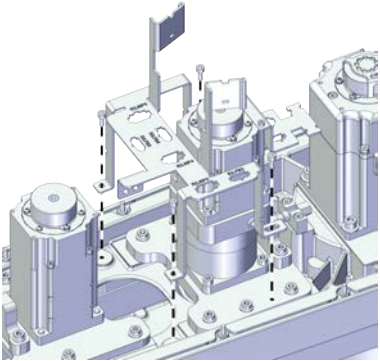





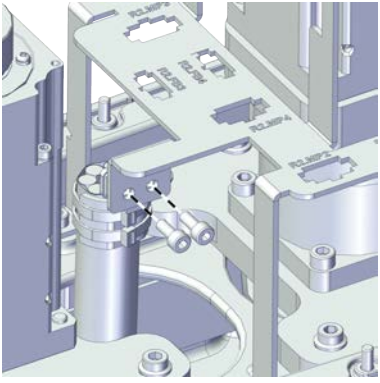
5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued



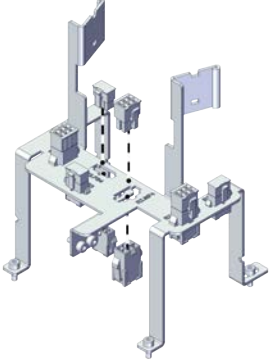


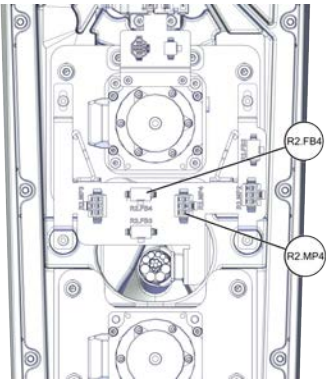

	Action	Note
5	Tighten the motor flange screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm 10%

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



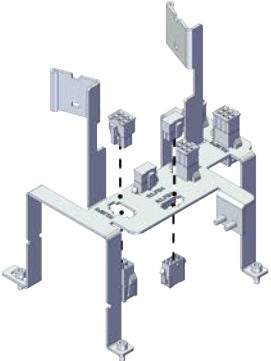

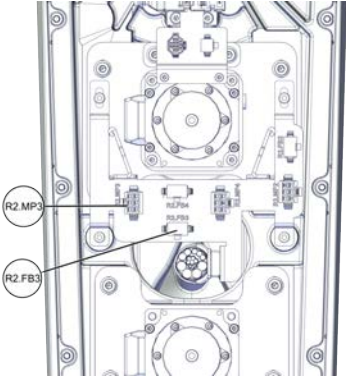

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly



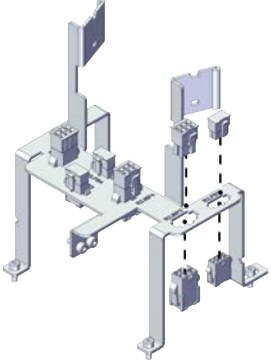

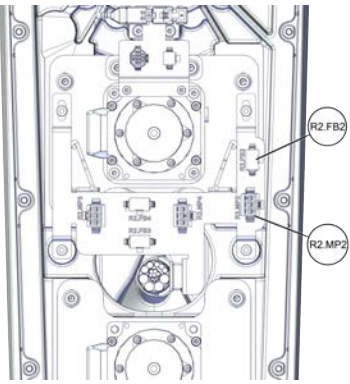

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

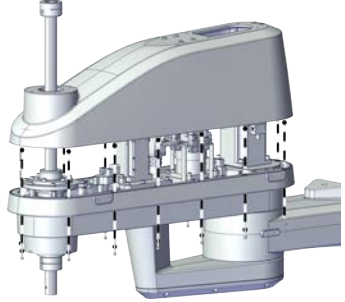
Continues on next page

5 Repair


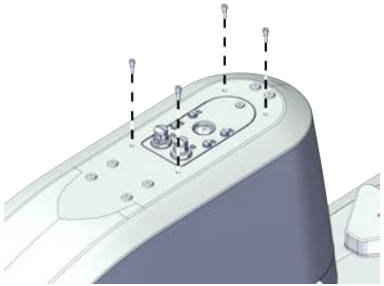
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	


Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

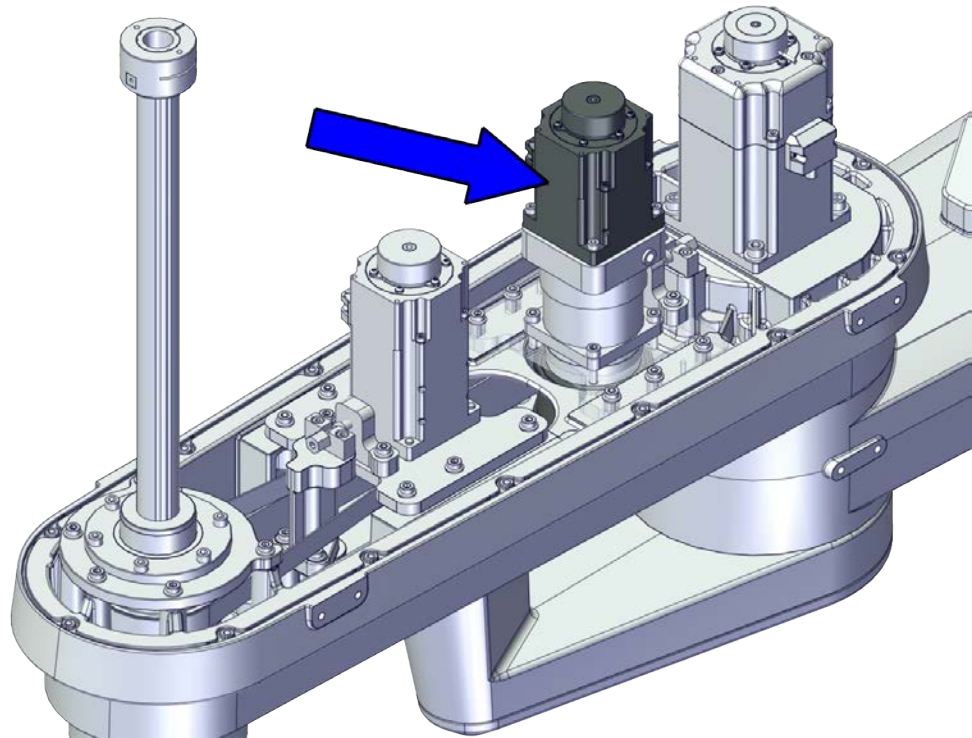
5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Location of the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

The axis-4 motor sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000483

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-4 motor	3HAC060157-001	PMSM, MT45.1
Timing belt, A4	3HAC081706-001	
CPCS bracket	3HAC081795-001	
Hex socket head cap flange	3HAB3412-520	Used for axis-3/axis-4 motor flange and adjusting block/screw nut adaptor.
Hex socket head cap flange	3HAB3412-435	Used for axis-4 pulley.

Continues on next page

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly
Continued

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
24 VDC power supply	-	Used to release the motor brakes.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


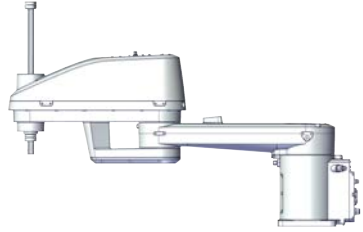

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued


Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.

Preparations before removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

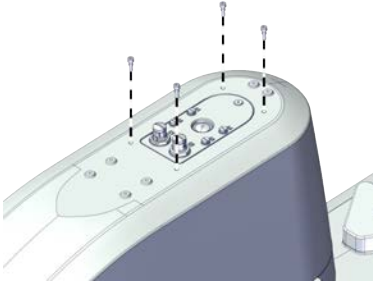
	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Removing the process hub screws


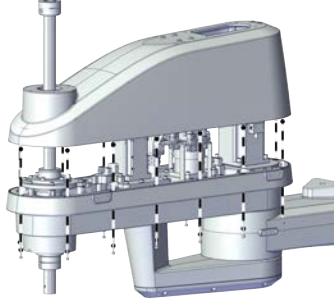
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page


5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

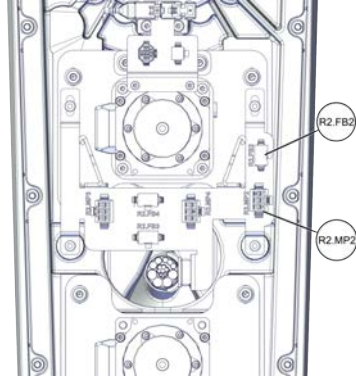

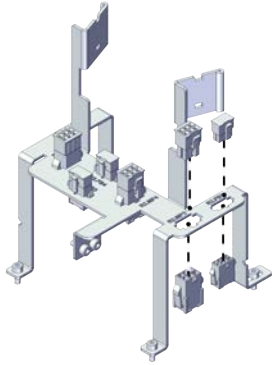
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


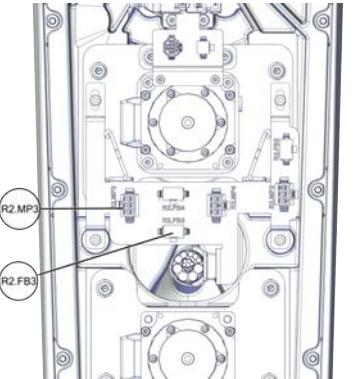
5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued


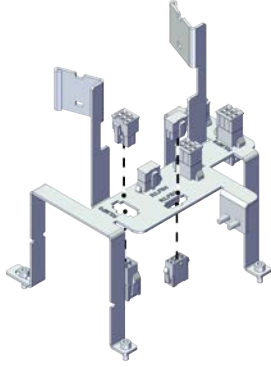
	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

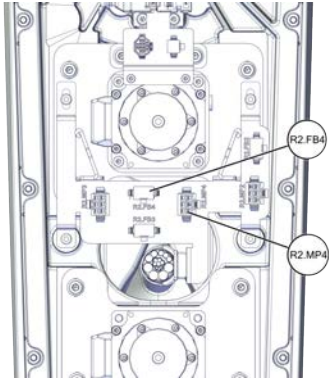

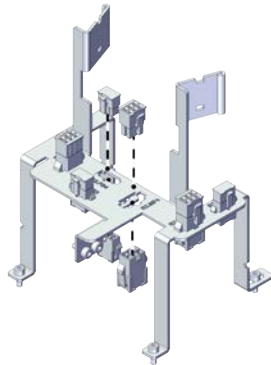
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>

Continues on next page


5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket


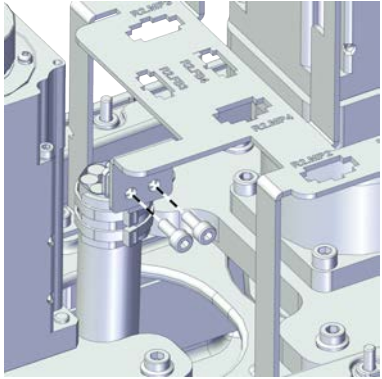

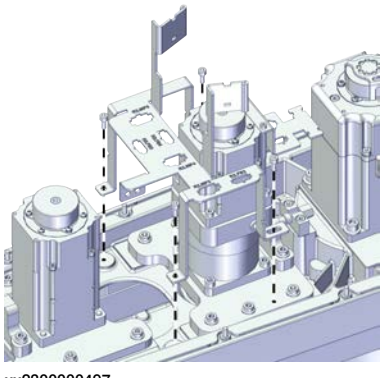
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

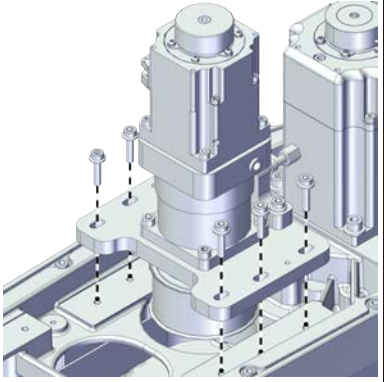
	Action	Note
2	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	<p>Remove the screws on the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Removing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly


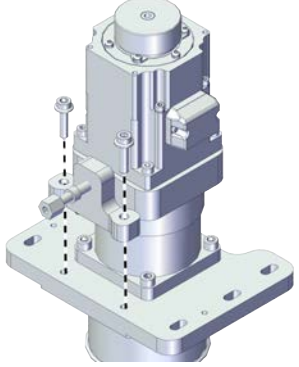
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the ball screw is supported with something.</p> <p>The sudden drop of the ball screw due the lost of the axis-3 motor may cause danger.</p>	

Continues on next page


5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000597</p>
4	Remove the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.	

Removing the adjusting block from axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 <p>xx2300000598</p>
2	Remove the bracket on the motor.	
3	Remove the screws.	
4	Remove the adjusting block.	

Removing the pulley from axis-4 motor sub-assembly

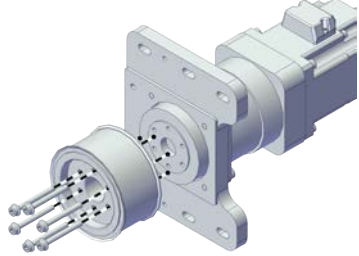
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


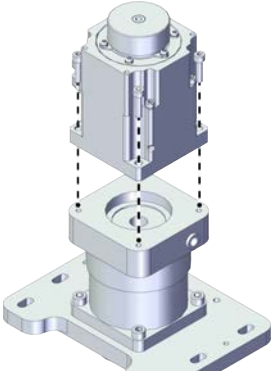
5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws.	 <p>xx2300000599</p>
3	Remove the pulley.	

Separating the gearhead from axis-4 motor sub-assembly

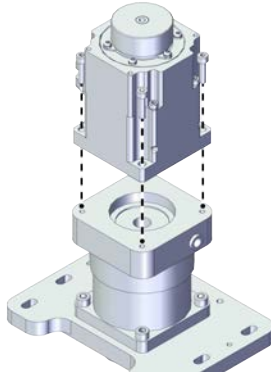
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 <p>xx2300000600</p>
2	Remove the screws.	
3	Separate the gearhead and motor.	

Continues on next page

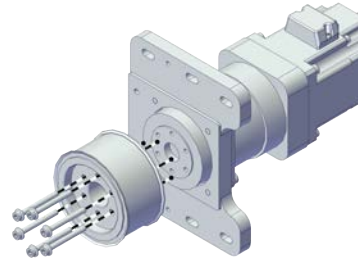
Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 motor sub-assembly.

Refitting the gearhead to the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Refit the gearhead to the axis-4 motor sub-assembly and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm \pm3%</p>  <p>xx2300000600</p>

Refitting the pulley to the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Refit the pulley to the axis-4 motor sub-assembly and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-435 M4x25 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.3 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000599</p>

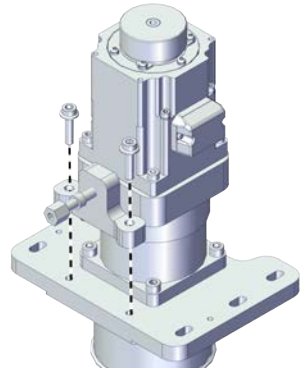
Continues on next page

5 Repair


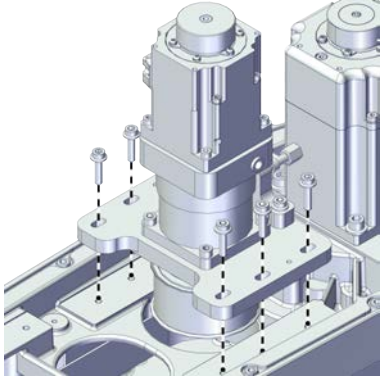
5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Refitting the adjusting block to the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

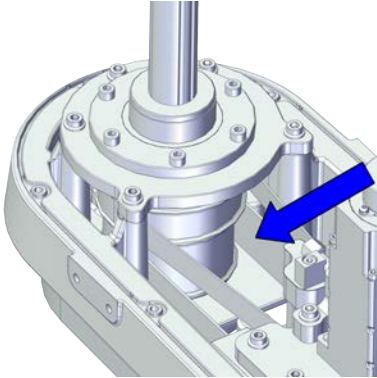
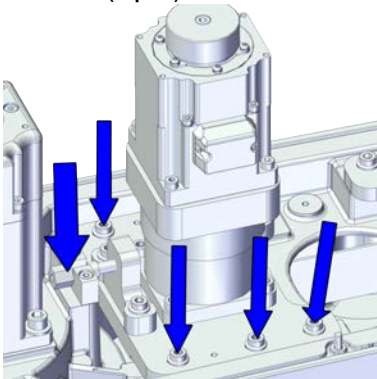
	Action	Note
1	Refit the adjusting block to the axis-4 motor sub-assembly and secure with screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+PrO-COat111 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000598</p>
2	Refit the bracket to the motor assembly.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>

Refitting the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	<p>Refit the motor with flange to the outer arm.</p>  Tip Move the internal harness out of the way.	 <p>xx2300000597</p>

Continues on next page

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the timing belt to the pulley on the ball screw and the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	Timing belt, A4: 3HAC081706-001  xx2300000588
3	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	Screws: Hex socket head cap flange screw 3HAB3412-520 M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9+Pro-COat111 (6 pcs)  xx2300000558
4	Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.	Used belt: 312-333 Hz New belt:88.4-92.7 Hz
5	If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, readjust the motor with the adjusting screw.	
6	Tighten the motor screws when the timing belt meets the requirement.	Tightening torque: 6 Nm ±10%

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm



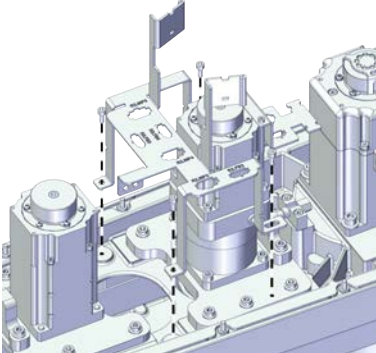





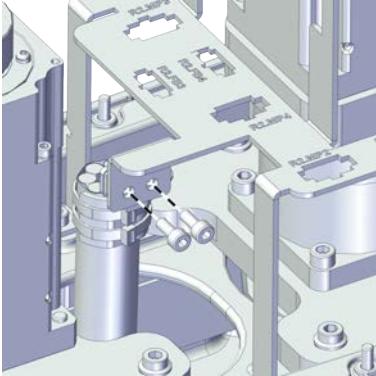
	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair



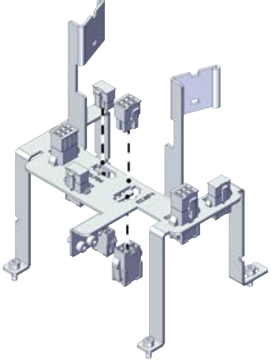


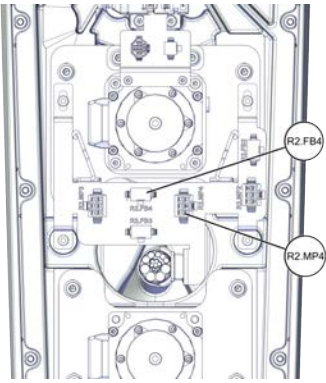

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



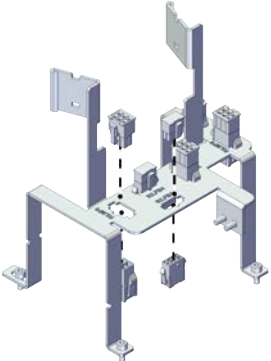

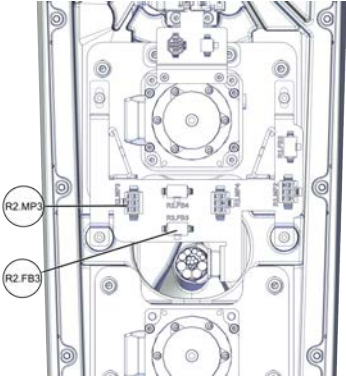

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly



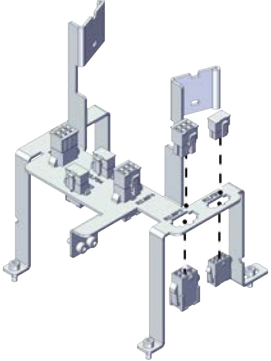

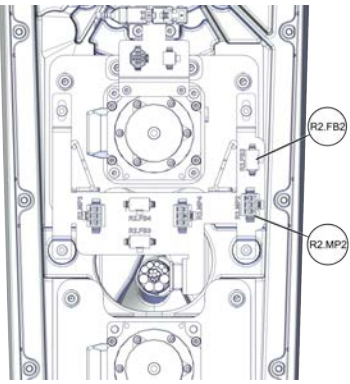

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

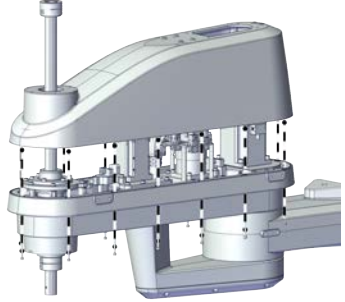
Continues on next page

5 Repair


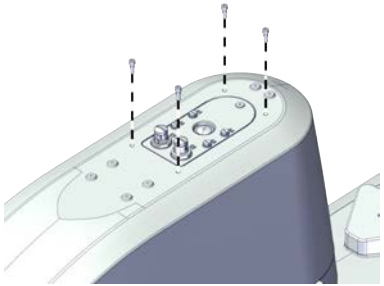
5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor sub-assembly

Continued

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	


Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
4	Remove the screw.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

5 Repair

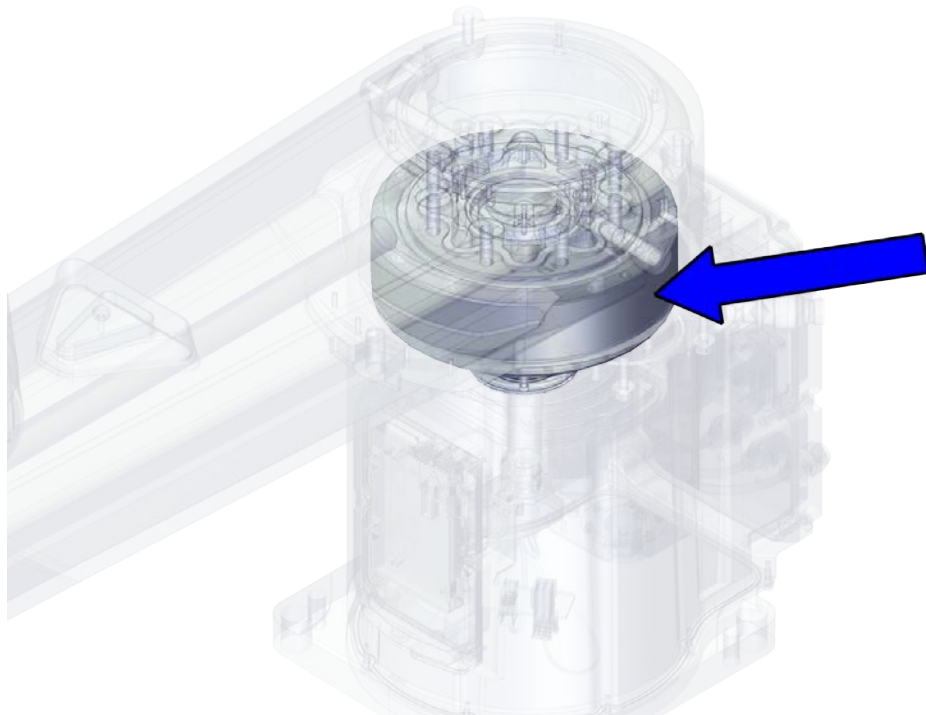
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

5.8 Gearboxes

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Location of the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

The axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx230000484

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly	3HAC081648-001	Without tube&bolt; flange screw. Gearbox NTS RV-27C-36.57

Continues on next page

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Belt tension adjustment tool set, axis 1&2	-	Included in the special toolkit 3HAC073070-001. Used to adjust the tension of axis-1&2 timing belts. Special tool for L2
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.	Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565 .
	If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


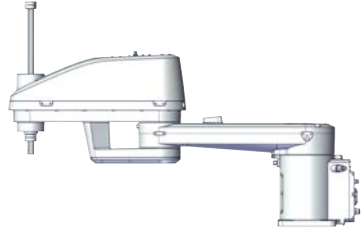

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued


Removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly.

Preparations before removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


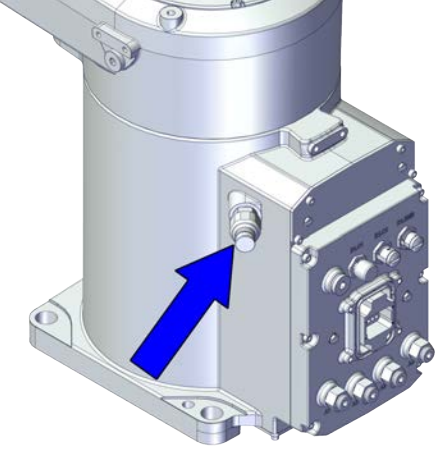
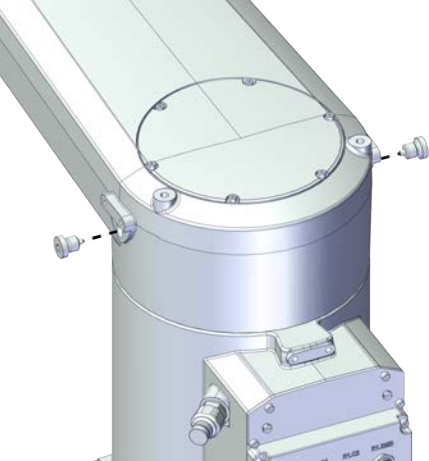

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Draining oil of axis-1 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued



	Action	Note
2	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.</p>	
3	<p>Lay down the robot to let the quick coupling facing the ground if needed.</p>	
4	<p>Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the quick coupling.</p>	 <p>xx2300000546</p>
5	<p>Remove the oil plugs and keep them opened to speed up the drainage.</p>	 <p>xx2300000547</p>
6	<p>Plug a G3/8 quick coupling connector with pipe to the quick coupling on base.</p>	
7	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.</p>	

Continues on next page


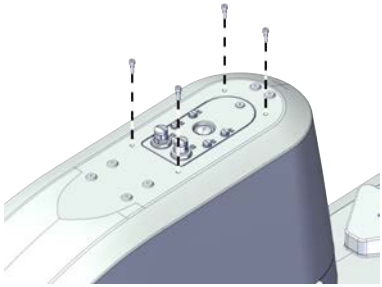
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
8	Drain the gearbox oil.	 Note Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.
9	Remove the quick coupling connector and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
10	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Removing the process hub screws

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000487
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

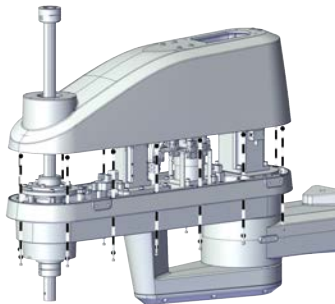
Removing the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	


Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

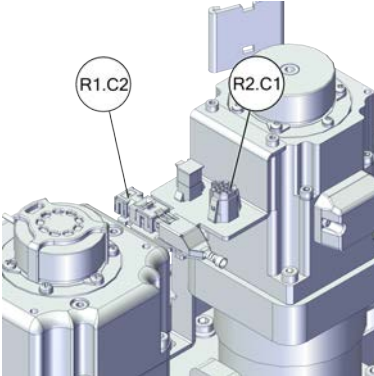



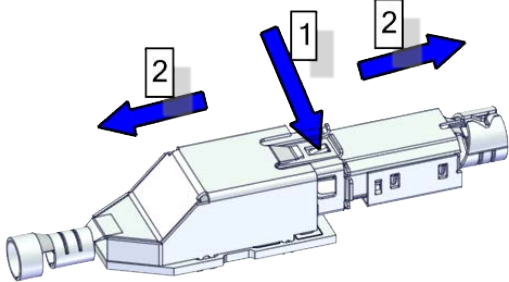

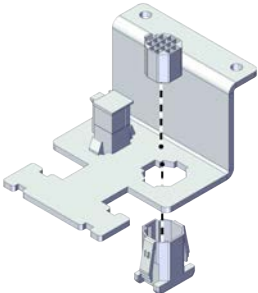
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


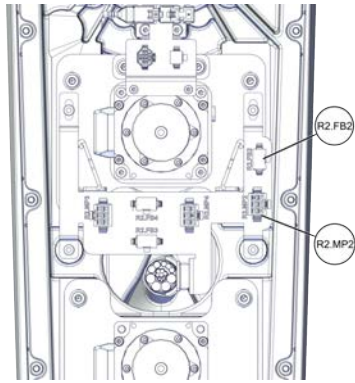

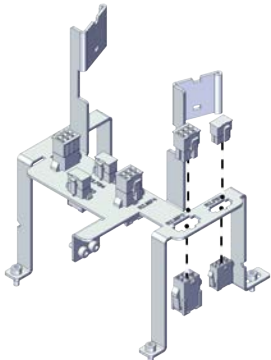
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p> 	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>


Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

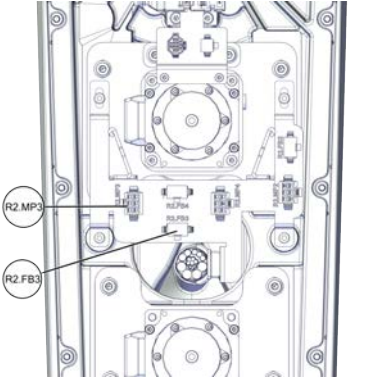

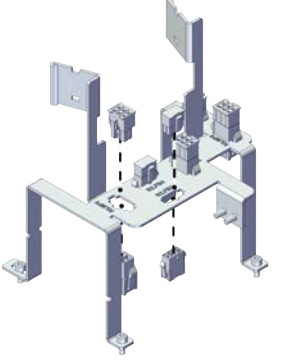
	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

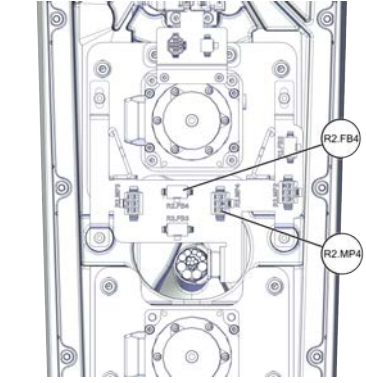
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued


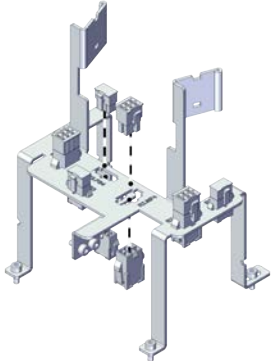
	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor


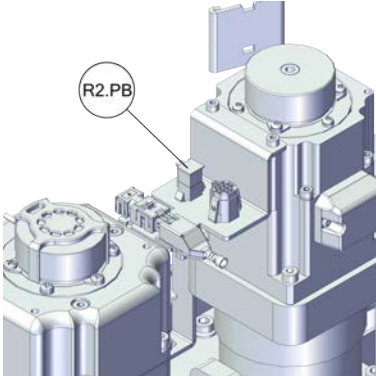

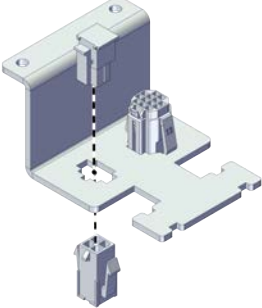
	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>



Continues on next page

5 Repair



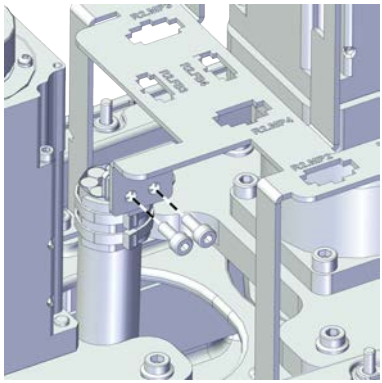

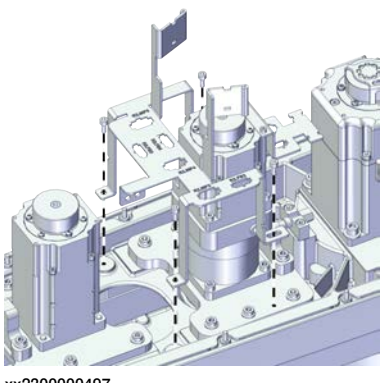
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	


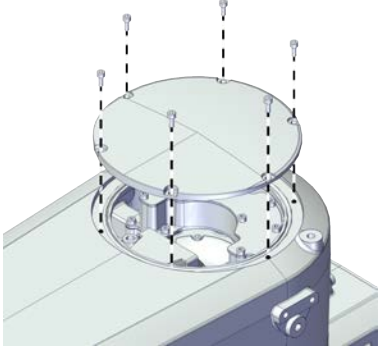
Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Continues on next page


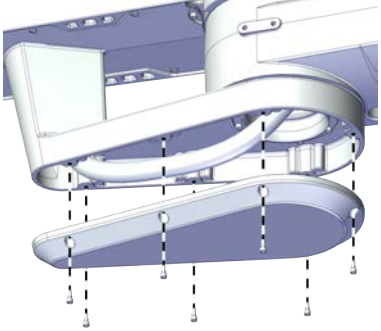
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
3	Remove the cover.	

xx2300000498

Removing the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
3	Remove the cover.	

xx2300000499



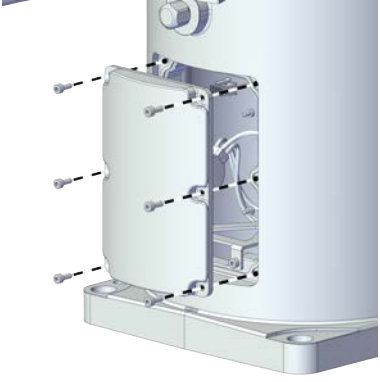
Continues on next page

5 Repair



5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the SMB cover


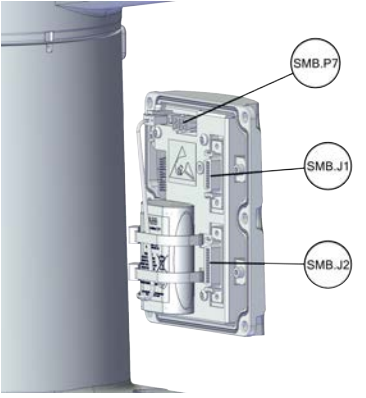
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Remove the screws on the SMB cover to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
4	Pull the SMB cover with the SMB unit assembly out together.	 <small>xx2300000489</small>

Disconnecting the SMB cabling


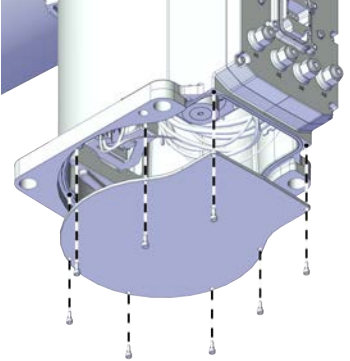
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 46 .	
3	Cut the strips.	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

Removing the base plate/ rear plate

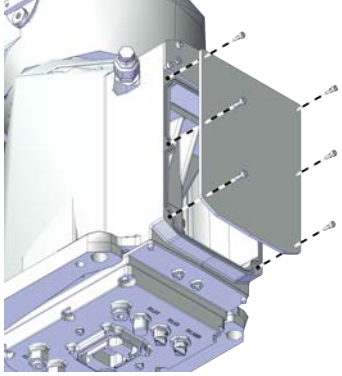
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	Remove the screws on the base to the ground.	
3	Lay down the robot.	
4	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the base plate.	For rear outlet cable version:
5	Remove the base plate.	<p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000500</p>

Continues on next page


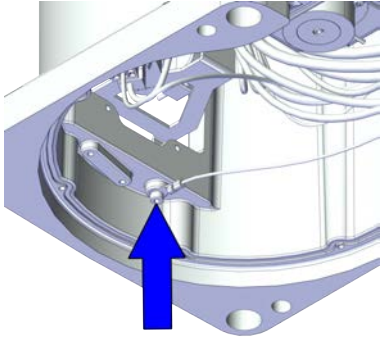
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
6	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the rear plate.	For underneath outlet cable version:
7	Remove the rear plate.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608

Disconnecting the grounding cable connector

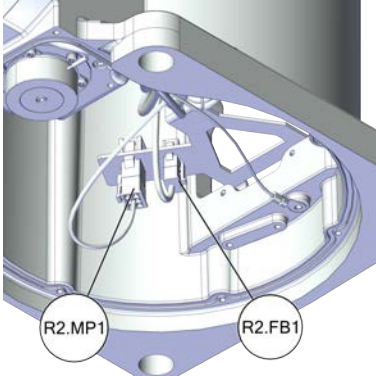

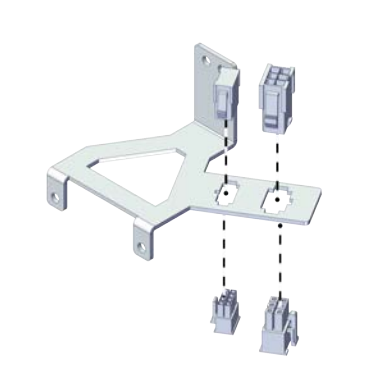
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the grounding cable from the base by unscrew the screw.	 xx2300000502

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor



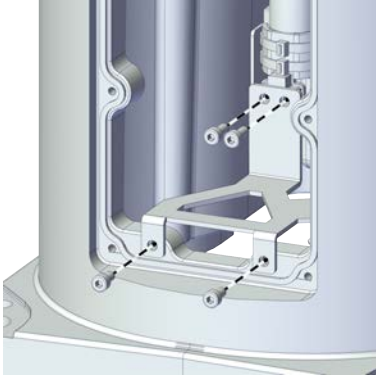

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 	 <p>xx2300000504</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000505</p>

Removing the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	
3	Remove the screws on the base bracket to the base from the SMB side.	 <p>xx2300000503</p>



Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the bracket of the cable arm



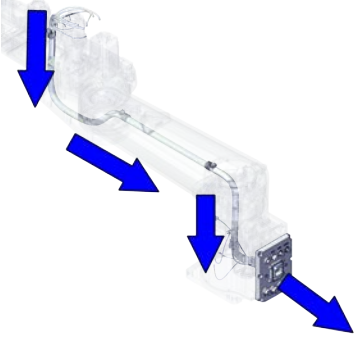

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000506

Removing the main harness from the cable arm position


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>
3	<p>Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.</p>	

Removing the main harness from the axis -1 gearbox position

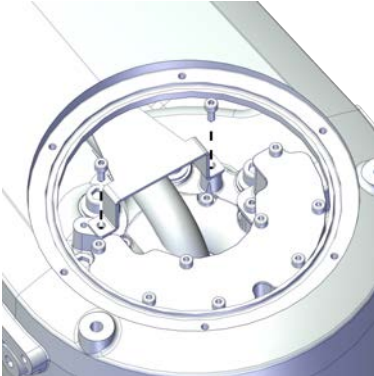

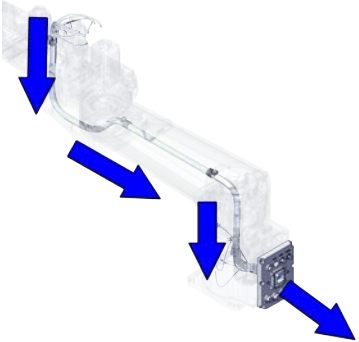
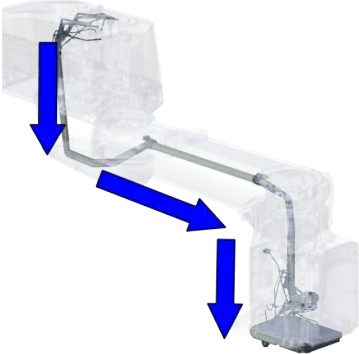
	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


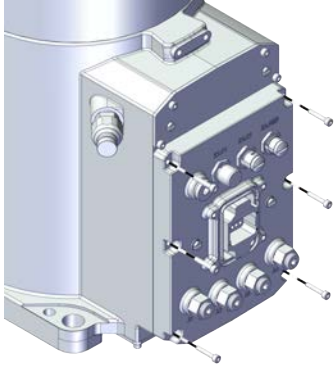

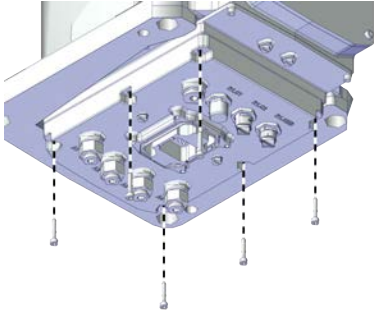
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the bracket from the inner arm to release the cable.	 <p>xx2300000508</p>
3	Remove the screws on the cable ferrule to the bracket and take the bracket out.	
4	Pull the main harness out of the inner arm from the sleeve of the axis-1 gearbox.  Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>


Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Removing the main harness

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	For robot with rear outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version:
3	Remove the main harness.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000509
4	For robot with underneath outlet cable version, remove the screws on the main harness assembly.	For underneath outlet cable version:
5	Remove the main harness assembly.  Note Remove the bottom plate from the main harness if needed.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000609

Removing the oil tank


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page


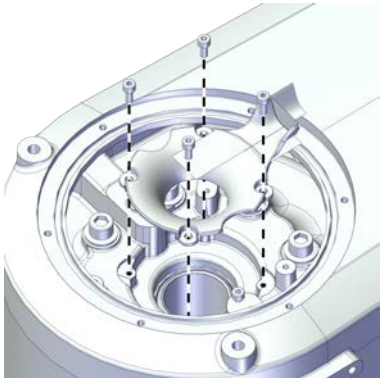
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	 <p>xx2300000511</p>
3	Remove the oil tank.	

Removing the protection tube

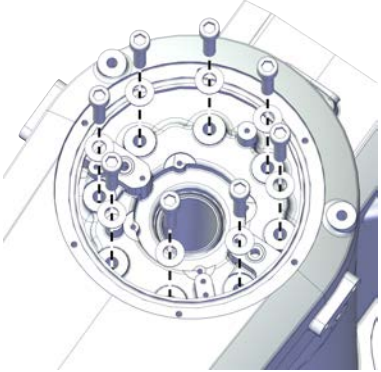
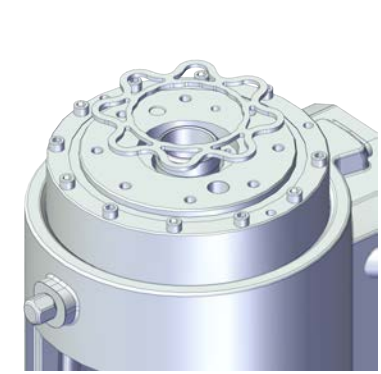
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	 <p>xx2300000513</p>
2	Remove the screws on the protection tube to the inner arm.	
3	Remove the protection tube.	

Removing the base from inner arm


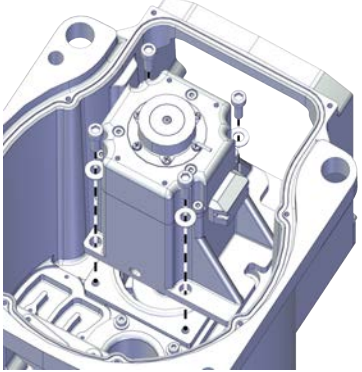
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws and washers on the inner to the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000514</p>
3	Disconnect the axis-1 gear to the inner arm.	
4	Remove the BassSwing gasket on the axis-1 gear unit.	 <p>xx2300000602</p>

Removing the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws and washers.	 <p>xx2300000512</p>
3	Remove the motor.	


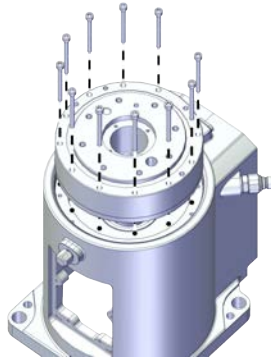

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

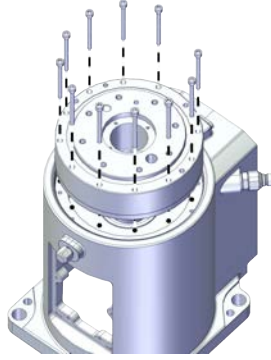
Removing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the gear to the base.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000515
3	Remove the gear unit.  Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.	

Refitting the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly.

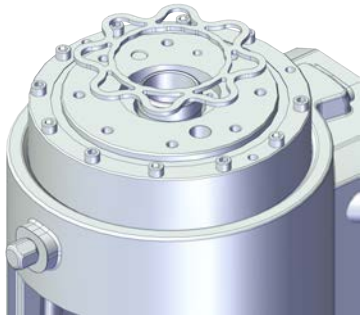
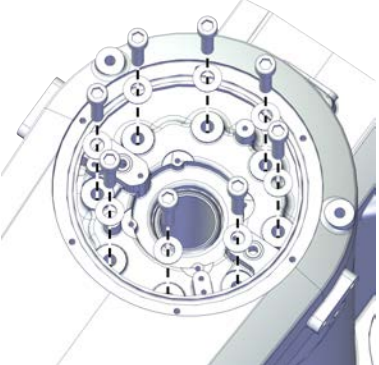
Refitting the base to the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

	Action	Note
1	Refit the base to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x65 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (11 pcs) Tightening torque: 10 Nm \pm 10%  xx2300000515
2	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Refitting the base to the inner arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the BassSwing gasket to the axis-1 gearbox.	 <p>xx2300000602</p>
2	Refit the inner arm to the axis-1 gearbox as the illustration.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M8x40 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (8 pcs)
3	Refit the screws.	<p>Washers: Spring washer, conical 9ADA334-7 18x4x2 Steel (8 pcs) Tightening torque: 25 Nm ±3%</p>  <p>xx2300000514</p>

Refitting the axis-1 motor sub-assembly

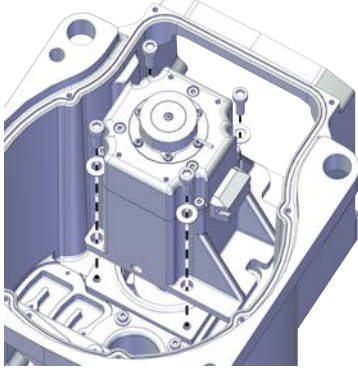
	Action	Note
1	Replace the o-ring if needed.	
2	Put the timing belt into the pulley on the gear.	

Continues on next page


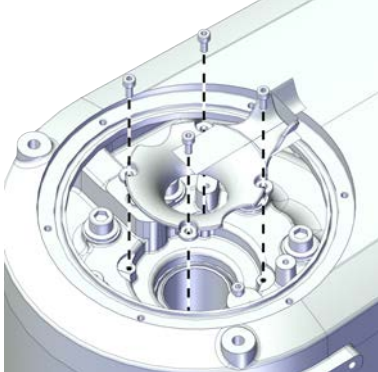
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Refit the motor and refit the timing belt to the motor. Ensure that the belt runs correctly in the grooves.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Washers: Spring washer, conical 11x5.3x1.2 Steel (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000512</p>
4	Refit the screws and washers without fully tightened.	


Refitting the protection tube

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the protection tube.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000513</p>
3	Secure the screws on the protection tube to the inner arm.	

Continues on next page

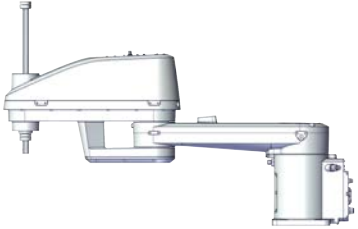
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Refitting the oil tank

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the oil tank.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±3%
3	Secure the screws on the oil tank to the inner arm.	

xx2300000511

Inserting the main harness through the axis -1 gearbox position

	Action	Note
1	Make sure that the robot is at zero position.	




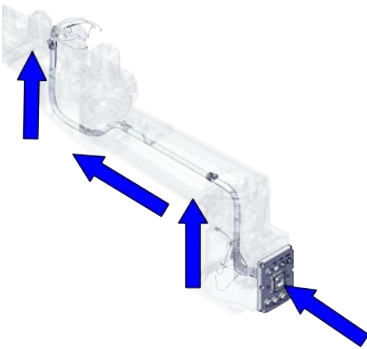

xx2300000486

Continues on next page



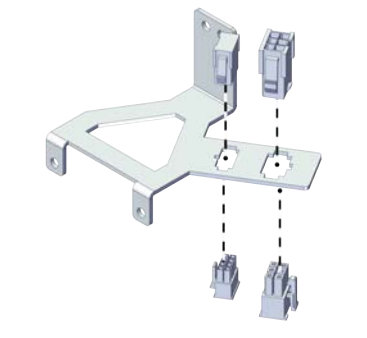
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued


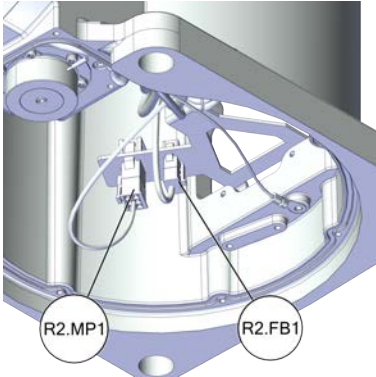

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the inner arm through the protection tube of the axis-1 gearbox from the base.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip The air hoses should face the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-1 motor




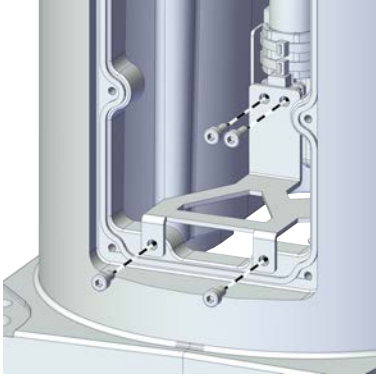
	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000505</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP1 • R2.FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000504</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-1 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the base bracket

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Lay the main harness in a natural state without distortion.</p> <p>Refit the cable ferrule to the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p> 
3	<p>Refit the base bracket to the base and secure with the screws.</p>	<p>xx2300000503</p>

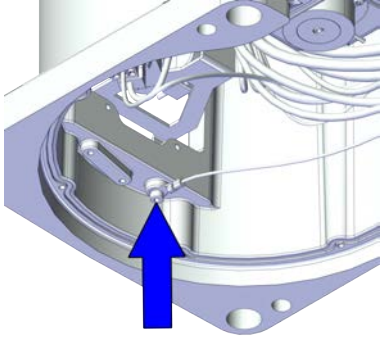

Continues on next page

5 Repair


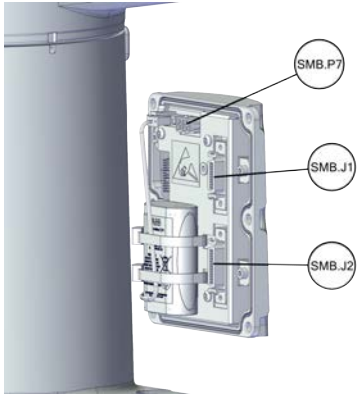
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Reconnecting the grounding cable connector

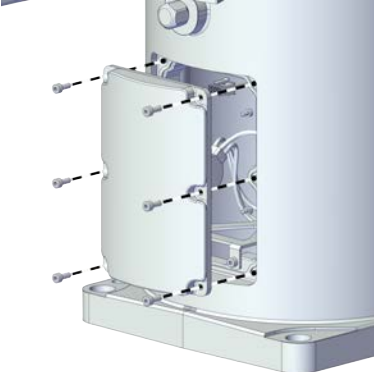
	Action	Note
1	Secure the grounding cable to the bracket with the screw.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000502</p>
2	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the SMB cover

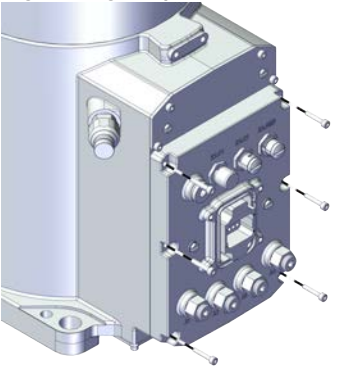
	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	 <p>xx2100000945</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Refit the SMB cover assembly.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Secure the SMB cover to the base with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300000489</p>

Refitting the main harness


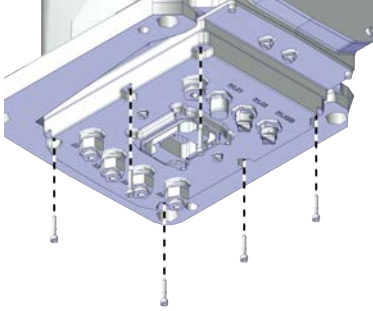
	Action	Note
1	For rear outlet cable version, refit the main harness to the base.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
2	Secure with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000509</p>

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

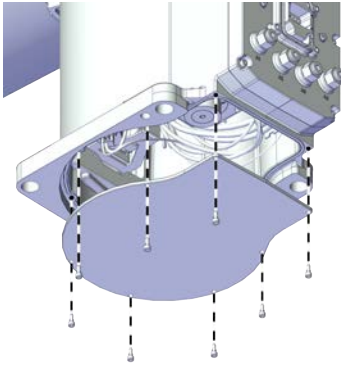
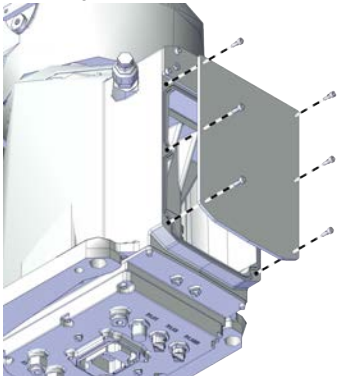
	Action	Note
3	<p>For underneath outlet cable version, refit the main harness assembly to the base.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Refit the bottom plate to the main harness if needed.</p>	<p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p> <p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm10%</p>
4	Secure with the screws.	 <p>xx2300000609</p>

Refitting the base plate/ rear plate

	Action	Note
1	Apply grease to the internal harness, cover all moving area of the harness.	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	For rear outlet cable version, refit the base plate to the base. For underneath outlet cable version, refit the rear plate to the base.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm \pm 10%
3	Secure the base plate/ rear plate to the base with the screws.	For rear outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000500 For underneath outlet cable version: For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000608
4	Refit the robot back to the ground.	
5	Secure with the screws.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M12x35 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs) Steel Washers: 24 mm x 13 mm x 2.5 mm (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 56 Nm \pm 10%

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position


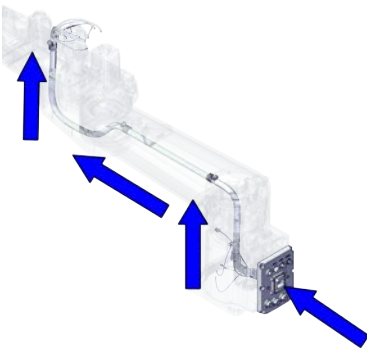

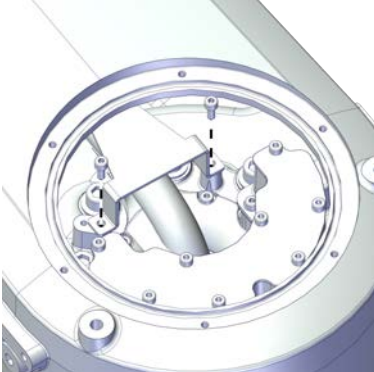
	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2 Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10%

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


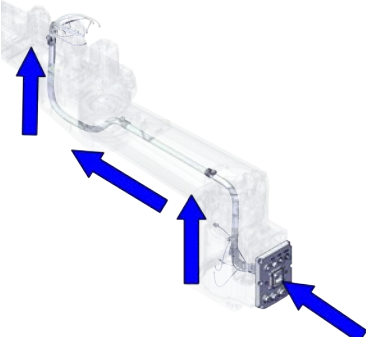
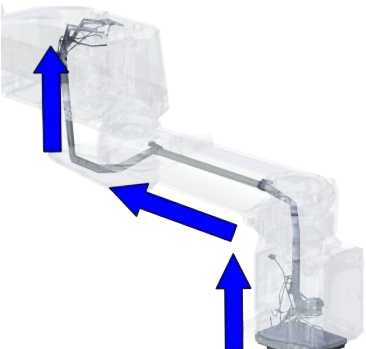

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
3	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>
2	<p>Secure the bracket to the inner arm.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>



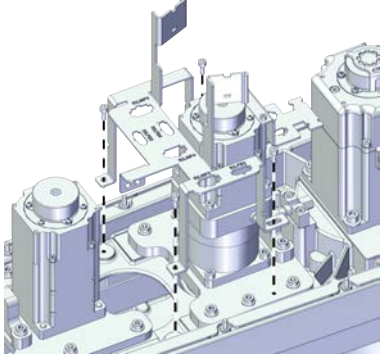





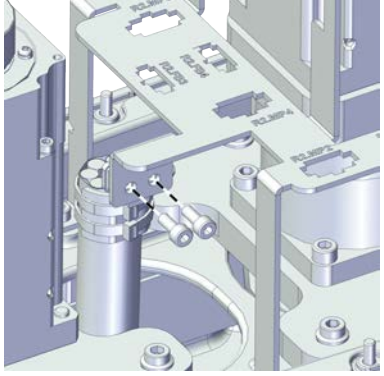
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued



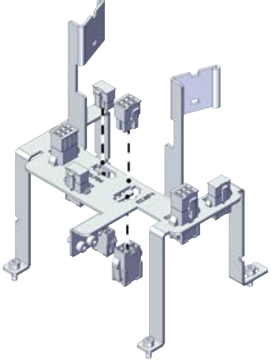


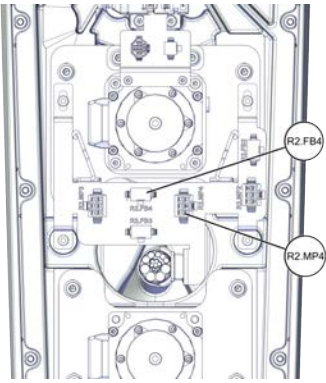

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor

	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



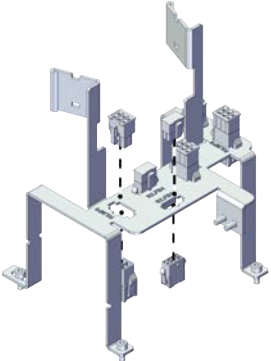

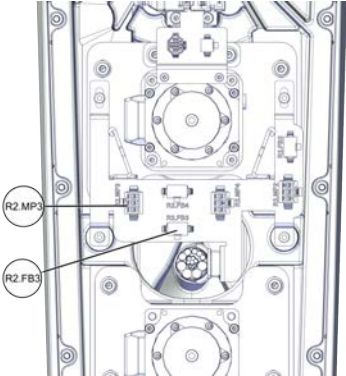

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued



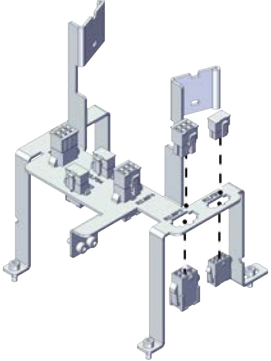

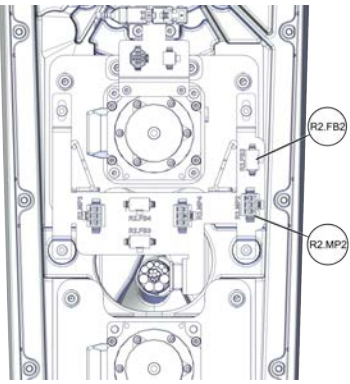

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	



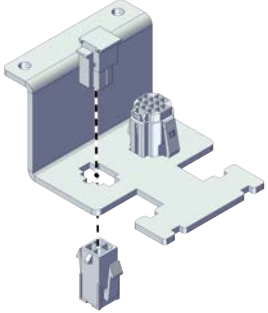

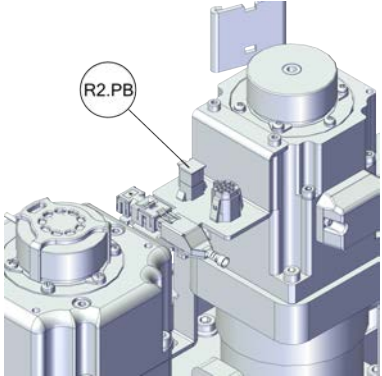

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Reconnecting the connector for PB



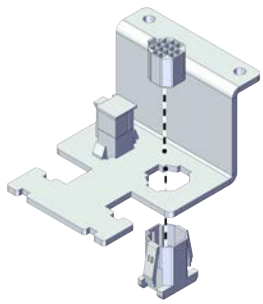

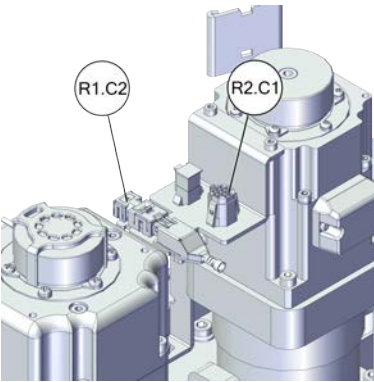


	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued


	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

Continues on next page

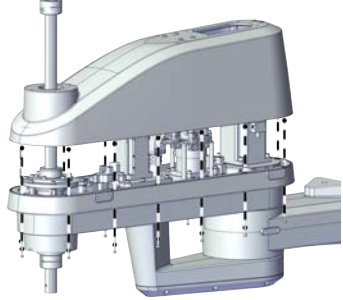
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly

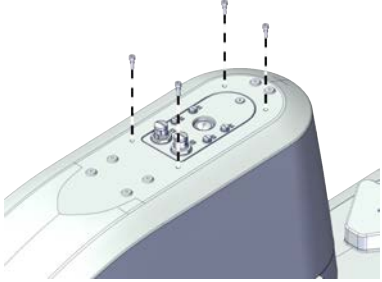

Continued

	Action	Note
7	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000488</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000487</p>
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	<p>Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p>	

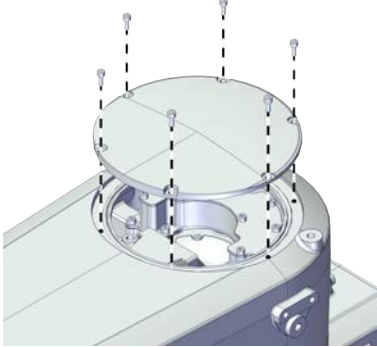
Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


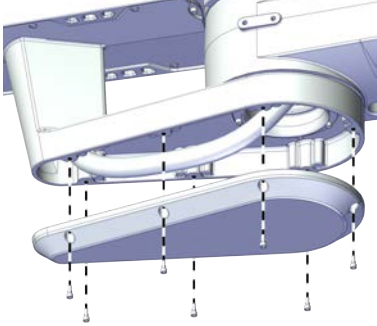
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

Refitting the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cover.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000499</p>
3	Refit the screws.	



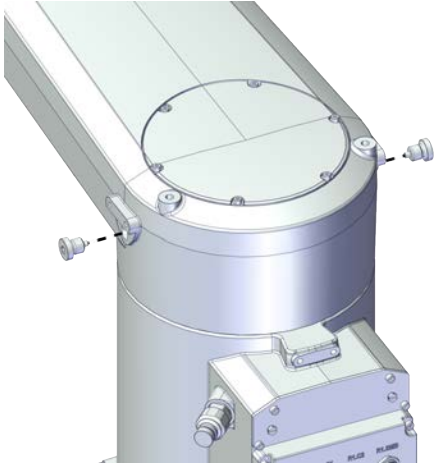


Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gear unit sub-assembly


Continued

Refilling oil to axis-1 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Open the oil plugs, one for filling and the other for venting.	 xx2300000547
4	 WARNING Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	Refill the gearbox with oil.  Note The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.	Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .
6	Refit the oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Continues on next page

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

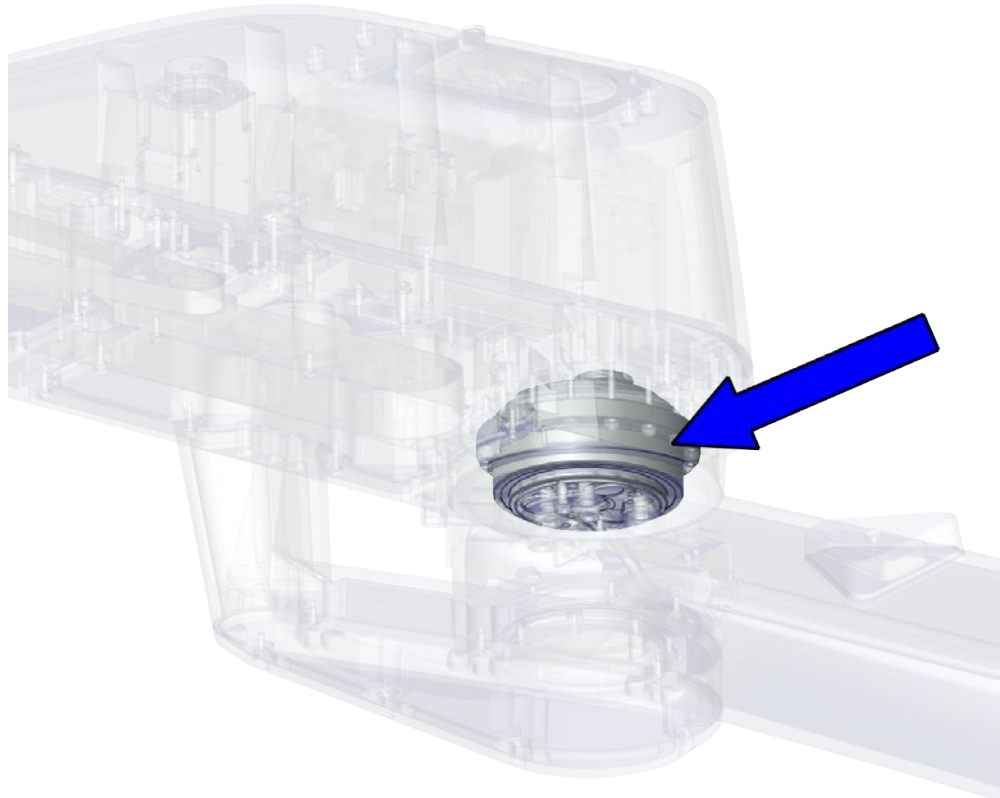
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Location of the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

The axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300000485

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 930 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly	3HAC081649-001	Without tube&bolt; flange screw. Gearbox NTS RV-25N-63

Required tools and equipment

Equipment	Article number	Note
Standard toolkit	-	Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 596 .

Continues on next page

Equipment	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
Sonic tension meter	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
Handheld dynamometer	-	Used for measuring the timing belt tension.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Cable straps	-	
Grease	3HAC029132-001	FM 222

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

	Action	Note
1	<p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. 	
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p>	<p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 565.</p>
	<p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


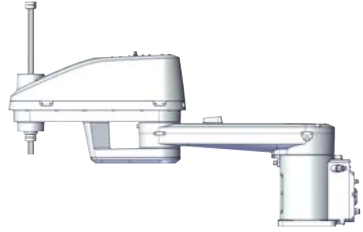

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued


Removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly.

Preparations before removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly


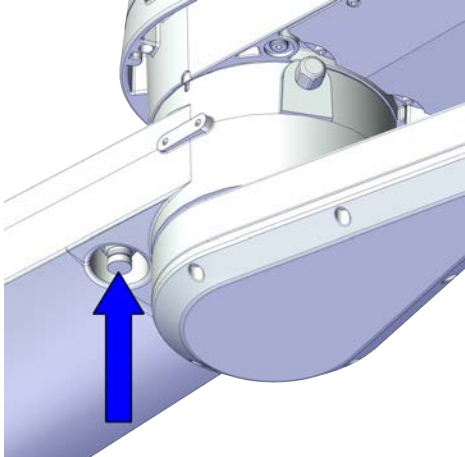
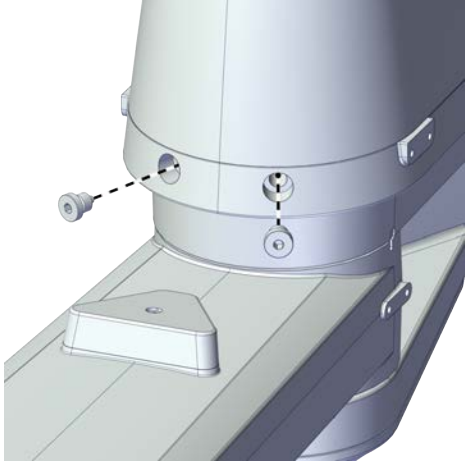

	Action	Note
1	Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.	
2	<p>If there is no enough space for the maintenance work, remove the robot from the wall and place it on the maintenance bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Do not lay down the robot during the transportation, always keep it straight. If the robot lay down in any situation, the grease may come out from gearbox.</p>	
3	Jog all axes to zero position.	 <p>xx2300000486</p>
4	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>	

Draining oil of axis-2 gearbox

	Action	Note
1	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued



	Action	Note
2	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.</p>	
3	<p>Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the oil plug, draining.</p>	 <p>xx2300000548</p>
4	<p>Plug a clean pipe to the oil plug, draining, with the other end to the oil collecting vessel.</p>	
5	<p>Remove the oil plug, draining.</p>	 <p>xx2300000549</p>
6	<p> WARNING</p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See Decommissioning on page 585 for more information.</p>	

Continues on next page


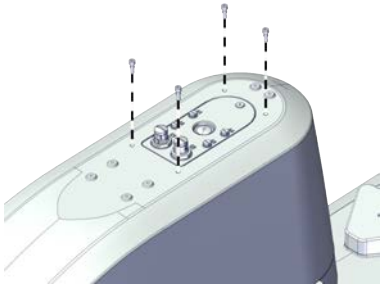
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly


Continued

	Action	Note
7	Drain the gearbox oil.	 Note Draining is time-consuming. Elapsed time varies depending on the temperature of the oil.
8	Remove and clean the pipe after the oil is drained.  Note There will be some oil left in the gearbox after draining.	
9	Refit oil plugs.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm

Removing the process hub screws

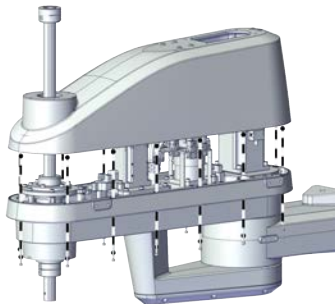
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws locking the process hub.	For robots with protection class IP30  <small>xx2300000487</small>
3	Push the process hub to the outer arm.	

Removing the cover of the outer arm


	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the cover of the outer arm and remove the cover.	For robots with protection class IP30  xx2300000488

Disconnecting the air hoses, C1 cabling and C2 cabling (if equipped)

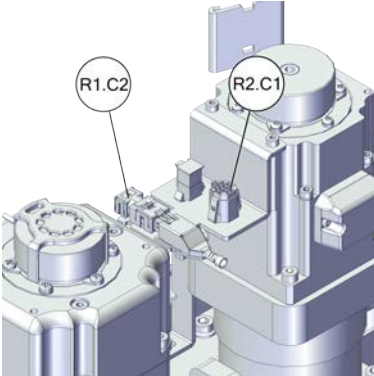



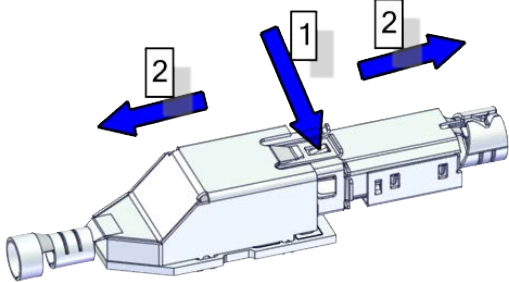

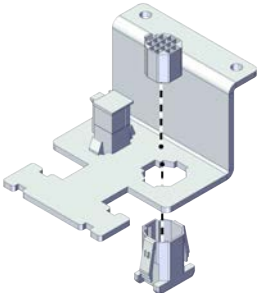
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Disconnect the air hoses from the L-shaped connectors.	

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly


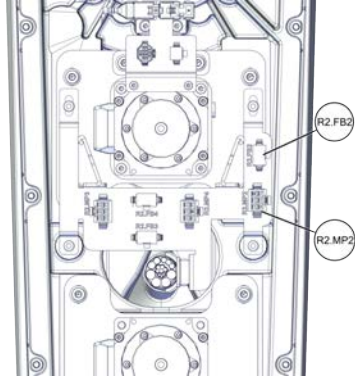

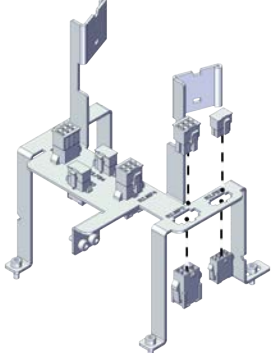
Continued

	Action	Note
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 	
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Cut the cable straps for the R1.C2 at the same time.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the R1.C2 (for C2 cabling).</p> 	<p>xx2300000542</p>
5	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>


Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor

	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p>  <p>Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor

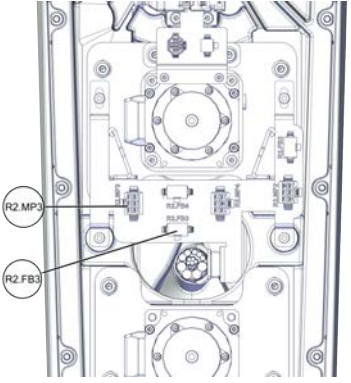

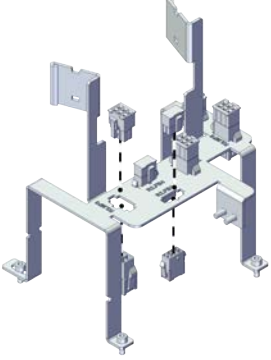
	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	

Continues on next page

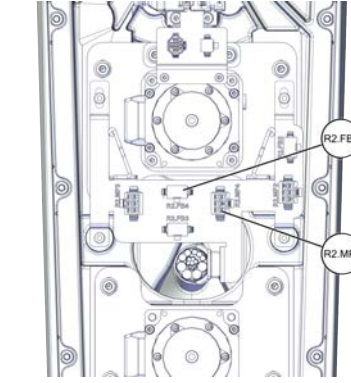
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued


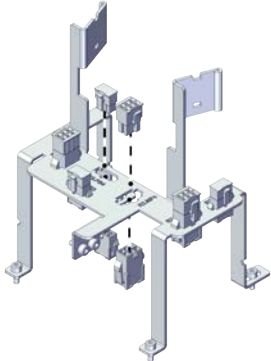
	Action	Note
2	Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 	 <p>xx2300000491</p>
3	Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000494</p>

Disconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor


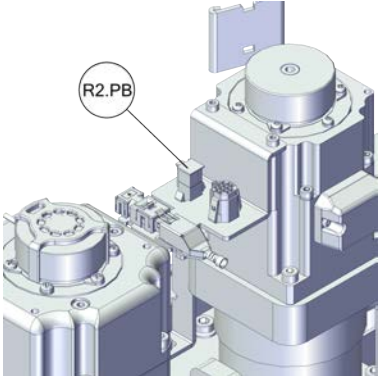

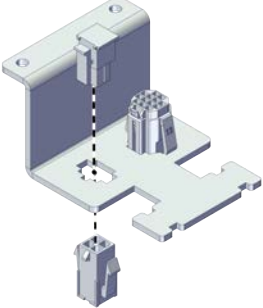
	Action	Note
1	Disconnect the axis-4 motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 	 <p>xx2300000492</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Disconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB 	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the bracket.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>



Continues on next page

5 Repair



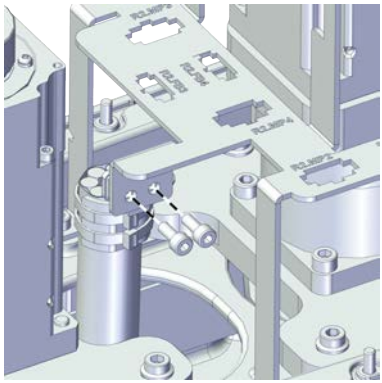

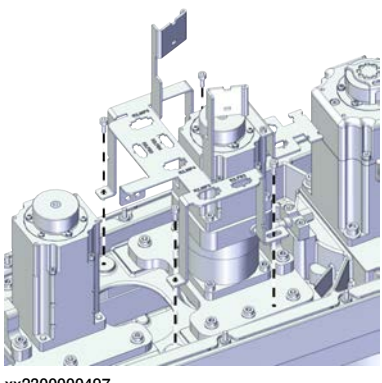
5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the process hub

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Take out the process hub.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	


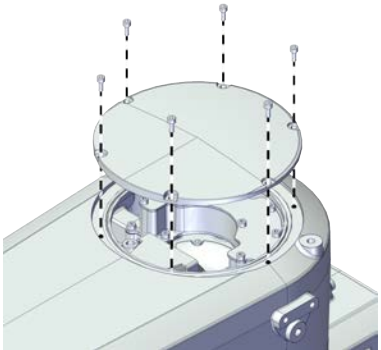
Removing the outer arm cable ferrule and bracket

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the bracket to the cable ferrule to release the cable ferrule with cable.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000496</p>
3	Remove the screws on the bracket.  Note The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.	 <p>xx2300000497</p>

Continues on next page


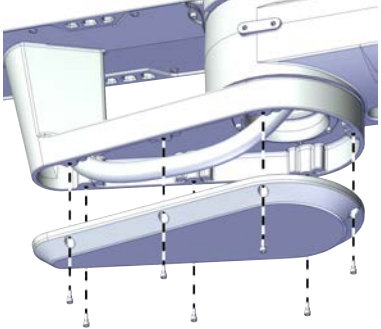
5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

Removing the axis-1 cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
3	Remove the cover.	

xx2300000498

Removing the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300) 
3	Remove the cover.	

xx2300000499



Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the bracket of the cable arm



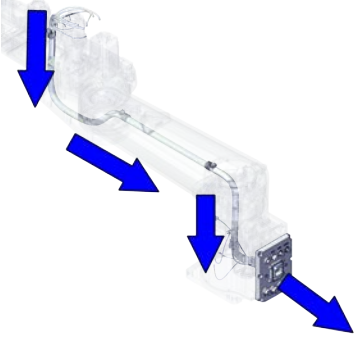

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the bracket from the cable arm to release the cable.	 xx2300000506

Removing the main harness from the cable arm position


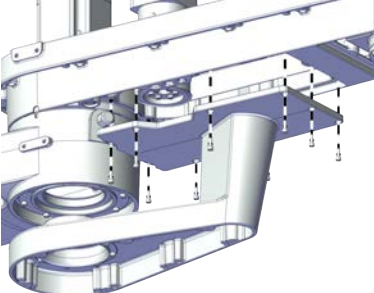
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Pull the main harness out of the outer arm from lower of the cable arm.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000507</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000612</p>
3	<p>Pull the main harness out of the cable arm from the inner arm.</p>	

Removing the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>	
2	<p>Remove the screws locking the cable arm to the outer arm.</p>	 <p>xx2300000516</p>
3	<p>Remove the cable arm by pulling out from the inner arm bearing.</p>	



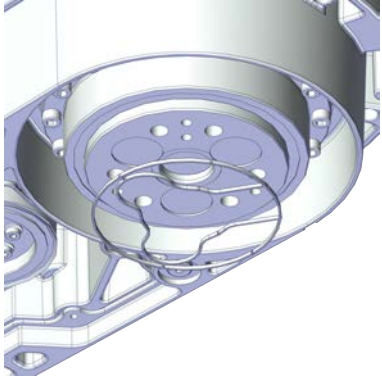
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Removing the outer arm assembly

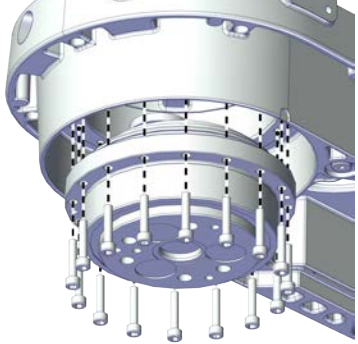
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Remove the screws on the axis -2 gear inside the inner arm.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Remove the outer arm assembly slightly.	 xx2300000517
4	Remove the gear gasket on the axis-2 gear unit.	 xx2300000603

Removing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly from the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	

Continues on next page



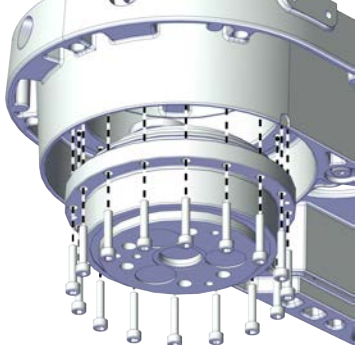
5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
2	Remove the screws on the gear to the outer arm.	For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)  xx2300000606
3	Remove the gear unit.	

Refitting the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly.

Refitting the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly to the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	 CAUTION Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.	
2	Refit the gear unit according to the location screws.  Tip When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M5x25 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 7 Nm ±3% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
3	Refit the screws.	 xx2300000606


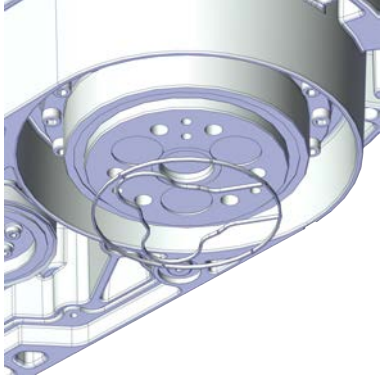



Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

Refitting the outer arm to the inner arm

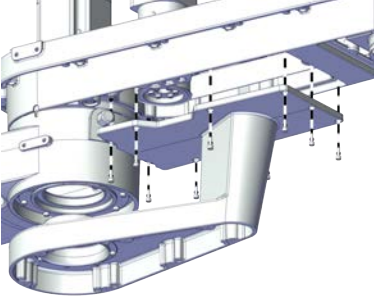
	Action	Note
1	 CAUTION Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.	
2	Refit the gear gasket to the axis-2 gear unit.	 xx2300000603
3	Refit the outer arm to the inner arm.  Tip When the gear unit is in the right position, you can hear a clear "Click".	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M10x25 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (6 pcs) Tightening torque:55 Nm Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M6x20 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (3 pcs) Tightening torque:10 Nm
4	Refit the screws.  Note The two screw holes under the axis-2 belt location are left empty.	 xx2300000517

Refitting the cable arm


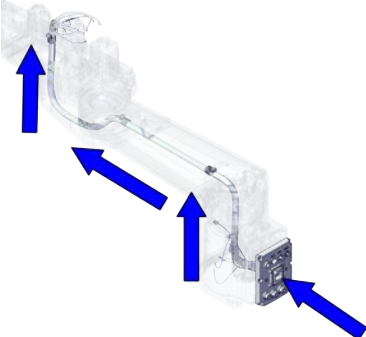
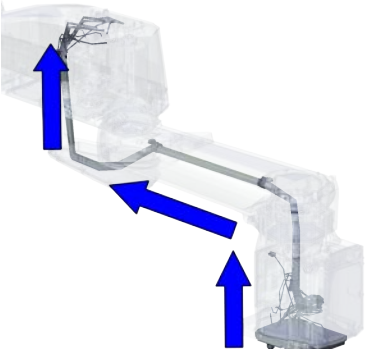
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cable arm to the inner arm and outer arm.	

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
3	Secure the cable arm to the outer arm with the screws.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (8 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3.3 Nm ± 3%</p>  <p>xx2300000516</p>

Inserting the main harness through the inner arm position

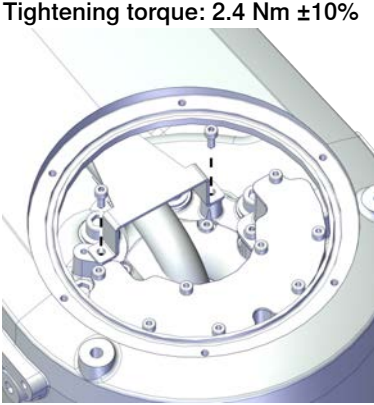
	Action	Note
1	Secure the cable with the cable ferrule to the two brackets in inner arm.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) x 2</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ± 10%</p>
2	<p>Insert the main harness into the cable arm through the inner arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>

Continues on next page


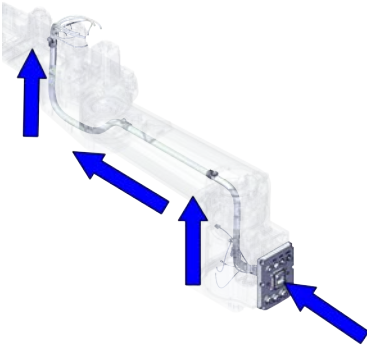

5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
3	Secure the bracket to the inner arm.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm10%</p>  <p>xx2300000508</p>

Inserting the main harness through the cable arm

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the main harness into the outer arm through the cable arm.</p>  <p>Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p>	<p>For rear outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000510</p> <p>For underneath outlet cable version:</p>  <p>xx2300000610</p>



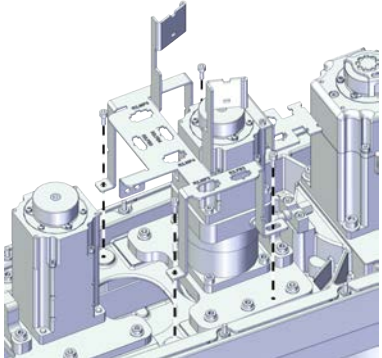
Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	Secure the bracket to the inner arm.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000506</p>

Refitting the cable ferrule and bracket in the outer arm






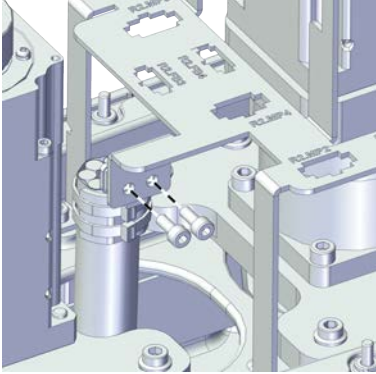
	Action	Note
1	Lay the internal harness in a natural state without distortion.	
2	<p>Refit the bracket.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Do not secure it with the screws before the cable ferrule installed well.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000497</p>

Continues on next page



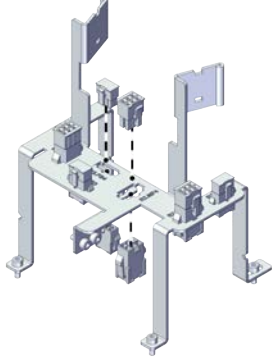
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued



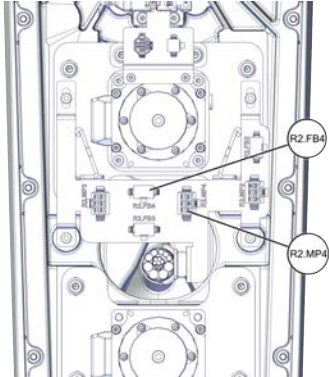

	Action	Note
3	<p>Secure the cable ferrule to the bracket with the screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The air hoses should face the process hub side.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The position with wrapped tape is the marked position for the cable ferrule.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Align all the cable ferrules so that the cable is in a natural bending position to avoid twisting.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm ±10%</p>  <p>xx2300000496</p>

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-4 motor



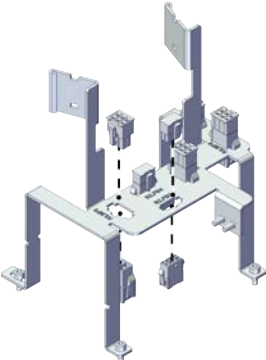

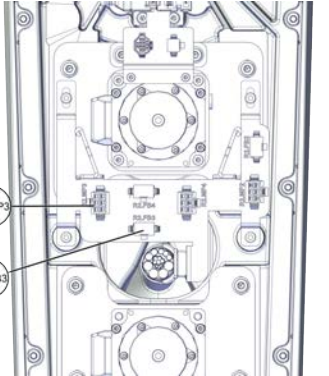
	Action	Note
	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000495</p>

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued

	Action	Note
1	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP4 • R2.FB4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000492</p>
2	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-4 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-3 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000494</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP3 • R2.FB3 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000491</p>

Continues on next page



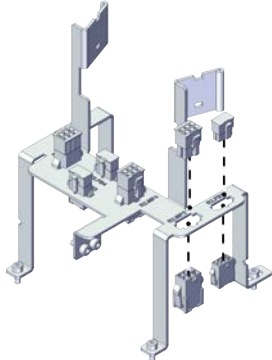

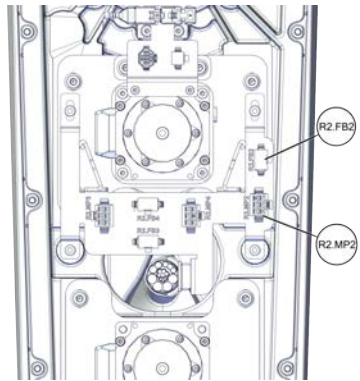

5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued



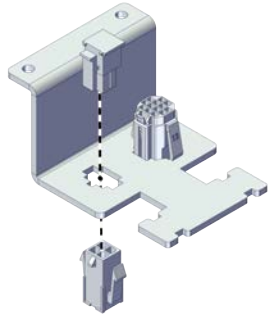

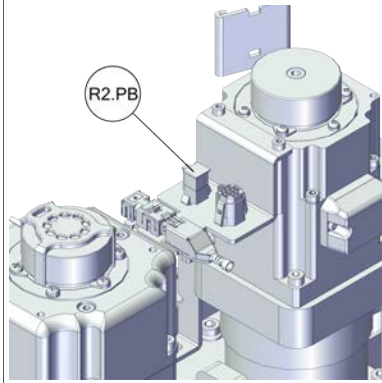

	Action	Note
3	<p>Route the cabling on the axis-3 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the connectors for axis-2 motor


	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the connectors to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanliness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000493</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.MP2 • R2.FB2 <p>See the number markings on the connectors of the main harness for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that the correct connectors are matched before reconnecting the connectors. Otherwise the robot motor may be broken.</p>	 <p>xx2300000490</p>
3	<p>Route the cabling behind the axis-2 motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connector for PB

	Action	Note
1	<p>Insert the female head of the PB connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000545</p>
2	<p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.PB <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000543</p>
3	<p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)



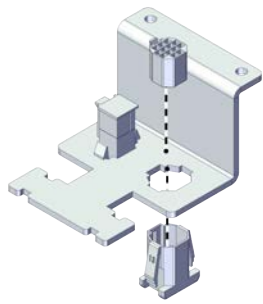

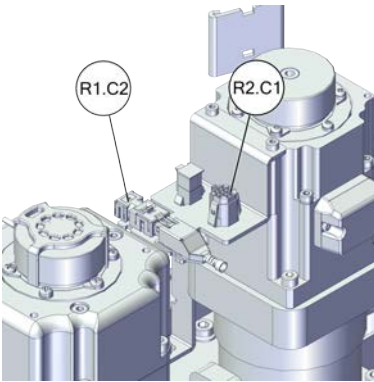


	Action	Note
1	<p>Route the air hoses on the process hub behind the bracket.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p>	

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
2	<p>Insert the female head of the C1 cabling connector to the bracket accordingly.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The mistake proofing measure has been applied to the connectors, the connectors may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The harness are not visible due to the cleanness requirements of the illustration. They are still existing inside the cable ferrule in the actual situation.</p>	 <p>xx2300000544</p>
3	<p>For robots with C1 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R2.C1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	 <p>xx2300000542</p>
4	<p>For robots with C2 cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R1.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same L-shaped connector.</p>	
5	<p>Secure the C2 cabling to the C2 bracket with the cable straps.</p>	
6	<p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern with the L-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses.</p> <p>The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p>	

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly
Continued


	Action	Note
7	Route and secure the cabling with cable straps if needed.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.	

Refitting the cover of the outer arm

	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)
2	Refit the screws.	

xx2300000488

Securing the process hub to outer arm cover

	Action	Note
1	Install a screw to the reserved hole on the process hub.	
2	Grip the screw to install the process hub.	
3	Secure the process hub to the outer arm cover with the screws.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.	Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm 10% For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)

xx2300000487

Continues on next page

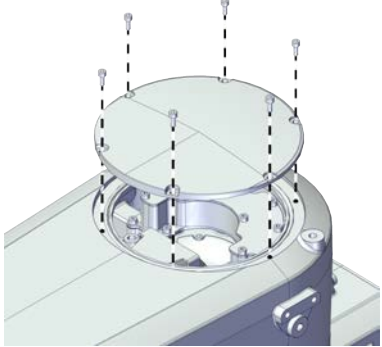
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly


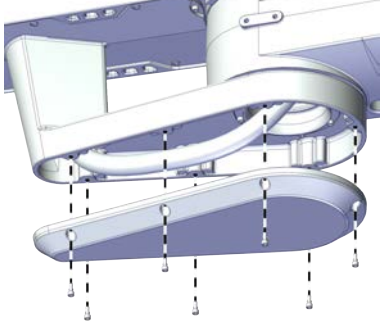
Continued

	Action	Note
4	Remove the screw.	

Refitting the axis-1 cover




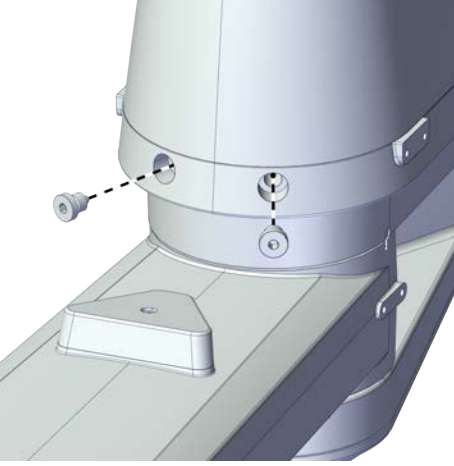



	Action	Note
1	Refit the cover.	<p>Screw: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000498</p>
2	Refit the screws.	

Refitting the cable arm cover

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.	
2	Refit the cover.	<p>Screws: Hex socket head cap screw M4x10 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm \pm3%</p> <p>For robots with protection class IP30 (option 3350-300)</p>  <p>xx2300000499</p>
3	Refit the screws.	

Continues on next page

Refilling oil to axis-2 gearbox


	Action	Note
1	 WARNING Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30 .	
2	 CAUTION The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.	
3	Open the upper oil plug.  Note The lower oil plug has to be closed; otherwise, the oil may leak before required oil amount is filled.	 <p>xx2300000549</p>
4	 WARNING Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • damage seals and gaskets • completely press out seals and gaskets • prevent the robot from moving freely. 	
5	Refill the gearbox with oil.  Note The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.  CAUTION Oil filling must be slow to make sure air venting is fluent.	Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gear unit sub-assembly

Continued

	Action	Note
6	Refit the oil plug.	Tightening torque: 10 Nm
7	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run.	

Concluding procedure

	Action	Note
1	Recalibrate the robot.	Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 553 .
2	 DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 55 .	

6 Calibration

6.1 Introduction to calibration

6.1.1 Introduction and calibration terminology

Calibration information

This chapter includes general information about the recommended calibration methods and also the detailed procedures for updating the revolution counters, checking the calibration position etc.

Detailed instructions of how to perform Axis Calibration are given on the FlexPendant during the calibration procedure. To prepare calibration with Axis Calibration method, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 564](#).

Calibration terminology

Term	Definition
Calibration method	A collective term for several methods that might be available for calibrating the ABB robot. Each method contains calibration routines.
Synchronization position	Known position of the complete robot where the angle of each axis can be checked against visual synchronization marks.
Calibration position	Known position of the complete robot that is used for calibration of the robot.
Standard calibration	A generic term for all calibration methods that aim to move the robot to calibration position.
Fine calibration	A calibration routine that generates a new zero position of the robot.
Reference calibration	<p>A calibration routine that in the first step generates a reference to current zero position of the robot. The same calibration routine can later on be used to recalibrate the robot back to the same position as when the reference was stored.</p> <p>This routine is more flexible compared to fine calibration and is used when tools and process equipment are installed.</p> <p>Requires that a reference is created before being used for recalibrating the robot.</p> <p>Requires that the robot is dressed with the same tools and process equipment during calibration as during creation of the reference values.</p>
Update revolution counter	A calibration routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis.
Synchronization mark	Visual marks on the robot axes. When marks are aligned, the robot is in synchronization position.

6 Calibration

6.1.2 Calibration methods

6.1.2 Calibration methods

Overview

This section specifies the different types of calibration and the calibration methods that are supplied by ABB.

Types of calibration

Type of calibration	Description	Calibration method
Standard calibration	The calibrated robot is positioned at calibration position. Standard calibration data is found on the SMB (serial measurement board) or EIB in the robot.	Axis Calibration
Absolute accuracy calibration (optional)	Based on standard calibration, and besides positioning the robot at synchronization position, the Absolute accuracy calibration also compensates for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Mechanical tolerances in the robot structure• Deflection due to load Absolute accuracy calibration focuses on positioning accuracy in the Cartesian coordinate system for the robot. Absolute accuracy calibration data is found on the serial measurement board (SMB) or other robot memory. A robot calibrated with Absolute accuracy has the option information printed on its name plate (OmniCore). To regain 100% Absolute accuracy performance, the robot must be recalibrated for absolute accuracy after repair or maintenance that affects the mechanical structure.	CalibWare

Brief description of calibration methods

Axis Calibration method

Axis Calibration is a standard calibration method for calibration of IRB 930. It is the recommended method in order to achieve proper performance.

The following routines are available for the Axis Calibration method:

- Fine calibration
- Update revolution counters
- Reference calibration

The calibration equipment for Axis Calibration is delivered as a toolkit.

An introduction to the calibration method is given in this manual, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 564](#).

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Continues on next page

CalibWare - Absolute Accuracy calibration

The CalibWare tool guides through the calibration process and calculates new compensation parameters. This is further detailed in the *Application manual - CalibWare Field*.

If a service operation is done to a robot with the option Absolute Accuracy, a new absolute accuracy calibration is required in order to establish full performance. For most cases after replacements that do not include taking apart the robot structure, standard calibration is sufficient.

The Absolute Accuracy option varies according to the robot mounting position. This is printed on the robot name plate for each robot. The robot must be in the correct mounting position when it is recalibrated for absolute accuracy.

References

Article numbers for the calibration tools are listed in the section [Special tools on page 597](#).

6 Calibration

6.1.3 When to calibrate

6.1.3 When to calibrate

When to calibrate

The system must be calibrated if any of the following situations occur.

The resolver values are changed

If resolver values are changed, the robot must be re-calibrated using the calibration methods supplied by ABB. Calibrate the robot carefully with standard calibration, according to information in this manual.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it is also recommended, but not always necessary to calibrate for new absolute accuracy.

The resolver values will change when parts affecting the calibration position are replaced on the robot, for example motors or parts of the transmission.

The revolution counter memory is lost

If the revolution counter memory is lost, the counters must be updated. See [Updating revolution counters on page 560](#). This will occur when:

- The battery is discharged
- A resolver error occurs
- The signal between a resolver and measurement board is interrupted
- A robot axis is moved with the control system disconnected

The revolution counters must also be updated after the robot and controller are connected at the first installation.

The robot is rebuilt

If the robot is rebuilt, for example, after a crash or when the reachability of a robot is changed, it needs to be re-calibrated for new resolver values.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it needs to be calibrated for new absolute accuracy.

6.2 Synchronization marks and axis movement directions

6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

Introduction

This section shows the position of the synchronization marks and the synchronization position for each axis.

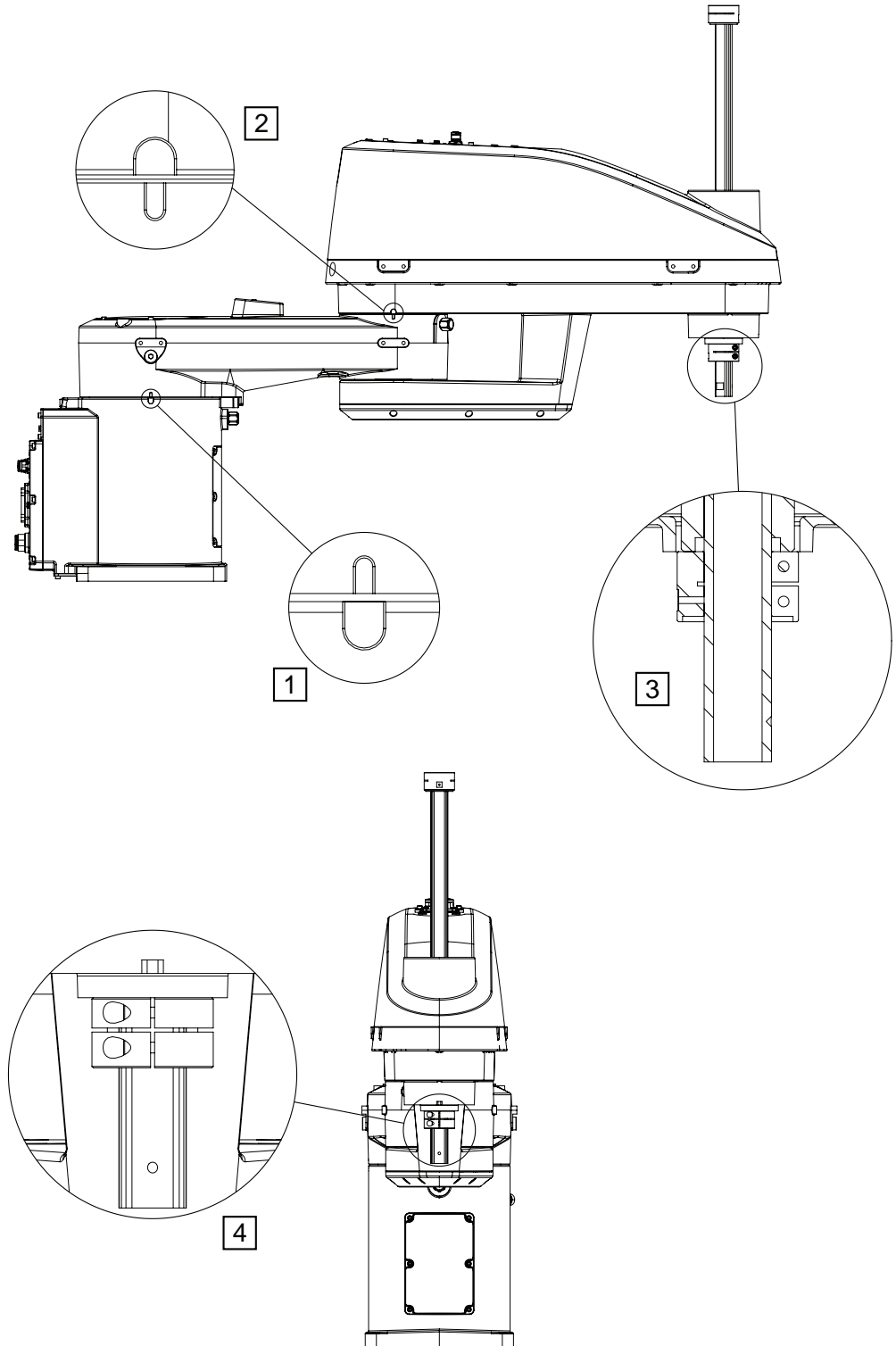
Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

Continued

Synchronization marks, IRB 930



xx230000573

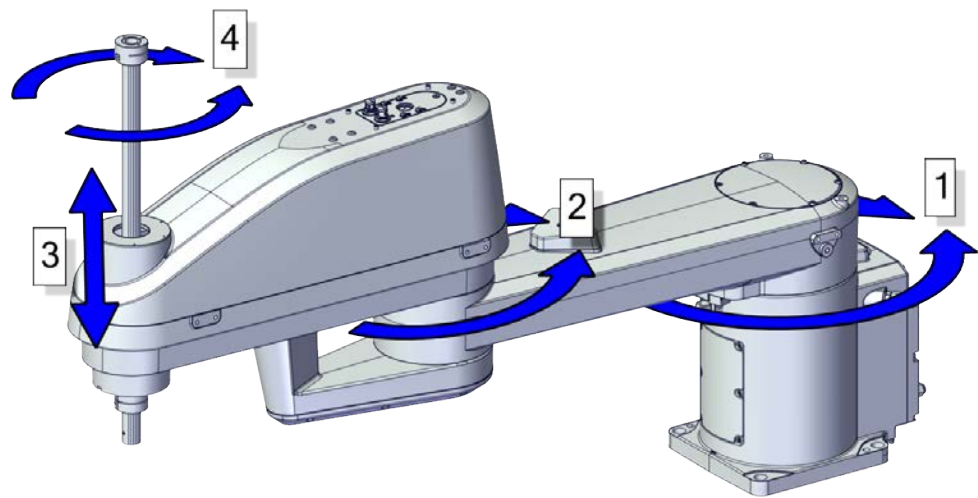
6.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

Overview

When calibrating, the axis must consistently be run towards the calibration position in the same direction in order to avoid position errors caused by backlash in gears and so on. Positive directions are shown in the graphic below.

Calibration service routines will handle the calibration movements automatically and these might be different from the positive directions shown below.

Manual movement directions



xx230000574

6 Calibration

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

6.3 Updating revolution counters

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

Introduction

This section describes how to do a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Coupled axes

When updating the revolution counters for a coupled axis, also the axis it is coupled to needs to be at its synchronization position for the update to be correct; i.e. axis 4 needs to be in synchronization position when updating axis 3.

With reversed coupled joints, the relationship is the opposite, i.e. axis 4 needs to be in synchronization position to update axis 3.

Coupled axes	IRB 930
Axis 4, 3	x

Step 1 - Manually running the manipulator to the synchronization position

Use this procedure to manually run the manipulator to the synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Select axis-by-axis motion mode.	
2	Jog the manipulator to align the synchronization marks.	See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 557 .
3	When all axes are positioned, update the revolution counter.	Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant on page 562 .

Continues on next page

Correct synchronization position of axes 3 and 4

When jogging the manipulator to synchronization position, it is extremely important to make sure that axes 3 and 4 are positioned correctly.



Note

At delivery the manipulator is in the correct position. Do NOT shift axis 3 or rotate axis 4 at power up before the revolution counters are updated.

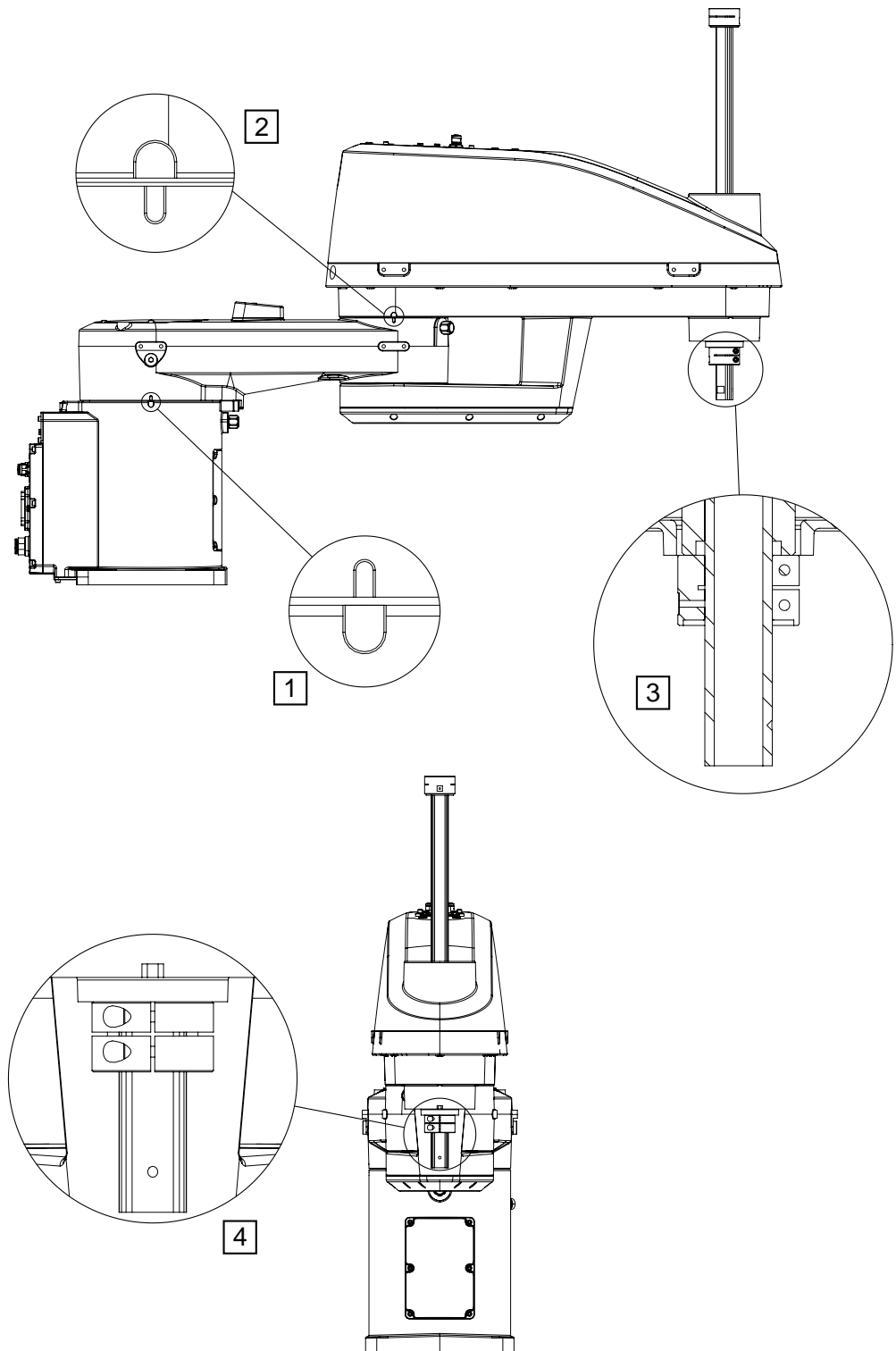
If axis 4 is rotated one or more turns from its calibration position before updating the revolution counter, the correct calibration position will be lost due to non-integer gear ratio. This will further affect the calibration position of axis 3.

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

Continued



xx2300000573

Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant






Note

Revolution counters of axes 3 and 4 must be updated together.

Continues on next page

Use this procedure to update the revolution counter with the FlexPendant (OmniCore).

	Action
1	On the start screen, tap Calibrate .
2	<p>Select Calibration from the menu. The Mechanical Units page displays a list of available mechanical units.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>This step is required only if you are not already in the Mechanical Unit page when you open Calibrate.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The Mechanical Unit page is displayed only if there are more than one mechanical unit available. Otherwise, the calibration summary page for the available mechanical unit is displayed.</p>
3	Select the mechanical unit for which revolution counter need to be updated.
4	The calibration summary page for the selected mechanical unit is displayed. Calibration method used at factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used during last field calibration.
5	Tap Calibration Methods on the right pane. The calibration options are displayed.
6	Tap Revolution Counters .
7	In the Selection column select the axes for which revolution counters need to be updated.
8	<p>Tap Update. A dialog box is displayed, warning that the updating operation cannot be undone:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap Update to proceed with updating the revolution counters. • Tap Cancel to cancel updating the revolution counters. <p>Tapping Update and a confirmation window is displayed.</p>
9	<p>Tap OK. The revolution counter for the selected axes is updated.</p>
10	<p> CAUTION</p> <p>If a revolution counter is incorrectly updated, it will cause incorrect manipulator positioning, which in turn may cause damage or injury!</p> <p>Check the synchronization position very carefully after each update. See Checking the synchronization position on page 584.</p>

6 Calibration

6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

6.4 Calibrating with Axis Calibration method

6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

Instructions for Axis Calibration procedure given on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

This manual contains a brief description of the method, additional information to the information given on the FlexPendant, article number for the tools and images of where to fit the calibration tools on the robot.

Overview of the Axis Calibration procedure

The Axis Calibration procedure applies to all axes, and is performed on one axis at the time. The robot axes are both manually and automatically moved into position, as instructed on the FlexPendant.

A fixed calibration pin/bushing is installed on each robot axis at delivery.

The Axis Calibration procedure described roughly:

- 1 A removable calibration tool is inserted by the operator into a calibration bushing on the axis chosen for calibration, according to instructions on the FlexPendant.



WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.



WARNING

The calibration tool must be fully inserted into the calibration bushing, until the steel spring ring snaps into place.

- 2 During the calibration procedure, RobotWare moves the robot axis chosen for calibration so that the calibration tools get into contact. RobotWare records values of the axis position and repeats the coming-in-contact procedure several times to get an exact value of the axis position.



WARNING

Risk of pinching! The contact force for large robots can be up to 150 kg. Keep a safe distance to the robot.

- 3 The axis position is stored in RobotWare with an active choice from the operator.

Continues on next page

Routines in the calibration procedure

The following routines are available in the Axis Calibration procedure, given at the beginning of the procedure on the FlexPendant.

Fine calibration routine

Choose this routine to calibrate the robot when there are no tools, process cabling or equipment fitted to the robot.

Reference calibration routine

Choose this routine to create reference values and to calibrate the robot when the robot is dressed with tools, process cabling or other equipment.



Note

When calibrating the robot with the reference calibration routine, the robot must be dressed with the same tools, process cabling and any other equipment as when the reference values were created.



Note

When using reference calibration with some tools, typically large or flexible tools, oscillations in the robot can cause issues leading to failure of the calibration.

If calibrating the robot with reference calibration there must be reference values created before repair is made to the robot, if values are not already available. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. The reference values contain positions of all axes, torque of axes and technical data about the tool installed. A benefit with reference calibration is that the current state of the robot is stored and not the state when the robot left the ABB factory. The reference value will be named according to tool name, date etc.

Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.

When reference calibration is performed, the robot is restored to the status given by the reference values.

Update revolution counters

Choose this routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Validation

In the mentioned routines, it is also possible to validate the calibration data.

Position of robot axes

The robot axes should be positioned close to 0 degrees before commencing the calibration program. The axis chosen for calibration is then automatically run by the calibration program to its exact calibration position during the calibration procedure.

It is possible to position some of the other axes in positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are allowed to be jogged is given on the FlexPendant.

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

Continued

These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window. Also the following table shows the dependencies between the axes.

Requirements for axis positioning during calibration

Required position of axis	Axis to calibrate					
	Axis 1	Axis 2	Axis 3	Axis 4	Axis 5	Axis 6
Axis 1	-	*				
Axis 2	*	-				

-	Axis to be calibrated
*	Unrestricted. Axis is allowed to be jogged to other position than 0 degrees.
0	Axis must be put in position 0 degrees.

System containing SafeMove

SafeMove will lose its synchronization to the controller if a new calibration is done. New calibration values have to be downloaded to SafeMove, and a new SafeMove calibration has to be done. Make sure that the user rights admit to change the safety settings and to synchronize SafeMove.

6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

Calibration tool set

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.

The calibration tool will eventually break from fatigue after longer period of use and then needs to be replaced. There is no risk for bad calibrations as long as the calibration tool is in one piece.



WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

Examining the calibration tool

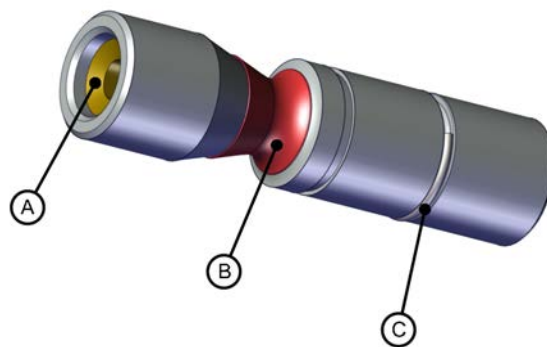
Check prior to usage

Before using the calibration tool, make sure that the tube insert, the plastic protection and the steel spring ring are present.



WARNING

If any part is missing or damaged, the tool must be replaced immediately.



xx1500001914

A	Tube insert
B	Plastic protection
C	Steel spring ring

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

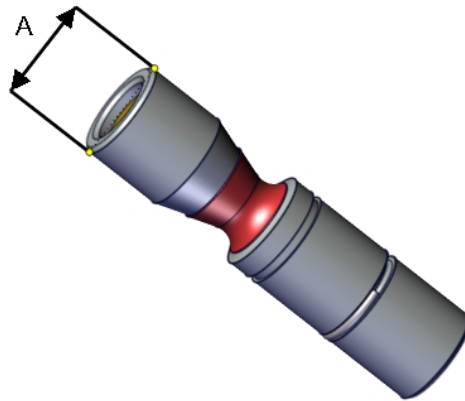
6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

Continued

Periodic check of the calibration tool

If including the calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within $\varnothing 12g4$ mm, $\varnothing 8g4$ mm or $\varnothing 6g5$ mm (depending on calibration tool size).
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.



xx150000951

A	Outer diameter
---	----------------

Identifying the calibrating tools

It is possible to make the calibration tool identifiable with, for example, an RFID chip. The procedure of how to install an RFID chip is described below.



Note

The tool identifier is NOT delivered from ABB, it is a customized solution.

	Action	Note
1	<p>It is possible to use any RFID solution, with the correct dimensions. ABB has verified function on some suppliers fulfilling the requirements of NFC compatible devices (13.56 Mhz) according to ISO 14443 or ISO 15693.</p> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The maximum dimensions on the RFID chip must not exceed $\varnothing 7.9$ mm x 8.0 mm, $\varnothing 5.9$ mm x 8.0 mm or $\varnothing 3.9$ mm x 8.0 mm (depending on calibration tool size).</p> </div>	
2	<p>There is a cavity on one end of the calibration tool in which the RFID chip can be installed.</p> <p>Install the RFID chip according to supplier instructions.</p> <p>Install the chip in flush with the tool end.</p>	

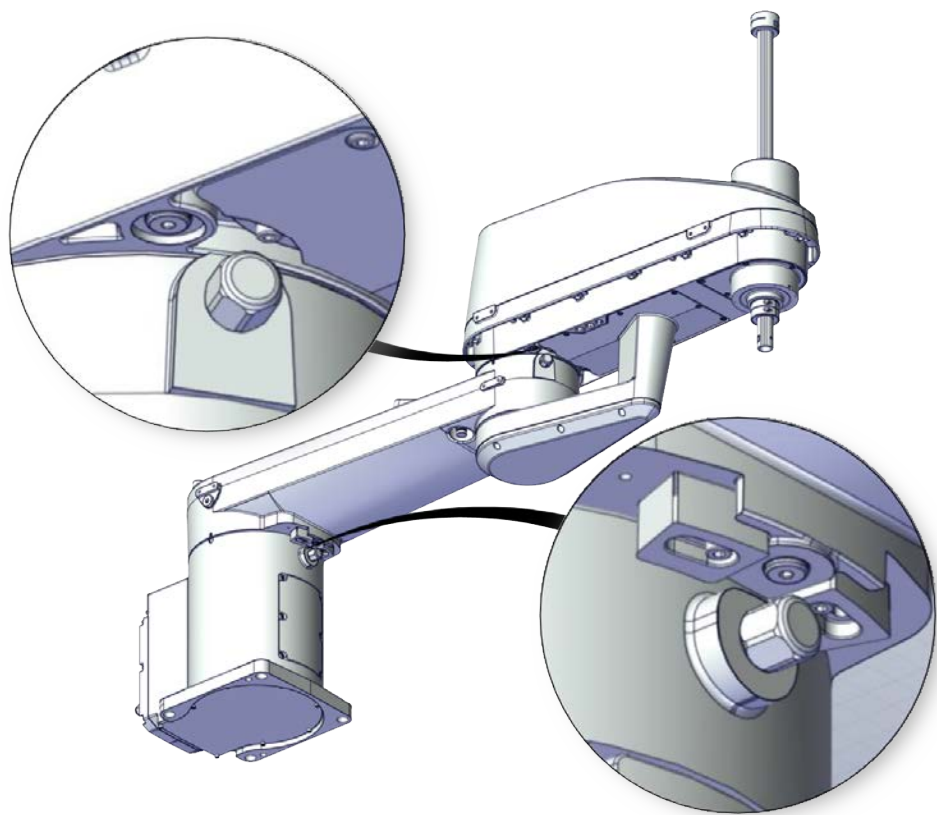
6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

Location of fixed calibration items

This section shows how the robot is equipped with items for installation of calibration tools for Axis Calibration (fixed calibration pins and/or bushings). Installed calibration tools are not shown.

A fixed calibration pin and a bushing for the movable calibration tool are located on each axis as follows.

If there is not enough space on an axis to install a fixed calibration pin, the axis is equipped with two bushings instead, for installation of two calibration tools when calibration is carried out. This is shown in the figure.



xx230000463

Spare parts

When calibration is not being performed, a protective cover and an o-ring should always be installed on the fixed calibration pin as well as a protective plug, included a sealing, in the bushing. Replace damaged parts with new.

Spare part	Article number	Note
Protective plug for bushing	3HAC053237-002	Replace if damaged or missing.

6 Calibration

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Required tools

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.



WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration holes may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

Equipment, etc.	Article number	Note
Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration	3HAC074119-001	Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.

Required consumables

Consumable	Article number	Note
Clean cloth	-	

Spare parts

Spare part	Article number	Note
Protection cover and plug set	3HAC059487-001	Contains replacement calibration pin covers and protective plugs for the bushing.

Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure.

After the calibration method has been started on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

- 1 Choose calibration routine. The routines are described in [Routines in the calibration procedure on page 565](#).
- 2 Choose which axis/axes to calibrate.
- 3 The robot moves to synchronization position.
- 4 Validate the synchronization marks.
- 5 The robot moves to preparation position.
- 6 Remove the protective cover from the fixed pin and the protection plug from the bushing, if any, and install the calibration tool.

Continues on next page

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure



Continued

- 7 The robot performs a measurement sequence by rotating the axis back and forth.
- 8 Remove the calibration tool and reinstall the protective cover on the fixed pin and the protection plug in the bushing, if any.
- 9 The robot moves to verify that the calibration tool is removed.
- 10 Choose whether to save the calibration data or not.

Calibration of the robot is not finished until the calibration data is saved, as last step of the calibration procedure.


Preparation prior to calibration

The calibration procedure is described in the FlexPendant while conducting it.

	Action	Note
1	 DANGER While conducting the calibration, the robot needs to be connected to power. Make sure that the robot's working area is empty, as the robot can make unpredictable movements.	
2	Wipe the calibration tool clean.  Note The calibration method is exact. Dust, dirt or color flakes will affect the calibration value.	Use a clean cloth.

Starting the calibration procedure

Use this procedure to start the Axis Calibration routine on the FlexPendant.

	Action	Note
1	Tap the calibration icon and enter the calibration main page.	
2	All mechanical units connected to the system are shown with their calibration status. Tap the mechanical unit in question.  Note For RobotWare 7, the mechanical unit page is displayed only if there is more than one mechanical unit available.	
3	The calibration method used at ABB factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used for the robot during last field calibration.	The FlexPendant will give all information needed to proceed with Axis Calibration.
4	Valid for RobotWare 7 Tap Calibration Methods on the right pane and then tap Calibration . The software will automatically call for the procedure for the valid calibration method.	

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Continued

	Action	Note
5	Follow the instructions given on the FlexPendant.	A brief overview of the sequence that will be run on the FlexPendant is given in Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant on page 570 .

Restarting an interrupted calibration procedure

If the Axis Calibration procedure is interrupted before the calibration is finished, the RobotWare program needs to be started again. Use this procedure to take required action.

Situation	Action
The three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant has been released during robot movement.	Press and hold the three-position enabling device and press Play .
The RobotWare program is terminated with PP to Main .	Remove the calibration tool, if it is installed, and restart the calibration procedure from the beginning. See Starting the calibration procedure . If the calibration tool is in contact the robot axis needs to be jogged in order to release the calibration tool. Jogging the axis in wrong direction will cause the calibration tool to break. Directions of axis movement is shown in Calibration movement directions for all axes on page 559

Axis Calibration with SafeMove option

To be able to run Axis Calibration, SafeMove needs to be unsynchronized. The Axis Calibration routine recognizes if the robot is equipped with SafeMove and will force SafeMove to unsynchronize automatically.

However, SafeMove may generate other warning messages anytime during the Axis Calibration routine. When a warning message is displayed, tap **Acknowledge** to confirm the unsynchronized state and continue Axis Calibration procedure.

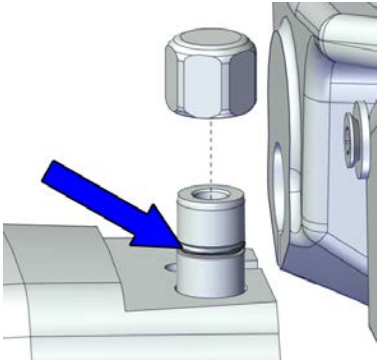
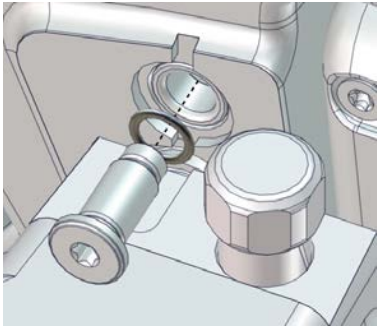


CAUTION

SafeMove must be synchronized after the calibration is completed.

Continues on next page

After calibration

	Action	Note
1	Check the o-ring on the fixed calibration pin. Replace if damaged or missing.	 <p>xx1600002102</p> <p>Protection cover and plug set: 3HAC059487-001.</p>
2	Reinstall the protective cover on the fixed calibration pin on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Replace the cover with new spare part, if missing or damaged.	
3	Reinstall the protective plug and sealing in the bushing on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Ensure that the sealing is not damaged. Replace the plug and the sealing with new spare part, if missing or damaged.	 <p>xx1500000952</p> <p>Protective plug for bushing: 3HAC053237-002.</p>

6.4.5 Reference calibration

Brief introduction to Reference Calibration



Note

Only axes 1 and 2 of the IRB 930 can be calibrated with the reference calibration routine.

Reference calibration is a faster method compared to Fine calibration, as it refers to a previously made calibration.

- 1 Create a backup of the current robot system.
- 2 Check that the active calibration offset values corresponds to the values on the silver label (on the lower arm or the base).
- 3 Jog the manipulator so that all axes are in zero position (ex use `MoveAbsJ` instruction). Check that all axis scales are aligned with calibration marks.
- 4 If the scales differ from calibration marks it might depend on wrong turns of the revolution counters. Make a marker line on the corresponding axis to be able to validate the result of the calibration. If more than one motor revolutions are wrong, the calibration will fail.
- 5 Use a verification position. This is especially recommended if all axes were not aligned with the synchronization marks (step 3). Reuse an existing position that is suitable and accurate so it can be used to validate the repair. Use a position where a deviation in axis calibration gives a big deviation in positioning. Note! Check the position after each repair in one axis.
- 6 Use Reference calibration to save reference values for all axes that is to be replaced. Make sure that the values are saved in RobotStudio or FTP program. The files are located in "Active system folder name/HOME/RefCalibFiles".
- 7 Perform the repair.
- 8 Make sure that the tooling and process equipment are the same as when creating the reference. Use Reference calibration to update the system with new calibration offset value for the repaired axis.
- 9 Check the position against the verification position (step 5).
- 10 Proceed with the repair of the next axis, if necessary, and repeat (step 8-9) for every axis.
- 11 (For system containing SafeMove) Download new calibration values to SafeMove. Use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.
- 12 (For system containing SafeMove) Synchronize SafeMove to activate SafeMove.
- 13 Perform test run.
- 14 Update the label for resolver values with new calibration values.

Continues on next page

Manual tuning of calibration offset

Manual tuning of calibration offset is normally not needed, but can be useful in some situations. The requirement to do manual tuning is that there is a known accurate position, that worked accurately before the repair (step 5, see [Brief introduction to Reference Calibration on page 574](#)).

6 Calibration

6.5.1 Calibration position

6.5 Calibrating the robot

6.5.1 Calibration position

Calibration position

The table below specifies the axis positions.

Axis	
3	2 mm
4	0°

6.5.2 Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2

Calibrating axis 1 and axis 2

Axes 1 and 2 of the IRB 930 are calibrated using the Axis Calibration method. See [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 564](#).



The axis-4 calibration is done by rotating the ball screw spline unit so that the opening gap on the lower mechanical stopper or the ball screw origin point is aligned with the notch on the outer arm cover.

Required consumables

Equipment	Art. no.	Note
Cleaning agent	-	Isopropanol

Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

Moving the robot to calibration position

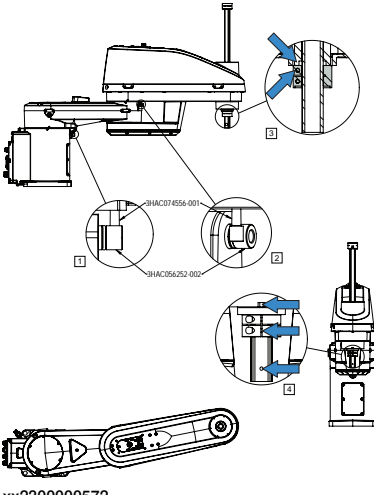
	Action	Note
1	 DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area.	
2	Remove the fitted extra equipment on the robot if it may cause a collision to the arm when push the ball screw to the calibration position.	
3	Turn on the electric power to the robot.	
4	 DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways! Make sure the payload is disassembled or tooling is properly supported; otherwise, fast downward movements of axis 3 may cause severe hits.	

Continues on next page



6 Calibration

6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

Continued

	Action	Note
5	<p>Release the brakes and manually push axis 3 until the upper surface of the lower mechanical stopper touches the lower surface of the ball screw lower nut gently. There should be no pressing force between them.</p> <p>When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision.</p>	<p>How to release the brakes is detailed in Manually releasing the brakes on page 58.</p>  <p>xx2300000572</p>
6	<p>Release the brakes and manually rotate axis 4 until the opening gap on the lower mechanical stopper or the ball screw origin point is aligned with the notch on the outer arm cover.</p> <p>When doing this, pay attention to robot pose in order to avoid arm collision.</p>	
7	<p>When the axes are in position, release the brake release button to activate the brakes again.</p>	


Performing the fine calibration procedure

	Action	Note
1	<p>On the start screen, tap Calibrate.</p>	
2	<p>Select Calibration from the menu.</p> <p>The Mechanical Units page displays a list of available mechanical units.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>This step is required only if you are not already in the Mechanical Unit page when you open Calibrate.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The Mechanical Unit page is displayed only if there are more than one mechanical unit available. Otherwise, the calibration summary page for the available mechanical unit is displayed.</p>	
3	<p>Select the unit that needs to be calibrated from the Mechanical Unit list.</p> <p>The calibration summary for the selected mechanical unit is displayed.</p>	
4	<p>On the right pane tap Calibration Methods.</p>	
5	<p>Tap Calibration Parameters.</p> <p>The calibration parameters are displayed.</p>	

Continues on next page

	Action	Note
6	<p>Tap Fine Calibration.</p> <p>A dialog box is displayed, urging you to use external equipment to perform the actual calibration. Make sure all necessary calibration equipment is fitted for the axis to be calibrated.</p> <p>A warning that performing fine calibration can change programmed robot positions is also displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap Yes to proceed. • Tap No to cancel. 	
7	Select the check-box for the current axis/axes to be calibrated.	
8	<p>Tap Calibrate.</p> <p>A dialog box is displayed, warning that calibration of the selected axes will be changed, which cannot be undone:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap Calibrate to proceed. • Tap Cancel to cancel. <p>Tapping Calibrate results in briefly displaying a dialog box, announcing that the calibration process has started.</p> <p>The axis is calibrated and the system returns to the list of available mechanical units.</p>	
9	<p>Tap OK.</p> <p>The fine calibration process is complete.</p>	

Checking and finalizing the calibration

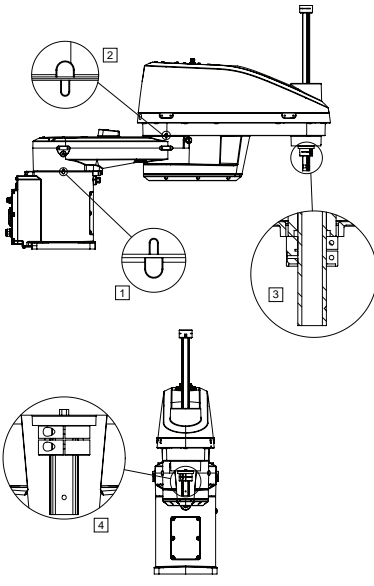
	Action	Note
1	 <p>DANGER</p> <p>Always remember to remove the calibration tools from the robot before jogging axes to zero position during calibration.</p>	
2	Release the brakes and manually rotate the axis to apart the calibration pins from each other. This is done to avoid damage on the pins if incorrect operation should occur during next step of jogging.	
3	Jog axes 3 and 4 to zero degree using the Flex-Pendant.	

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.5.3 Calibrating axis 3 and axis 4

Continued

	Action	Note
4	<p>Check that the synchronization marks on axes 3 and 4 are aligned with each other.</p> <p>Are they aligned within the tolerances?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If yes, the calibration is verified OK. • If no, redo the fine calibration procedure. 	 <p>xx2300000573</p>
5	Update the revolution counters of axes 3 and 4.	See Updating revolution counters on page 560 .

After calibration

	Action	Note
1	Write down the new system parameters on a new label and stick on top of the calibration label on the robot.	



Note

The calibration status of axis 3 may be changed to **Not updated** after a system reinstallation or warm restart. In this case, update the revolution counters for axis 3 and axis 4 (axis 4 is coupled with axis 3). See [Updating revolution counters on page 560](#).

6.6 Verifying the calibration

Introduction

Always verify the results after calibrating *any* robot axis to verify that all calibration positions are correct.

Verifying the calibration

Use this procedure to verify the calibration result.

	Action	Note
1	Run the calibration home position program twice. Do not change the position of the robot axes after running the program!	See Checking the synchronization position on page 584 .
2	Adjust the <i>synchronization marks</i> when the calibration is done, if necessary.	This is detailed in section Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 557 .
3	Write down the values on a new label and stick it on top of the calibration label. The label is located on the base.	

6 Calibration

6.7 Checking the synchronization position

6.7 Checking the synchronization position

Introduction

Check the synchronization position of the robot before beginning any programming of the robot system. This may be done:

- Using a `MoveAbsJ` instruction with argument zero on all axes.
- Using the **Jog** window on the FlexPendant.

Using a `MoveAbsJ` instruction

Use this procedure to create a program that runs all the robot axes to their synchronization position.

	Action	Note
1	Tap Code .	
2	Create a new program.	
3	Use MoveAbsJ in the Add Instruction menu.	
4	Create the following program: <pre>MoveAbsJ [[0,0,0,0,0,0], [9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9]] \NoEOffs, v1000, fine, tool0</pre>	
5	Run the program in manual mode.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters.	See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 557 and Updating revolution counters on page 560 .

Using the jogging window

Use this procedure to jog the robot to the synchronization position of all axes.

	Action	Note
1	Tap Jog .	
2	From the Mechanical unit list select a mechanical unit.	
3	From the Motion mode section, select an axis-set that need to be jogged. For example, to jog axis 2, select the axis set Axis 1-3 .	
4	Follow the screen instruction on joystick movements to understand the direction of the axis that you want to move and move the joystick.	
5	Manually run the robots axes to a position where the axis position value read on the FlexPendant, is equal to zero.	
6	Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters.	See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 557 and Updating revolution counters on page 560 .

7 Decommissioning

7.1 Introduction to decommissioning

Introduction

This section contains information to consider when taking a product, robot or controller, out of operation.

It deals with how to handle potentially dangerous components and potentially hazardous materials.



Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

Disposal of materials used in the robot

All used grease/oils and dead batteries **must** be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and the control unit are installed.

If the robot or the control unit is partially or completely disposed of, the various parts **must** be grouped together according to their nature (which is all iron together and all plastic together), and disposed of accordingly. These parts **must** also be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and control unit are installed.

See also [Environmental information on page 586](#).

Transportation

Prepare the robot or parts before transport, this to avoid hazards.

7 Decommissioning

7.2 Environmental information

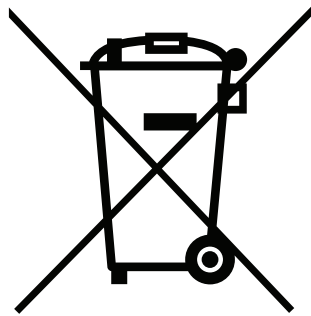
7.2 Environmental information

Introduction

ABB robots contain components in different materials. During decommissioning, all materials should be dismantled, recycled, or reused responsibly, according to the relevant laws and industrial standards. Robots or parts that can be reused or upcycled helps to reduce the usage of natural resources.

Symbol

The following symbol indicates that the product must not be disposed of as common garbage. Handle each product according to local regulations for the respective content (see table below).



xx180000058

Materials used in the product

The table specifies some of the materials in the product and their respective use throughout the product.

Dispose components properly according to local regulations to prevent health or environmental hazards.

Material	Example application
Aluminium	
Batteries, Lithium	Serial measurement board
Brass, zink alloys	Calibration protection cap and plug and couplings, connectors and nuts in cable harness
Cast iron/nodular iron	
Circuit boards	Serial measurement unit, brake release unit
Copper	Cables, motors
Lithium	Battery
Magnesium	Wrist casting, upper arm, back cover, tool flange, etc
Neodymium	Brakes, motors
Oil, grease	Gearboxes
Plastic/rubber	

Continues on next page

Material	Example application
Steel	

Oil and grease

Where possible, arrange for oil and grease to be recycled. Dispose of via an authorized person/contractor in accordance with local regulations. Do not dispose of oil and grease near lakes, ponds, ditches, down drains, or onto soil. Incineration must be carried out under controlled conditions in accordance with local regulations.

Also note that:

- Spills can form a film on water surfaces causing damage to organisms. Oxygen transfer could also be impaired.
- Spillage can penetrate the soil causing ground water contamination.

7 Decommissioning

7.3 Scrapping of robot

7.3 Scrapping of robot



Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

Important when scrapping the robot



DANGER

The risk assessment should consider hazards arising in the decommissioning, such as, but not limited to:

- Always remove all batteries. If a battery is exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, it will explode.
- Always remove all oil/grease in gearboxes. If exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, the oil/grease will catch fire.
- When motors are removed from the robot, the robot will collapse if it is not properly supported before the motor is removed.
- A used robot does not have the same performance as on delivery. Springs, brakes, bearings, and other parts might be worn or broken.

8 Reference information

8.1 Introduction

General

This chapter includes general information, complementing the more specific information in the different procedures in the manual.

8 Reference information

8.2 Applicable standards

8.2 Applicable standards

General

The product is compliant with ISO 10218-1:2011, *Robots for industrial environments - Safety requirements - Part 1 Robots*, and applicable parts in the normative references, as referred to from ISO 10218-1:2011. In case of deviation from ISO 10218-1:2011, these are listed in the declaration of incorporation. The declaration of incorporation is part of the delivery.

Robot standards

Standard	Description
ISO 9283	Manipulating industrial robots – Performance criteria and related test methods
ISO 9787	Robots and robotic devices – Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures
ISO 9946	Manipulating industrial robots – Presentation of characteristics

Other standards used in design

Standard	Description
IEC 60204-1	Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements, normative reference from ISO 10218-1
IEC 61000-6-2	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-2: Generic standards – Immunity standard for industrial environments
IEC 61000-6-4	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-4: Generic standards – Emission standard for industrial environments
ISO 13849-1:2006	Safety of machinery - Safety related parts of control systems - Part 1: General principles for design, normative reference from ISO 10218-1

Region specific standards and regulations

Standard	Description
ANSI/RIA R15.06	Safety requirements for industrial robots and robot systems
ANSI/UL 1740	Safety standard for robots and robotic equipment
CAN/CSA Z 434-03	Industrial robots and robot Systems - General safety requirements
EN ISO 10218-1	Robots and robotic devices — Safety requirements for industrial robots — Part 1: Robots

8.3 Unit conversion

Converter table

Use the following table to convert units used in this manual.

Quantity	Units		
Length	1 m	3.28 ft.	39.37 in
Weight	1 kg	2.21 lb.	
Weight	1 g	0.035 ounces	
Pressure	1 bar	100 kPa	14.5 psi
Force	1 N	0.225 lbf	
Moment	1 Nm	0.738 lbf-ft	
Volume	1 L	0.264 US gal	

8 Reference information

8.4 Screw joints

8.4 Screw joints

General

This section describes how to tighten the various types of screw joints on ABB robots.

The instructions and torque values are valid for screw joints comprised of metallic materials and do *not* apply to soft or brittle materials.

UNBRAKO screws

UNBRAKO is a special type of screw recommended by ABB for certain screw joints. It features special surface treatment (Gleitmo as described below) and is extremely resistant to fatigue.

Whenever used, this is specified in the instructions, and in such cases, *no other type of replacement screw* is allowed. Using other types of screws will void any warranty and may potentially cause serious damage or injury.

Gleitmo treated screws

Gleitmo is a special surface treatment to reduce the friction when tightening the screw joint. It is recommended by ABB for M6-M20 screw joints. Screws treated with Gleitmo may be reused 3-4 times before the coating disappears. After this the screw must be discarded and replaced with a new one.

When handling screws treated with Gleitmo, protective gloves of nitrile rubber type should be used.

Generally, screws are lubricated with *Gleitmo 603* mixed with *Geomet 500* or *Geomet 702* in proportion 1:3. *Geomet* thickness varies according to screw dimensions, refer to the following.

Dimension	Lubricant	Geomet thickness
M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)	<i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 500</i>	3-5 µm
M6-M20 (any length except M20x60)	<i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 720</i>	3-5 µm
M20x60	<i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 500</i>	8-12 µm
M20x60	<i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 720</i>	6-10 µm

Screws lubricated in other ways

Screws lubricated with Molykote 1000 or Molykote P1900 should *only* be used when specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions.

In such cases, proceed as follows:

- 1 Apply lubricant to the screw thread.
- 2 Apply lubricant between the plain washer and screw head.
- 3 Screw dimensions of M8 or larger must be tightened with a torque wrench. Screw dimensions of M6 or smaller may be tightened without a torque wrench *if* this is done by trained and qualified personnel.

Continues on next page

Lubricant	Article number
Molykote 1000 (molybdenum disulphide grease)	3HAC042472-001
Molykote P1900 (molybdenum disulphide grease)	3HAC070875-001

Tightening torque

Before tightening any screw, note the following:

- Determine whether a **standard** tightening torque or **special** torque is to be applied. The **standard torques** are specified in the following tables. Any **special torques** are specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions. **Any special torque specified overrides the standard torque!**
- Use the *correct tightening torque* for each type of screw joint.
- Only use *correctly calibrated* torque keys.
- *Always tighten the joint by hand*, and never use pneumatic tools.
- Use the *correct tightening technique*, that is *do not* jerk. Tighten the screw in a slow, flowing motion.
- Maximum allowed total deviation from the specified value is **10%!**

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws*.



Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws*.



Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm)		
	Class 8.8, oil-lubricated	Class 10.9, oil-lubricated	Class 12.9, oil-lubricated
M5	6	-	-
M6	10	-	-
M8	24	34	40
M10	47	67	80
M12	82	115	140
M16	200	290	340
M20	400	560	670

Continues on next page

8 Reference information

8.4 Screw joints

Continued

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 8.8, oil-lubricated	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, oil-lubricated	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, oil-lubricated
M24	680	960	1150

Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *screws lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent with allen head screws.*



Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Dimension	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, lubricated ⁱ	Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, lubricated ⁱ
M5		8
M6		14
M8	28	35
M10	55	70
M12	96	120
M16	235	300
M20	460	550
M24	790	950

ⁱ Lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent

8.5 Weight specifications


Definition

In installation, repair, and maintenance procedures, weights of the components handled are sometimes specified. All components exceeding 22 kg (50 lbs) are highlighted in this way.

To avoid injury, ABB recommends the use of a lifting accessory when handling components with a weight exceeding 22 kg. A wide range of lifting accessories and devices are available for each manipulator model.

Example

Following is an example of a weight specification in a procedure:

Action	Note
 CAUTION The arm weighs 25 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.	

8 Reference information

8.6 Standard toolkit

8.6 Standard toolkit

General

All service (repairs, maintenance, and installation) procedures contains lists of tools required to perform the specified activity.

All special tools required are listed directly in the procedures while all the tools that are considered standard are gathered in the standard toolkit and defined in the following table.

This way, the tools required are the sum of the standard toolkit and any tools listed in the instruction.

Contents, standard toolkit

Qty	Tool	Rem.
1	Ring-open-end spanner 8-19 mm	
1	Socket head cap 2.5-17 mm	
1	Torx socket no: 20-60	
1	Box spanner set	
1	Torque wrench 10-100 Nm	
1	Torque wrench 75-400 Nm	
1	Ratchet head for torque wrench 1/2	
2	Hexagon-headed screw M10x100	
1	Hexagon-headed screw M16x90	
1	Hex bit socket head cap no. 14 socket 40 mm L=100 mm	
1	Hex bit socket head cap no. 14 socket 40 mm L=20 mm	To be shortened to 12 mm
1	Hex bit socket head cap no. 6 socket 40 mm L=145 mm	
1	Hex bit socket head cap no. 6 socket 40mm bit L=220 mm	
1	Plastic mallet	

8.7 Special tools

General

All service instructions contain lists of tools required to perform the specified activity. The required tools are a sum of standard tools, defined in the section [Standard toolkit on page 596](#), and of special tools, listed directly in the instructions and also gathered in this section.

Special tools



Note

If the replacing procedure is not listed in the table below, only standard tools are needed for the procedure.

Tools and equipment with spare part number: (These tools can be ordered from ABB)

-	24 VDC power supply
3HAC074119-001	Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.
-	Sonic tension meter Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
-	Dynamometer Used for measuring the timing belt tension.
3HAC087847-001	IRB 930 auxiliary shaft Used to install the ball screw nut. Special tool for L2
3HAC087848-001	Sealing press tool Used to install the sealing ring. Special tool for L2.

8 Reference information

8.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

8.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

General

Many repair and maintenance activities require different pieces of lifting accessories, which are specified in each procedure.

The use of each piece of lifting accessories is *not* detailed in the activity procedure, but in the instruction delivered with each piece of lifting accessories.

The instructions delivered with the lifting accessories should be stored for later reference.

9 Spare parts

9.1 Spare part lists and illustrations

Location

Spare parts and exploded views are not included in the manual but delivered as a separate document for registered users on myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.



Tip

All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

This page is intentionally left blank

Index

A

Absolute Accuracy, calibration, 555
 allergenic material, 26
 aluminum
 disposal, 586
 ambient humidity
 operation, 41
 storage, 41
 ambient temperature
 operation, 41
 storage, 41
 assembly instructions, 47
 assessment of hazards and risks, 26
 Axis Calibration, 564
 calibration tool
 article number, 567, 570
 examining, 567
 installation position, 569
 overview of method, 564
 procedure on FlexPendant, 570
 protective cover and protection plug, 569–570

B

ball screw spline unit
 lubrication, 96
 batteries
 disposal, 586
 brake releasing, 58
 brakes
 testing function, 34

C

cabinet lock, 27
 cabling between robot and controller, 71
 calibrating
 robot, 564
 roughly, 560
 calibrating robot, 564
 calibration
 Absolute Accuracy type, 554
 rough, 560
 standard type, 554
 verification, 583
 when to calibrate, 556
 calibration, Absolute Accuracy, 555
 calibration manuals, 555
 calibration marks, 557
 calibration position
 jogging to, 584
 scales, 557
 calibration scales, 557
 CalibWare, 554
 carbon dioxide extinguisher, 27
 cast iron
 disposal, 586
 changing oil
 axis 1, 101
 axis 2, 106
 circuit boards
 disposal, 586
 cleaning, 98
 climbing on robot, 30
 Cold environments, 76
 connecting the robot and controller, cabling, 71

copper
 disposal, 586

D

dimensions
 robot, 64
 direction of axes, 559

E

environmental information, 586
 equipment, robot, 64
 ESD
 damage elimination, 46
 sensitive equipment, 46
 expected life, 84
 extra equipment, 64

F

fire extinguishing, 27
 fitting, equipment, 64
 FlexPendant
 jogging to calibration position, 584
 MoveAbsJ instruction, 584
 updating revolution counters, 562
 foundation
 requirements, 40

G

gearbox
 oil change axis 1, 101
 oil change axis 2, 106
 gearboxes
 location of, 100
 grease, 30
 disposal, 586

H

hanging
 installed hanging, 26
 hazard levels, 17
 hazardous material, 586
 height
 installed at a height, 26
 hot surfaces, 30
 HRA, 26
 humidity
 operation, 41
 storage, 41

I

information labels location, 85
 inspecting
 information labels, 85
 robot cabling, 86
 timing belts, 94
 installation
 equipment, 64
 installation procedure, 54
 instructions for assembly, 47
 integrator responsibility, 26
 intervals for maintenance, 82

L

labels
 robot, 19
 leak-down test, 112
 lifting accessory, 595

limitation of liability, 15

lithium

disposal, 586

Lithium

disposal, 586

loads on foundation, 39

lock and tag, 27

lubricants, 30

lubrication

amount in gearboxes, 100

ball screw spline unit, 96

type of lubrication, 100

M

magnesium

disposal, 586

main harness

replacing, 136

maintenance intervals, 82

maintenance schedule, 82

mechanical stop

axis 1, 68

mechanical stop location, 68–70

mounting, equipment, 64

MoveAbsJ instruction, 584

N

national regulations, 26

negative directions, axes, 559

neodymium

disposal, 586

nodular iron

disposal, 586

O

oil, 30

amount in gearboxes, 100

disposal, 586

type of oil, 100

oil change

axis 1, 101

axis 2, 106

operating conditions, 41

original spare parts, 15

P

pedestal

installed on pedestal, 26

personnel

requirements, 16

plastic

disposal, 586

positive directions, axes, 559

PPE, 16

product standards, 590

protection classes, 41

protection type, 41

protective equipment, 16

protective wear, 16

R

recycling, 586

regional regulations, 26

release brakes, 33

replacements, report, 111

replacing

mechanical stop

axis 1, 68

xx, 49, 119, 129, 171, 277, 283, 295, 308, 340

report replacements, 111

requirements on foundation, 40

responsibility and validity, 15

revolution counters

storing on FlexPendant, 562

updating, 560

risk of burns, 30

robot

dimensions, 64

equipment, fitting, 64

labels, 19

protection class, 41

protection types, 41

symbols, 19

technical data, 38

working range, 43

robot cabling

inspecting, 86

rubber

disposal, 586

S

safety

brake testing, 34

ESD, 46

fire extinguishing, 27

release robot axes, 33

signals, 17

signals in manual, 17

symbols, 17

symbols on robot, 19

test run, 55, 77

safety devices, 27

safety hazard

hydraulic system, 28

pneumatic system, 28

safety signals

in manual, 17

safety standards, 590

scales on robot, 557

schedule of maintenance, 82

screw joints, 592

securing, robot, 60

securing the robot to foundation, attachment screws, 60

shipping, 585

signals

safety, 17

speed

adjusting, 76

standards, 590

ANSI, 590

CAN, 590

start of robot in cold environments, 76

steel

disposal, 587

storage conditions, 41

symbols

safety, 17

synchronization position, 560

sync marks, 557

system integrator requirements, 26

T

technical data

robot, 38

temperatures
 operation, 41
 storage, 41
testing
 brakes, 34
timing belts
 inspecting, 94
torques on foundation, 39
transportation, 585
troubleshooting
 safety, 35

U

upcycling, 586
updating revolution counters, 560
users
 requirements, 16

V

validity and responsibility, 15
velocity
 adjusting, 76
verifying calibration, 583

W

weight, 38
 robot, 57
working range
 robot, 43

X

xx
 replacing, 49, 119, 129, 171, 277, 283, 295, 308, 340

Z

zero position
 checking, 584



ABB AB

Robotics & Discrete Automation

S-721 68 VÄSTERÅS, Sweden

Telephone +46 10-732 50 00

ABB AS

Robotics & Discrete Automation

Nordlysvegen 7, N-4340 BRYNE, Norway

Box 265, N-4349 BRYNE, Norway

Telephone: +47 22 87 2000

ABB Engineering (Shanghai) Ltd.

Robotics & Discrete Automation

No. 4528 Kangxin Highway

PuDong New District

SHANGHAI 201319, China

Telephone: +86 21 6105 6666

ABB Inc.

Robotics & Discrete Automation

1250 Brown Road

Auburn Hills, MI 48326

USA

Telephone: +1 248 391 9000

abb.com/robotics